

## 目录

阶段一 .....	1
第一章 音标 .....	1
第二章 构词法 .....	4
第三章 语法 .....	6
第一节 词性 .....	6
第二节 句子成分 .....	19
第三节 句子结构及句子种类 .....	24
第四节 时态语态 .....	32
第五节 主谓一致 .....	37
第六节 倒装 .....	41
第七节 非谓语 .....	43
第四章 语篇 .....	49
Passage 1 .....	49
Passage 2 .....	51
Passage 3 .....	54
Passage 4 .....	57
Passage 5 .....	60
Passage 6 .....	63
第五章 语法练习 .....	67
第一节 词性 .....	67
第二节 句子成分 .....	71
第三节 句子结构和句子种类 .....	72
第四节 时态语态 .....	75
第五节 主谓一致 .....	79
第六节 倒装 .....	83
第七节 非谓语 .....	87
第六章 补全对话 .....	92
Task 1 .....	92
Task 2 .....	93
Task 3 .....	95
Task 4 .....	96
Task 5 .....	98
Task 6 .....	99
第七章 选句填空 .....	102
Task 1 .....	102

Task 2 .....	103
Task 3 .....	105
Task 4 .....	107
Task 5 .....	109
Task 6 .....	111
<b>第八章 选词填空</b> .....	<b>114</b>
Task 1 .....	114
Task 2 .....	116
Task 3 .....	118
Task 4 .....	120
Task 5 .....	122
Task 6 .....	124
<b>第九章 句子写作</b> .....	<b>127</b>
Task 1 .....	127
Task 2 .....	127
Task 3 .....	128
Task 4 .....	128
Task 5 .....	129
Task 6 .....	130
<b>阶段二</b> .....	<b>131</b>
<b>第一章 语法</b> .....	<b>131</b>
第一节 词性 .....	131
第二节 句子成分 .....	143
第三节 句子结构及句子种类 .....	151
第四节 时态语态 .....	156
第五节 虚拟语气 .....	166
第六节 三大从句 .....	170
<b>第二章 语篇</b> .....	<b>178</b>
Passage 1 .....	178
Passage 2 .....	181
Passage 3 .....	184
Passage 4 .....	188
Passage 5 .....	191
Passage 6 .....	194
<b>第三章 语法练习</b> .....	<b>198</b>
第一节 词性 .....	198
第二节 句子成分 .....	202

第三节 句子结构及句子种类 .....	205
第四节 时态语态 .....	209
第五节 虚拟语气 .....	213
第六节 定语从句 .....	217
第七节 名词性从句 .....	221
第八节 状语从句 .....	225
<b>第四章 补全对话</b> .....	<b>230</b>
Task 1 .....	230
Task 2 .....	231
Task 3 .....	232
Task 4 .....	234
Task 5 .....	235
Task 6 .....	237
<b>第五章 选句填空</b> .....	<b>239</b>
Task 1 .....	239
Task 2 .....	240
Task 3 .....	242
Task 4 .....	244
Task 5 .....	246
Task 6 .....	247
<b>第六章 选词填空</b> .....	<b>250</b>
Task 1 .....	250
Task 2 .....	251
Task 3 .....	253
Task 4 .....	255
Task 5 .....	257
Task 6 .....	259
<b>第七章 完型</b> .....	<b>262</b>
Task 1 .....	262
Task 2 .....	264
Task 3 .....	266
Task 4 .....	269
Task 5 .....	271
Task 6 .....	273
<b>第八章 翻译</b> .....	<b>276</b>
Task 1 .....	276
Task 2 .....	276

Task 3 .....	276
Task 4 .....	277
Task 5 .....	277
Task 6 .....	277
<b>第九章 句子写作</b> .....	<b>279</b>
Task 1 .....	279
Task 2 .....	279
Task 3 .....	280
Task 4 .....	280
Task 5 .....	281
Task 6 .....	282

## 阶段一

## 第一章 音标

元音	单元音	前元音	/i:/	/ɪ/	/e/	/æ/	
		中元音		/ɜ:/	/ə/	/ʌ/	
		后元音	/u:/	/ʊ/	/ɔ:/	/ɒ/	/ɑ:/
	双元音	开合双元音	/eɪ/	/aɪ/	/ɔɪ/	/aʊ/	/əʊ/
		集中双元音	/ɪə/	/eə/	/ʊə/		
辅音	爆破音	清辅音	/p/	/t/	/k/		
		浊辅音	/b/	/d/	/g/		
	摩擦音	清辅音	/f/	/s/	/ʃ/	/θ/	/h/
		浊辅音	/v/	/z/	/ʒ/	/ð/	/r/
	破擦音	清辅音	/tʃ/	/tr/	/ts/		
		浊辅音	/dʒ/	/dr/	/dz/		
	鼻音	(浊辅音)	/m/	/n/	/ŋ/		
	舌侧音	(浊辅音)	/l/				
	半元音	(浊辅音)	/j/	/w/			

/i:/	be /bi:/	meat /mi:t/
/ɪ/	it /ɪt/	big /bɪg/
/e/	get /get/	desk /desk/
/æ/	at /æt/	stand /stænd/
/ɑ:/	art /ɑ:t; ɑ:rt/	fast /fɑ:st/
/ɔ:/	saw /sɔ:/	talk /tɔ:k/
/ɒ/	hot /hɒt/	boss /bɒs/
/u:/	do /du:/	June /dʒu:n/
/ʊ/	put /pʊt/	book /bʊk/
/ʌ/	up /ʌp/	does /dʌz/
/ɜ:/	sir /sɜ:(r)/	her /hɜ:(r)/
/ə/	about /ə'baʊt/	teacher /'ti:tʃə(r)/
/eɪ/	day /deɪ/	eight /eɪt/

/aɪ/ eye /aɪ/	ride /raɪd/
/ɔɪ/ boy /bɔɪ/	join /dʒɔɪn/
/əʊ/ old /əʊld/	show /ʃəʊ/
/aʊ/ out /aʊt/	how /haʊ/
/ɪə/ ear /ɪə(r)/	here /hɪə(r)/
/eə/ air /eə(r)/	care /keə(r)/
/ʊə/ poor /pʊə(r)/	sure /ʃʊə(r)/
<b>/p/--/b/</b>	
pay /peɪ/	open /'əʊpən/
bit /bɪt/	describe /dɪ'skraɪb/
<b>/t/--/d/</b>	
too /tu:/	fifty /'fɪfti/
card /kɑ:(r)d/	depend /dɪ'pend/
<b>/k/--/g/</b>	
book /bʊk/	duck /dʌk/
get /get/	egg /eg/
<b>/f/--/v/</b>	
if /ɪf/	fly /flaɪ/
very /'veri/	save /seɪv/
<b>/θ/--/ð/</b>	
thank /θæŋk/	month /mʌnθ/
this /ðɪs/	other /'ʌðə(r)/
<b>/s/--/z/</b>	
so /səʊ/	pencil /'pensl/
zoo /zu:/	use /ju:z/
<b>/ʃ/--/ʒ/</b>	
she /ʃi:/	machine /mə'ʃi:n/
decision /dɪ'sɪʒn/	usual /'ju:ʒuəl/
<b>/h/</b> he /hi:/	
<b>/r/</b> right /raɪt/	
<b>/tʃ/--/dʒ/</b>	
child /tʃaɪld/	reach /ri:tʃ/
job /dʒɒb/	page /peɪdʒ/
<b>/tr/--/dr/</b>	
try /traɪ/	tree /tri:/
dry /draɪ/	dream /dri:m/
<b>/ts/--/dz/</b>	

	pets /pets/	gets /gets/
	roads /rəʊdz/	lands /lændz/
/m/	me /mi:/	come /kʌm/
/n/	need /ni:d/	skin /skɪn/
/ŋ/	bank /bæŋk/	song /sɒŋ/
/l/	like /laɪk/	/sel/
/w/	we /wi:/	week /wi:k/
/j/	yes /jes/	you /ju:/

## 第二章 构词法

语言中词的总和构成词汇，但是词汇并不是一堆杂乱无章、互不相关的群体，而是一个严密体系，在这个结构的体系中，词与词之间有着各种各样的联系。英语中的这些联系的规律总结起来就是构词。英语中构词的方法就是构词法。构词法主要有合成法、转换法、派生法、缩略法、拟声法、逆生法等。

### 一、合成法

合成法即是由两个或更多的词合成一个词。如 blackboard 和 darkroom 是形容词和名词形成的结构，salesman 和 townspeople 是用辅音字母-s-来缀全两个词根词素构成的词。

### 二、派生法

派生法又叫词缀法，即在词根前面加前缀或在词根后面加后缀，从而构成一个与原单词意义相近或截然相反的新词。

#### (一) 前缀

一般说来前缀不会改变一个词的词性。

1. 否定前缀：un-, im-, in-, ir-, mis-, dis- 等  
unfit, impossible, incorrect, irregular, misunderstand, dishonor
2. 表示空间、位置关系的前缀
  - (1) fore-表示“在……前面”：forehead, foreground
  - (2) inter-表示“在……间、相互”：international, interpersonal
  - (3) over-表示“在上面的、在外的”：overhead, overcoat
  - (4) trans-表示“转移”：transfer, transplant
  - (5) under-表示“在……下”：underground, underline
  - (6) tele-表示“远”：telephone, television
3. 表示时间、序列关系的前缀
  - (1) fore-表示“在前，预先”：foresight, foretell
  - (2) mid-表示“中间”：midnight, midsummer
  - (3) post-表示“在……后”：postwar, postlistening
  - (4) re-表示“重复”：retell, rebuild
  - (5) over-表示“超过”：overconfident, overcrowded
  - (6) super-表示“极、超”：supermarket, superpower
4. 表示特殊意义
  - (1) auto-表示“自动”：automobile, autobiography
  - (2) micro-表示“微小”：microscope, Microsoft
  - (3) bi-表示“二，二次”：biweekly, bicycle
  - (4) mini-表示“小型”：minibus, miniskirt



## (二) 后缀

后缀是指在一个词的尾部加上一个词缀构成新的词。后缀往往会改变一个词的词性。常用后缀大约有 96 个，大致可分为五类。

### 1. 名词后缀

- (1) 构成表示人的名词后缀: -er, -or, -ress, -cian, -ese, -an, -ist 等

owner, director, actress, physician, Chinese, American, artist

- (2) 构成抽象名词与集合名词的后缀: -age, -ure, -ity, -ment, -ion, -ship, -ance/ence, -th, -dom, -ism, -ness 等

marriage, failure, majority, argument, education, friendship, childhood, appearance, difference, truth, wisdom, socialism, kindness

2. 形容词后缀: -able/ible, -al, -ic/ical, -ish, -ful, -less, -ous, -ive 等

valuable, terrible, cultural, electric, physical, foolish, harmful, useless, dangerous, active

3. 副词后缀: -ly, ward/wards 等

quickly, constantly, forward, afterwards

4. 动词后缀: -en, -fy, -ize/ise, -ate, -ish 等

deepen, beautify, realize, educate, finish

5. 数词后缀: -teen, -ty, -th

thirteen, twenty, fourth

## (三) 中缀

在英语有些词在结合时，需要有一个中间的起连接作用的中缀，这类词汇不多，常见的中缀是字母-s-。如: salesgirl, salesman, townspeople, townsman。

## 三、缩略法

缩略法是把原有的词汇通过缩短，在读音和写法上呈现新的形式，这种构词方式用得很普遍，特别是近几年来，随着科学技术的飞速发展，产生了很多新的缩略词。如: telephone—phone, advertisement—ad, refrigerator—fridge 等。

## 第三章 语法

### 第一节 词性

词性：词性又叫词类，英语单词根据其在句子中的功用，可以分成十个大类。六类为实词，四类为虚词。

实词：名词、代词、数词、形容词、动词、副词

虚词：冠词、介词、连词、感叹词

#### 一、名词：缩写 n.

##### (一) 定义

名词是表示人或事物名称的词。

##### (二) 名词分类

名词可以分为可数名词和不可数名词。其中可数名词是可以用来计数的名词，有单数和复数形式；不可数名词是不可以直接用来计数的名词，一般没有复数形式，只有单数形式。

student 学生 可数名词

suggestion 建议 可数名词

homework 家庭作业 不可数名词

advice 建议 不可数名词

##### (三) 可数名词单数变复数的变化规则

###### 1. 规则变化

(1) 一般的名词结尾直接加“s”

(2) 以 s/x/ch/sh 结尾的名词加“es”

(3) 以辅音字母+y 结尾的名词“改 y 为 i 加 es”

(4) 以 o 结尾的名词，通常有生命的加“es”，无生命的加“s”

(5) 以 f/fe 结尾的词将 f/fe 变 v 再加“es”

picture 图片 pictures

hero 英雄 heroes

bus 公交车 buses

boy 男孩 boys

brush 刷子 brushes

activity 活动 activities

city 城市 cities

shelf 架子 shelves

photo 照片 photos

knife 刀具 knives

###### 2. 不规则变化

男人 man—men

脚 foot—feet

女人 woman—women

老鼠 mouse—mice

孩子 child—children

牙齿 tooth—teeth

##### (四) 名词的所有格

## 1. “’s” 所有格

在名词后加 “’s” 来表示所有关系，若名词以 s 结尾，则只加 “’”，不加 “s”。

## 2. “of” 所有格

of 所有格是以 “名词+of+名词” 构成的一种词组形式，主要用于表示无生命东西的名词，表示所有关系。

我父亲的朋友 my father’s friend

房间的门 the door of the room

女孩们的愿望 girls’ wish

社会的发展 the development of society

用 of 所有格表达下列短语。

线上购物的优点 the advantage of online shopping

保护环境的重要性 the importance of protecting the environment

学生的数量 the number of students

英语的使用 the use of English

用 “’s” 所有格表达下列短语。

经理的要求 manager’s request

两周的假期 two weeks’ vacation

我们公司的服务 our company’s service

三小时的会议 three hours’ meeting

## 二、代词：缩写 pron.

### (一) 定义

为了避免重复用来代替名词或名词词组的词

### (二) 分类

人称代词、物主代词、反身代词、指示代词、不定代词、相互代词等。

### (三) 人称代词、物主代词、反身代词

数	人称		人称代词		物主代词		反身代词
			主格 (作主语)	宾格 (作宾语)	形容词性 物主代词	名词性 物主代词	
单数	第一人称	我	I	me	my	mine	myself
	第二人称	你	you	you	your	your	yourself
	第三人称	他	he	him	his	his	himself
		她	she	her	her	hers	herself
		它	it	it	its	its	itself
复数	第一人称	我们	we	us	our	ours	ourselves
	第二人称	你们	you	you	your	yours	yourselves
	第三人称	他/她/它们	they	them	their	theirs	themselves



## 小练笔

用括号中代词的正确形式填空。

1. I often help him (he) practice his spoken English.
2. This is not my (I) cat. It's hers (she).
3. As teenagers, we are old enough to look after ourselves (we).

## (四) 指示代词

this (单数)、these (复数) 指近处的事物; that (单数)、those (复数) 指远处的事物。

## (五) 不定代词

1. 常见的不定代词有: some, any, one, each, every, no, none, all, both, either, neither, many, much, a few, a little, other, another, the other 等。
2. 形容词修饰 **something, anything, nothing, somebody, anybody, nobody, everything, everyone, someone, everybody** 等不定代词时, 形容词放在不定代词的后面。

I want to tell you something important.

我想告诉你一些重要的事。

Could someone else do it instead?

其他人能代替做吗?

## 3. 不定代词的区别

## (1) some, any

- ① some 常用于肯定句; 但希望对方肯定回答时, 疑问句中用 some。
- ② any 常用于否定句和疑问句; 用于肯定句时, 表示“任何一个”。



## 小练笔

选词填空。

1. —Is there any (some, any) meat in the soup?  
—Yes, there is some (some, any) chicken in it.
2. Could you bring me some (some, any) water please? I'm very thirsty.

## (2) a few, few, a little, little

- ① a few/few + 可数名词复数。a few 意为“有一点”; few 意为“几乎没有”(否定词)。
- ② a little/little + 不可数名词。a little 意为“有一点”(还可接形容词或比较级); little 意为“几乎没有”(否定词)。



## 小练笔

用 a few, few, little, a little 进行填空。

1. Susan, there is little rice and few noodles at home. Will you go shopping with me?
2. Could you give me a few English newspapers?
3. She felt a little better.

(3) both, either, neither, all, none

① both 意为“两者都”。

词组: both...and 两者都

② either 意为“两者之一”。

词组: either...or 要么……要么

③ neither 意为“两者都不”。

词组: neither...nor 既不……也不

④ all 意为“三者及三者以上都”。

⑤ none 意为“三者及三者以上都不”。



小练笔

用 both, either, neither, all, none 进行填空。

1. —Which do you like?  
—Neither. I think they're both ugly.
2. The father wished the twins to be doctors, but neither of them liked to study medicine.
3. —When shall we go on a picnic, Saturday or Sunday?  
—Either is OK. I'm free the whole weekend.
4. —Our class will visit the Palace Museum tomorrow.  
—Great! None of us has been there before and we want to know about the culture.
5. —I guess your three kids must be very happy to move into the new house.  
—Actually not. All of them prefer to live in the old one.

(4) another, other, others, the other, the others

① another 泛指三者及三者以上当中的“另一个”。

② other 泛指“别的, 其他的”, 后面常加名词。

③ others 泛指“别人, 其他人”。others=other + 可数名词复数。

others 还常用在 some...others... “一些……另一些”结构中。

④ the other 特指“剩下的, 其余的”。

the other 还常用在 one...the other “(两者中) 一个……另一个”结构中。

⑤ the others=the other + 可数名词复数。指“剩下的人 (或物), 其余的 (或物)”。



## 小练笔

用 **another, other, others, the other, the others** 进行填空。

1. —One of my eyes sees things less clearly than the other.  
—Then you need to buy another pair of glasses.
2. There are many students in the playground. Some are running and others are chatting under the tree.
3. We study Chinese, English, math and some other subjects.
4. —How many can I have?  
—You can have two, the others are for your sister.

三、动词：缩写 **v.**

## (一) 定义

动词是表示动作或状态的词。

## (二) 动词分类

1. 实义动词：具有实际意义的动词。可以分为及物动词和不及物动词。其中及物动词后必须跟宾语；不及物动词后不能直接跟宾语，可借助介词加宾语。

The students left.

学生们离开了。

We will visit the Palace Museum this summer vacation.

我们将在暑假参观故宫。

We always talk about films together.

我们总是一起谈论电影。

2. 助动词：本身无意义，帮助主要动词构成疑问、强调、时态、否定。助动词可分为 do/does/did、have/has/had、be: am/is/are/was/were 三类。

- (1) do/does/did 可帮助动词构成疑问、强调或否定。do/does 用于一般现在时。do 用于主语为非第三人称单数形式的句子中，does 用于主语是第三人称单数形式的句子中。did 用于一般过去时。助动词 do/does/did 后面的动词要用原形。否定结构为 don't, doesn't, didn't。

Does she want to have a try?

她想尝试一下吗？

I do love you.

我的确爱你。

I didn't receive his letter yesterday.

我昨天没有收到他的来信。

- (2) have/has/had 作为助动词，仅用于完成时中。have/has 用于现在完成时，had 用于过去完成时，后面都要跟过去分词。否定结构为 haven't, hasn't, hadn't。

Jack hasn't seen the film.

杰克没有看过这部电影。

By the time the teacher came, we had finished cleaning the classroom.

老师来的时候，我们已经打扫完教室了。

- (3) be 动词可帮助动词构成进行时或被动语态。构成进行时，后面跟现在分词；构成被动语态，后面跟过去分词。

Henry was fixing his car when he heard the screams.

亨利正在修车时突然听到尖叫声。

Teenagers over 18 years old are allowed to drive a car.

18 岁以上的青少年才可以开车。

3. 情态动词：表示情绪态度，其后加动词原形。情态动词没有人称和数的变化。常见的情态动词有 would/should/might/could/will/shall/may/can 等。

You should respect your teacher.

你应该尊重你的老师。

You must finish your homework before playing with the dog.

在和狗狗玩之前，你必须要先完成你的作业。

4. 系动词：连接主语和表语。系动词可分为 be 动词、感官动词、持续系动词、变化系动词四类。

- (1) be 动词： am/is/are, was/were

- (2) 感官动词： feel, smell, sound, taste, look

- (3) 持续系动词： keep, remain, stay

- (4) 变化系动词： become, grow, turn (yellow/red), get (old/fat), go (bad), come

My dream is to be a scientist.

我的梦想是成为一名科学家。

This matter remains a mystery.

这件事情仍然是一个谜。

He looks tired.

他看起来很累。

### (三) 动词的变化形式

1. 绝大多数英语动词都有六种变化形式：

- (1) 不定式： to do

- (2) 过去式： did

- (3) 过去分词： done

- (4) 现在分词： doing

- (5) 三单形式： does

- (6) 原形： do

2. 规则动词的变化形式如下表所示:

情况	过去式 过去分词	现在分词	例词
一般情况	<u>加-d/-ed</u>	<u>加-ing (去 e)</u>	laugh—laughed—laughing live—lived—living
以辅音字母加 y	<u>变 y 为 i 加-ed</u>	<u>加-ing</u>	try—tried—trying
以重读闭音节结尾末 尾只有一个辅音字母	<u>双写末尾的辅音字母加-ed/-ing</u>		plan—planned—planning occur—occurred—occurring
以辅音字母 c 结尾	<u>c 结尾 c 后加 k 再加-ed/-ing</u>		traffic—trafficked—trafficking picnic—picnicked—picnicking

#### 四、形容词: 缩写 adj.

##### (一) 定义

用来修饰名词或代词，表示人或物的性质、特征、状态、属性等的词。形容词作定语一般放在所修饰的词之前。

##### (二) 形容词后置的情况:

1. 当形容词修饰由 no-, any-, every-, some-和-body, -one, -thing 等构成的复合不定代词时，形容词需要后置。例如:

Is there anything wrong with the machine?

这台机器有什么问题吗?

2. 表语形容词: 以字母 a-开头的表语形容词或以-able 或-ible结尾的形容词，如 asleep, awake, afraid, afloat, alive, available, visible 等作定语时，通常后置。

This is the earliest edition available.

这是可以获得的最早版本。

##### (三) 比较级与最高级

1. 形容词比较级最高级变化规则:

##### (1) -er 和 -est 型

单音节形容词和部分双音节形容词在词尾加-er 和-est 构成比较级和最高级。例如:

原级	比较级	最高级
bright	<u>brighter</u>	<u>brightest</u>
narrow	<u>narrower</u>	<u>narrowest</u>

注意: 以-er 和-est 结尾的形容词，在加上 im-, un-等否定前缀后，仍加-er 和-est 构成比较级和最高级。如: unhappy→unhappier→unhappiest。



## (2) more 和 most 型

多音节形容词在原级前面加 more 和 most 构成比较级和最高级。例如:

原级	比较级	最高级
expensive	<u>more expensive</u>	<u>most expensive</u>
important	<u>more important</u>	<u>most important</u>

## 2. 常见的不规则变化:

原级	比较级	最高级
good	<u>better</u>	<u>best</u>
many	<u>more</u>	<u>most</u>
much		
old	<u>older/elder</u>	<u>oldest/eldest</u>
far	<u>further/farther</u>	<u>farthest/furthest</u>
little	<u>less</u>	<u>least</u>
late	<u>later</u>	<u>latest</u>
bad	<u>worse</u>	<u>worst</u>
ill		

五、副词: 缩写 adv.

## (一) 定义

修饰形容词、动词、副词，表时间、地点、程度、频度等。

## (二) 构成

## 1. 大部分副词由相应的形容词加上后缀-ly 构成

slow → slowly

final → finally

## 2. 部分副词不以 ly 结尾

so, very, quite, rather, fast 等等。

六、数词: 缩写 num.

## (一) 定义

表示数量或顺序的词。

## (二) 数词分类

英语数词，可以分为基数词和序数词。其中基数词是用来表示数目多少的词。序数词是用来表示顺序的词。

### (三) 分数表达

1. 基数词做分子，序数词做分母。分子大于 1 时，分母序数词用复数。
  2. 基数词+in/out of+基数词
- 1/3 one third、one in/out of three                      2/3 two thirds、two in/out of three
- 5/7 five sevenths、five in/out of seven                      1/2 a half/one-half、one in/out of two

### (四) 特殊数字表达:

1. 百: hundred
2. 千: thousand
3. 万: ten thousand
4. 百万: million
5. 十亿: billion

### (五) 常见数词短语表达:

1. hundreds of: 数以百计
2. thousands of: 数以千计

## 七、冠词: 缩写 art.

### (一) 定义

本身不能独立使用，常用于名词之前，帮助说明名词所指的人或事物。

### (二) 冠词分类

分为定冠词、不定冠词以及零冠词三类。定冠词只有 the 一种，不定冠词分为 a, an 两种，零冠词就是名词前面没有冠词。

### (三) 定冠词 the 的用法

1. 表示特指。  
Give me the apple on the desk.  
把桌上的苹果给我。
2. 用于形容词分词前表示一类人。  
The rich should help the poor.  
富人应该帮助穷人。
3. 用于序数词和形容词、副词的最高级前。  
The first class is very easy.  
第一节课很简单。  
He is the tallest boy in our class.  
他是我们班最高的男孩。

**(四) 不定冠词 a, an 的用法**1. 表示泛指。

A young man wants to see you.

一个年轻人想见你。

2. a 和 an 的区别：不定冠词有 a 和 an 两种形式, a 用于辅音开头的词前, an 用于元音开头的词前。

a boy 一个男孩; a pen 一支笔; an elephant 一头大象; an umbrella 一把伞

**注意：**判断名词之前是加 a 还是 an 的标准是看单词是否以元音发音开头，并不是是否以元音字母开头。

a university 一所大学, a European country 一个欧洲国家, an hour 一小时

**(五) 零冠词的用法**

“专有名词不可数，学科球类三餐饭，复数名词表泛指，季节星期月份前，颜色语种和国名，称呼习语及头衔”之前都用零冠词。

London is the capital of England.

伦敦是英国的首都。

Summer begins in June in this country.

在这个国家夏天从六月份开始。

They are teachers.

他们是老师。

**小练笔****单项选择。**

## 1. Look! There is \_\_\_\_\_ ant on the table. What's it doing there?

A. a

B. an

C. the

D. 不填

【本题答案】B

【本题解析】本题考查**冠词**。a 不定冠词，修饰辅音音素开头的单词；an 不定冠词，修饰元音音素开头的单词；the 定冠词，表示特指；空处修饰单数名词 ant，表示泛指，应用不定冠词，ant 是元音音素开头的单词，应用 an 修饰。综上所述，该题选择 B。

【本题翻译】看！桌子上有一只蚂蚁。它在那里干什么？

## 2. —Look at \_\_\_\_\_ girl with a bright smile. She is Gu Ailing.

—Yes. It's hard to believe \_\_\_\_\_ 18-year-old girl like her can win two Olympic gold medals.

A. a; a

B. the; a

C. the; an

D. a; an

【本题答案】C

【本题解析】本题考查**冠词**。a 不定冠词，用在辅音音素开头的单词前，表示泛指；an 不定冠词，

用在以元音音素开头的单词前，表示泛指；the定冠词，特指某人或某物。根据“...girl with a bright smile”可知，第一空特指那个笑容灿烂的女孩，应用the；再根据“...18-year-old girl like her”可知，此处指泛指一个18岁女孩，且“18”是以元音音素开头的单词，应用不定冠词an。综上所述，该题选择C。

【本题翻译】——看那个笑容灿烂的女孩。她是谷爱凌。

——是的。很难相信像她这样的18岁少女能获得两枚奥运金牌。

3. Home is \_\_\_\_\_ best place to relax after a hard day's work.

A. a

B. an

C. the

D. /

【本题答案】C

【本题解析】本题考查冠词。a一个，修饰可数名词单数，且后接单词首字母发辅音；an一个，修饰可数名词单数，且后接单词首字母发元音；the表示特指。根据最高级“best”可知，应该使用定冠词“the”。综上所述，该题选择C。

【本题翻译】辛苦工作一天后，家是放松的最佳场所。

## 八、介词：缩写 **prep.**

### （一）定义

表示名词、代词等与句中其它词的关系，在句中不能单独作句子成分。其后接名词、代词、动名词 doing、从句等。

### （二）介词分类

介词可按词义分为：

(1) 表示时间的介词：

① at 表示在某一段时刻。

② on 表示星期几，某日，还可以指具体某一天的早中晚。

③ in 表示一天的早中晚，月份，季节，或年份。



小练笔

用 at, on, in 进行填空。

1. —What lesson do you have on Friday afternoon?

—We have Chinese lessons at 2: 00 p.m. and P. E. lessons from 3: 00 p.m. to 5: 00 p.m.

2. Our school usually holds a sports meeting in early October.

3. My uncle's reviews on the four great classical Chinese novels may be published in 2023.

(2) 表示方位空间的介词：

① at 表示一个较小的地点。

② on 表示在某一平面上，强调与物体有接触。

- ③ in 表示在较大的地方，在某立体空间或平面范围之内。



## 小练笔

用 at, on, in 进行填空。

1. Look! The fish is swimming fast in the river.
2. There is a map on the wall.
3. Let's meet at the bus stop after school and then go home together.
4. I was born in Nanning, a green city in the south of China.

(3) 表示做某事的方法、手段的介词:

- ① by 表示“用某种方式”时后接动作或制作方式。by+交通工具表示交通方式。
- ② with 表示用某种工具。
- ③ in 表示用某种材料或语言。



## 小练笔

用 by, with, in 进行填空。

1. —You did very well in the last English test! How did you study for it?  
—By reading the textbook.
2. My mother often tells me it's impolite to hit an empty bowl with chopsticks.
3. David usually goes to school by bus. Sometimes he rides his bike.
4. Listen! The young man next to Vince is talking to him in two languages.

(4) 表示“除……以外”的介词:

- ① besides 是包括后面所提人或物在内的“除……外, 还”。
- ② except 是指不包括后面所提人或物在内的“除去”。



## 小练笔

用 except 和 besides 进行填空。

1. All the students have gone to the science museum except Tom. Because he is ill.
2. He is popular in the class. Because he is good at singing and dancing besides reading.
3. They all went home except Mr. Li. He had to clean the offices besides watering flowers.

九、连词: 缩写 conj.

(一) 定义

连接单词、短语、句子的词

## (二) 连词分类

1. 并列连词：连接 and, but, or, but, or... 等
2. 从属连词：连接主从复合句，如 that, whether, which, when, although...

## (三) 并列连词

1. 表示并列关系：and, or, both... and..., either... or..., neither... or..., not only... but (also)..., as well as
  2. 表示转折关系：but, yet, while
  3. 表示因果关系：for, so
- (1) Come on, or we'll be late.  
快点，否则我们就要迟到了。
- (2) There is no water and no air on the moon.  
月球上既没有水也没有空气。
- (3) He is not only tired, but he is also hungry.  
=He is not only tired, but he is hungry too.

## 十、感叹词：缩写 interj.

一种语气词。如：oh, well, yeah, wow, aha 等。

## 第二节 句子成分

由不同词类的单词，按照一定的语法规则组合在一起，能表达一个完整意思的语言单位叫做句子。一个句子由各个功能不同的部分构成，这些部分叫做句子成分 (members of the sentence)。英语的句子成分有八种：主语、谓语、宾语、定语、状语、补语、表语、同位语。

主要成分：主语、谓语。

次要成分：宾语、定语、状语、补语、表语、同位语。

### 一、主语

#### (一) 定义

主语是句子所要说明的人或事物，是句子的主体。主语的位置通常在句首，一般不省略，可以担当主语的词性有名词、代词、数词、动词不定式、动名词和主语从句。

The students all love their English teacher.

学生们都喜欢他们的英语老师。

They go to school by bus.

他们乘公共汽车上学。

Watching TV too much is bad for your eyes.

看电视太多对你的眼睛有害。

What we need is a good rest.

我们需要的是好好休息。

To see is to believe.

眼见为实。

#### (二) 形式主语与真正主语

主语是不定式短语、动名词短语或分句时，常会放在句尾，用 it 代替它原来的位置，这个 it 称为形式主语，放在句尾的原主语为真实主语。如：

It is very hard to get to sleep. (不定式是真实主语，it是形式主语)

It's a pity that you can't come. (从句是真实主语，it是形式主语)

### 二、谓语

#### (一) 定义

谓语是用来说明主语做什么、是什么或怎么样的，是主语发出的动作，一个简单句中只有一个谓语。谓语中不可缺少的部分是动词，通常叫谓语动词。谓语和主语在人称和数两方面必须一致。

#### (二) 分类

简单谓语：实义动词

复合谓语：助动词+V.原/done/doing、情态动词+V.原、系动词+表

I like walking.

我喜欢走路。

I will move away the bag.

我会移走这个袋子的。

They have finished the task by now.

目前为止他们已经完成了这项任务。

He is singing an English song.

他正在唱一首英文歌。

Lily is interested in English.

莉莉对英语感兴趣。

### 三、宾语

#### (一) 定义

宾语一般用在及物动词后面，或者是介词后面，表示行为对象或结果。充当宾语的可以是名词、动名词、不定式、代词、从句。

I bought a ticket for Milan.

我买了一张去米兰的票。

I enjoyed talking to you.

我喜欢和你交流。

We hoped that all would come well.

我们希望一切都会好起来。

#### (二) 分类

1. 动宾：位于及物动词之后
2. 介宾：位于介词之后
3. 双宾语：位于双宾动词之后的间宾（指人）和直宾（指物）

双宾动词有 give, show, bring, read, pass, send, lend, tell, ask, leave, teach, write, buy, sing 等

I like dogs. 动宾

She laughed at me. 介宾

I gave her a book. 双宾

#### (三) 形式宾语与真实宾语

作宾语用的短语或从句之后接有宾语补语时必须将用作宾语的短语或从句放在补语之后用 it 代替它原来的位置；这个 it 称为形式宾语，放在补语之后的宾语为真实宾语。

常用句型：

1. 主语+v.+it+adj./n. (for/of) sb. to do/从句



We think it difficult for us to finish the work.

译: 我们认为完成这项工作对我们来说很难。

Our teacher thinks it important that we should master a foreign language.

译: 我们老师认为我们掌握一门外语很重要。

## 2. 固定搭配

take it for granted that 译: 认为……理所当然, 想当然地认为

keep it in mind that 译: 把……牢记于心

Peter took it for granted that his wife would stay with him.

译: 彼得想当然地认为他妻子会和他在一起。

## 四、定语

### (一) 定义

定语修饰名词、代词或句子。单词作定语时通常放在它所修饰的名词之前, 这种定语被称为前置定语; 短语和从句作定语时则放在它所修饰的名词之后, 这种定语被称为后置定语。作定语的有名词、代词、形容词、数词、分词及其短语、不定式及其短语、介词短语以及定语从句等。

Ai Yanling is a chemistry teacher.

艾燕玲是一位化学老师。

He was advised to teach the lazy boy a lesson.

有人劝他教训那个懒惰的男孩。

The woman with a baby in her arms is my sister.

怀里抱着孩子的那个女人是我妹妹。

The boys playing football are in Class 2.

踢足球的男孩在二班。

You should do everything that I do.

你应该做我做的每件事。

## 五、状语

### (一) 定义

状语是修饰动词、形容词、副词等的句子成分。状语表示地点、时间、原因、目的、结果、条件、让步、程度、方式、伴随情况等。作状语的有副词、名词、介词短语、分词及其短语、动词不定式及其短语、状语从句等。

He works hard.

他努力工作。

We watch TV most evenings.

大多数晚上我们都看电视。

We learn to swim by swimming.

我们通过游泳学习游泳。

She doesn't like to sit there doing nothing.

她不喜欢坐在那里无所事事。

They will go to work on the farm if the weather is fine tomorrow.

如果明天天气好，他们就去农场干活。

## 六、补语

### (一) 定义

补语是一种补充说明主语和宾语的行为、状态、身份、特征等的句子成分。所以补语可以分为宾语补足语和主语补足语。通常由形容词、名词、代词、数词、分词、不定式等担任。

I found the book very interesting.

我发现这本书很有趣。

He died young.

他英年早逝。

You are wished to study English.

希望你学英语。

I found my car missing.

我发现我的车不见了。

## 七、表语

### (一) 定义

表语是用来说明主语的身份、性质、品性和特征。表语常由名词、形容词、副词、介词短语、不定式、动词的-ing形式、从句来充当。表语总是位于系动词之后。

My bag is on my desk.

我的包在桌子上。

My aunt's hobby is growing roses.

我阿姨的爱好是种植玫瑰。

My opinion is that the plan won't work.

我的意见是这个计划行不通。

I feel much better today.

我今天好多了。

That remains a puzzle to me.

这对我来说仍然是个谜。

## 八、同位语

### (一) 定义

同位语是一个名词或名词词组或从句对另一个名词或代词进行解释或补充说明，这个名

词或名词词组或从句就是同位语。同位语与被它限定的词的格式要一致，并常常紧挨在一起。

John, my brother, is very tall.

约翰，我的兄弟，很高。

We college students are energetic.

我们大学生精力充沛。

He told me the news that he would go abroad.

他告诉我他将要出国。



### 小练笔

判断下列句子中划线部分成分。

1. We have two children, a boy and a girl. 同位语
2. Helping poor people is our duty. 主语
3. I think it wrong to waste time. 宾语
4. The shop stays open. 表语
5. It was raining when we arrived. 状语
6. The person in white is my best friend. 定语
7. The problem was found very difficult. 主补
8. They made a proposal that the meeting should be put off. 同位语
9. Nobody could answer the question. 谓语
10. What caused the accident remains unknown. 主语
11. I am working now. 谓语
12. The teacher gives each of them an eraser. 间宾 直宾
13. My mother likes the coat brought by me. 定语
14. She saw the thief caught by policeman. 宾补
15. They came here by train. 状语
16. Her job is selling computers. 表语

### 第三节 句子结构及句子种类

句子按照结构可划分为简单句、并列句与主从复合句。

句子按照种类可分为陈述句、疑问句（一般疑问句、特殊疑问句、反义疑问句等）、祈使句、感叹句、there be 句型等。

#### 一、简单句

##### （一）五大基本句型

简单句，即只有一个主谓结构的句子。除了特殊情况，英语句子中都有主语、谓语，有时候还有宾语；一般情况下，主语、谓语、宾语的先后顺序是固定的，不可能宾语跑到谓语前面，或者谓语跑到主语前面。目前很多语法书都把英语的简单句归纳为五种基本句型：

1. 主语+谓语（不及物动词）

The actor died. 那个演员死了。

She's gone. 她走了。

2. 主语+谓语（及物动词）+宾语

I like grammar. 我喜欢语法。

She cleaned the room. 她打扫了房间。

3. 主语+谓语+宾语+宾补

They painted the wall white. 他们把墙漆成白色。

We elected him our monitor. 我们选他做我们的班长。

4. 主语+谓语+间宾+直宾

He brought you a dictionary. 他给你带了本字典。

My mother bought me a new dress. 我妈妈给我买了条新裙子。

5. 主语+系动词+表语

God is a girl. 上帝是个女孩。

The leaves turn yellow in autumn. 树叶在秋天变黄了。



小练笔

分析下列中文句子的成分，并将句子翻译为英文。

1. 这个布料摸起来很柔软。

The cloth feels soft. (主系表)

2. 他们工作很努力。

They work hard. (主谓)

3. 植物需要水。

Plants need water. (主谓宾)

4. 我们应该保持植物在阴凉处。

We should keep the plants in the shade. (主谓宾宾补)

5. 他们给了我一些种子。

They gave me some seeds. (主谓间宾直宾)

判断下列句子的句型，并将句子翻译为中文。

1. He is running.

他正在跑步。(主谓)

2. The loud voice from the upstairs made him angry.

从楼上传来的巨大声音让他很生气。(主谓宾宾补)

3. The little boy is asking the teacher all kinds of questions.

小男孩正在问老师所有类型的问题。(主谓间宾直宾)

4. She seemed angry.

她看起来很生气。(主系表)

5. My father bought me a beautiful present.

我父亲给我买了一个漂亮的礼物。(主谓间宾直宾)

## 二、并列句

并列句就是两个或以上的简单句，由并列连词或分号连接而成。各句的意思一般可以单独理解，最后将各句合并即可。常见并列的连词：

### (一) 表并列：and, not only...but also, neither...nor...等

He not only read the book, but also remembered what he had read.

译：他不仅读了那本书，而且还记得所读过的内容。

I can neither fly nor swim.

译：我既不会飞也不会游泳。

### (二) 表转折：but, yet, while 等

He received many honors, yet he often considered himself a failure.

译：他获得了很多荣誉，但他常常把自己看成一个失败者。

I hate grammar, while he loves it.

译：我讨厌语法，而他却喜欢语法。

### (三) 表选择：or, either...or..., otherwise 等

He must like her, or he wouldn't keep calling her.

译：他一定喜欢她，否则不会一直给她打电话。

Shut the window, otherwise it will get too cold in here.

译：关上窗户，否则这里太冷了。

### (四) 表因果：for, so 等

I didn't see the film for I had seen it before.

译：我没有看电影因为我之前已经看过了。

It was still painful so I went to see a doctor.

译：身体仍然很痛所以我去看医生了。

### 三、主从复合句

#### (一) 定义

由从属连词连接两个或两个以上简单句的句子。即某个句子成分由一个从句充当。

#### (二) 常见的从属连词

that, what, which, who, whom, whose, when, where, why, how...

#### (三) 分类与类型判定

1. **从句的划分：**从从属连词开始，划至其后的第二个谓语前；若其后没有第二个谓语，则划至标点符号位置。
2. **名词性从句**（主语从句、宾语从句、宾语从句、同位语从句）

##### (1) 主语从句

位置：① 主语从句+谓语

② It+谓语+其他+主语从句 (it 作形式主语)

What the man chooses is to live alone.

译：这个男人选择的是独居。

It is important that we should solve the problem right now.

译：我们立刻解决这个问题是重要的。

##### (2) 宾语从句

位置：① 及物动词+宾语从句

② 介词+宾语从句

③ 双宾动词+间接宾语(sb.)+宾语从句

④ be+adj(sure/glad/aware 等)+宾语从句

⑤ 及物动词+it+宾补+宾语从句

We all know that the man chooses to live alone.

我们都知道这个男人选择独居。

I am thinking about what I should do.

译：我在考虑我该做什么。

He has told me that he will go to Shanghai tomorrow.

译：他已经告诉我他明天要去上海。

I am glad that we can make friends with each other.

译：我很高兴能和你交朋友。

I feel it a pity that I haven't been to the get-together.

译：我没去聚餐，感觉非常遗憾。

(3) 表语从句

位置：系动词+表语从句

The sad thing is that the ugly man chooses to live alone.

可悲的是，这个丑男人选择独居。

His suggestion is that we should stay calm.

译：他的建议是我们应该保持冷静。

(4) 同位语从句

位置：抽象名词+同位语从句

常见的抽象名词：advice (建议), demand (要求, 需求), doubt (怀疑), fact (事实), hope (希望), idea (想法), information (信息), message (消息), word (消息), news (消息), order (命令), problem (问题), promise (期望), question (问题), request (要求), suggestion (建议), truth (事实), wish (希望) 等。

The fact that the ugly man chooses to live alone was known to us.

译：我们都知道这个事实：这个丑男人选择独居。

He must answer the question whether he agrees with it.

译：他必须回答这个问题：他是否同意这件事。

### 3. 定语从句

(1) 定义：在复合句中，修饰某一名词或代词的从句，称为定语从句，也叫形容词性从句。

(2) 三要素：先行词+关系词+从句

先行词：被定语从句修饰的名词或代词。

关系词：引导定语从句，指代先行词并在从句中充当成分。

从句：位于先行词之后。

He is the man who wants to see you.

译：他就是想见你的人。

三要素：先行词：the man; 关系词：who; 从句：who wants to see you

I still remember the place where I met her for the first time.

译：我仍然记得我第一次见到她的地方。

三要素：先行词：the place; 关系词：where; 从句：where I met her for the first time

The first thing that he noticed was her dark, long hair.

译：他首先注意到她的是一头又黑又长的头发。

三要素：先行词：thing; 关系词：that; 从句：that he noticed

### 4. 状语从句

(1) 定义

状语从句主要用来修饰主句或主句的谓语。一般可分为九大类，分别表示时间、地点、原因、目的、结果、条件、让步、比较和方式。

- (2) 常见的状语从句的连词：when, while, as soon as, before, after, since, where, because, so that, in order that, lest, in case, for fear that, so...that, such...that, if, unless, as/so long as, though, although, even if, even though 等。

While John was watching TV, his wife was cooking.

译：当约翰看电视时，他的妻子正在做饭。

The boss asked the secretary to hurry up with the letters so that he could sign them.

译：老板要求秘书快写函件以便他能在上面签字。

He got up so early that he caught the first bus.

译：他起床很早，赶上了第一班公共汽车。

You will certainly succeed so long as you keep on trying.

译：只要你继续努力，你一定会成功的。

Although it is difficult, we will still try our best to finish the task.

译：虽然很困难，我们仍然会尽全力完成任务。



### 小练笔

划出从句位置，判断从句类型并翻译下列句子。

- I'll tell you why I asked you to come.  
我会告诉你我为什么要你来。(宾语从句)
- I took an umbrella with me in case it should rain.  
译：我带了把伞，以防下雨。(状语从句)
- The picture that we are looking at was drawn by a fifteen-year-old student.  
译：我们正在观看的这幅画由一位 15 岁的学生所画。(定语从句)
- He has become what he wanted to be ten years ago.  
他已经成为了他 10 年前想成为的样子。(表语从句)
- The king's decision that the prisoner should be set free surprised all the people.  
国王关于释放囚犯的决定使全体人民感到惊讶。(同位语从句)
- Whether we will go for an outing tomorrow remains unknown.  
我们明天是否要出去还不知道。(主语从句)
- He is the man whom I saw yesterday.  
译：他就是我昨天见的那个人。(定语从句)
- The old man always enjoys swimming even though the weather is rough.  
译：老人总是去游泳，即使天气很恶劣。(状语从句)



## 四、句子种类

### (一) 陈述句

1. 定义：用以陈述事实或观点的句子叫作陈述句。

### 2. 语序

陈述句的语序一般是主语+谓语动词，或主语+系动词+表语。

The river flooded.

河水泛滥成灾了。

Tom is my friend.

汤姆是我的朋友

### 3. 分类

陈述句分为肯定结构和否定结构。

否定结构：陈述句的谓语动词若含有 be 动词、情态动词、助动词，则在谓语动词的第一个 be/情/助后面添加 not，若句子中不含 be 动词、情态动词、助动词，只有实义动词，要借助助动词 do/does/did，再添加 not，其后跟动词原型。



小练笔

把下列句子改为否定句。

1. 她以前是一位老师。

She was a teacher.

否定：She was not (wasn't) a teacher.

2. 鲍勃可以游泳。

Bob can swim.

否定：Bob can not (can't) swim.

3. 她近来睡得好。

She has been sleeping well recently.

否定：She has not (hasn't) been sleeping well recently.

4. 我们经常熬夜。

We usually stay late.

否定：We usually do not (don't) stay late.

### (二) 疑问句

用以提问的句子叫作疑问句。疑问句分为一般疑问句、特殊疑问句、反义疑问句等。

### 1. 一般疑问句

需要用肯定词 yes 或否定词 no 来回答，因此也叫是非疑问句。其基本结构为：be 动词/情态动词/助动词+主语+剩余谓语？

Is your name Tony?

你的名字是托尼吗？

Do they go to cinema once a week?

他们一周去一次电影院吗？

## 2. 特殊疑问句

- (1) 定义：特殊疑问句，是用来对句子中某一特殊部分提问的疑问句。一般以疑问词（疑问代词 what, which, who, whom, whose 和 疑问副词 when, where, why, how）以及 how often, how long, how far, how much, how many, how old, what color, what size 开始。通常特殊疑问句构成：特殊疑问词+一般疑问句？

注意：如对主语或主语的定语提问，其语序是特殊疑问词 (+主语)+陈述句序。

What is your name?

你的名字是什么？

When will he arrive?

他什么时候到？

- (2) 回答

特殊疑问句一般使用完全答语，即重复全部句子成分，但名词常由代词代替。当然亦可以只回答提问部分。

—When did the teacher read an interesting story to the students?

什么时候教师给学生读了一个有趣的故事？

—He read it to them yesterday.

他是昨天给他们读的。

—What time does the next class begin?

下节课什么时间开始？

—At ten.

十点。

## 3. 反义疑问句

反义疑问句在陈述句之后，对陈述句所说的事实或观点提出疑问。这种疑问句由 be/情态动词/助动词 (n't)+人称代词主格 构成。陈述句如是肯定结构，其后的反义疑问句用 否定结构；反之，陈述句如是否定结构，其后的反义疑问句则用 肯定结构。

—Your sister hasn't returned from San Francisco yet, has she?

你妹妹还没从旧金山回来，是吗？

—We were late, weren't we?

我们晚了，不是吗？

☆ 如陈述句无 be/情态动词/助动词，反义疑问句则用助动词 do/ does/ did。

—John likes tea, doesn't he?

约翰喜欢喝茶，不是吗？

You come from Beijing, don't you?

你来自北京，不是吗？

### (三) 祈使句

用以表示请求、命令、劝告、建议等的句子叫做祈使句，祈使句的主语常为第二人称 you。但主语常省略。祈使句一般没有时态的变化，也不能与情态动词连用。谓语用动词原形，否定结构用 don't 加动词原形。

Put those things back in their places.

把那些东西放回原处。

Don't touch me!

不要碰我！

### (四) 感叹句

用以表示喜怒哀乐等强烈感情的句子叫做感叹句，感叹句句末常用感叹号，亦可用句号。

1. what 引导的感叹句式：

What+a/an+adj.+可数名词单数 (+主谓)!

What+adj.+可数名词复数/不可数名词 (+主谓)!

What delightful weather we are having! 这天气多好呀!

What a foolish mistake I have made! 我犯了一个多么愚蠢的错误呀!

2. how 引导的感叹句式：

How+adj./adv. (+主谓)!

How clever he is! 他多聪明呀!

How quickly you walk! 你走得多快呀!

### (五) there be 句型

there be 句型以引词 there 开始，后常接动词 be 的各种形式，再后才是主语，主语之后又常有表时间和地点的状语。这种结构中的 there 本身无词义，其后的动词 be 具有存在，有之义。

There is a lamp on the table.

桌上有一盏灯。

There will be a football match next week.

下周有一个足球比赛。

☆ there be 结构除可用 be 外，还可用其它动词如：live, remain, exist, stand, lie, come。

Once upon a time there lived a king in China.

从前中国有一个国王。

## 第四节 时态语态

### 一、时态

定义：谓语动词在不同时间下呈现的不同状态。（以 make 代指谓语动词）

时态	一般式 (do)	进行式 (be doing)	完成式 (have done)	完成进行式 (have been doing)
现在	make/makes	am/is/are making	have/has made	have/has been making
过去	made	was/were making	had made	had been making
将来	will make	will be making	will have made	will have been making
过去将来	would make	would be making	would have made	would have been making

注：其否定形式在第一个 be/情/助后加 not，若为实义动词，则借助助动词 do/does/did，在其后加 not。

#### （一）一般现在时

1. 定义：表示现在经常性或反复发生的动作或存在的状态。

2. 用法：

(1) 与 often, always, usually, sometimes, every day, once a week 等连用；

Linda always goes to the library at the center of the town.

(2) 表示客观真理、普遍事实、习俗谚语用一般现在时；

Our teacher told us that the earth turns from west to east.

(3) 主将从现：在时间或条件状语从句中，主句用一般将来时，从句用一般现在时或现在完成时表将来；

① 时间状从引导词：when/before/after/the moment/the instant/as soon as/till/until...

② 条件状从引导词：if/unless/as long as/supposing/suppose that/providing/provided that...



小练笔

1. If Jim \_\_\_\_\_ free tomorrow, I will ask Tom to go instead. (B)

A. doesn't be

B. isn't

C. won't

D. won't be

2. I will call you as soon as I \_\_\_\_\_ him. (C)

A. am meeting

B. am to meet

C. meet

D. will meet

#### （二）一般过去时

1. 定义：表示过去发生的动作或情况。

2. 用法：与 yesterday, last week, ago, just now 等表示过去的时间状语连用。

Jenny received a present from Peter yesterday, but she didn't want to accept it.

#### （三）一般将来时

1. 定义：表示将来发生的动作，事情或存在的状态。
2. 用法：
  - (1) 与 next week, tomorrow, in the future, in/within+一段时间, soon 等表示将来的时间状语连用。

The scientists will send a new satellite to collect more information from the space in two years.

- (2) 可以代替 will do 的近义表达方式：

=am/is/are going to do sth.

= am/is/are to do sth.

= am/is/are about to do sth.

=am/is/are on the point of doing sth.

The sky is getting dark. It is going to rain. Let's leave here quickly.

Either you or the headmaster is to hand out the prizes to these gifted students at the meeting.

#### (四) 过去将来时

1. 定义：表示过去某个时候看来即将发生的动作或存在的状态。

He told us that his factory would use robots to do most of the work in the future.

2. 可以代替 would do 的近义表达方式：

=was/were going to do sth.

=was/were to do sth.

=was/were about to do sth.

=was/were on the point of doing sth.

I was going to vote for Tommy, but I changed my mind and voted for Michelle.

I was about to leave when something occurred which attracted my attention.

#### (五) 进行时

1. 定义：表示现在/过去/将来具体某一个时间点正在发生的事情或进行的动作。
2. 用法：

- (1) 现在进行时可与 now, at the moment, at present 等时间状语连用；

过去进行时可与 at this/that time yesterday 等时间状语连用；

将来进行时可与 at this/that time tomorrow 等时间状语连用。

The students will have an exam tomorrow, so they are preparing for the exam now.

Henry was fixing his car when he heard the screams.

At this time tomorrow morning, I will be giving a speech in front of all students.

- (2) 表位移的动词 leave, arrive, come, go, start, begin, take off 等词出现，一般用进行时表将来。但与列车，飞机，地铁等按时刻表，或计划发生的事情连用时，则用一般现在时表示一般将来。



## 小练笔

1. She \_\_\_\_\_ tomorrow and you'd better see her off. (C)  
A. leaves                      B. left                      C. is leaving                      D. leaving
2. —Why is your father in such a hurry?  
—He \_\_\_\_\_ for Shanghai to attend an important meeting. The plane \_\_\_\_\_ at six. (D)  
A. will leave, leave                      B. leaves, is leaving  
C. is leaving, will leave                      D. is leaving, leaves

## (六) 完成时

## 1. 定义:

现在完成时: 表示一个动作从过去持续到现在, 或截止到现在为止已完成。

过去完成时: 表示到过去某一时间之前就已完成某事, 即过去的过去。

将来完成时: 表示到将来某一时间之前就已完成某事。

In recent years, our school has employed a large number of new teachers.

With great efforts, I finally found the key that I had lost a week before.

By the end of next month, he will have traveled 1000 miles on foot.

## 2. 用法:

## (1) 与之连用的时间状语:

① 现在完成时常与 already, yet, recently, lately, so far, in/over/during the past/last 时间段等时间状语连用。

A recent study found that the number of smartphone users has increased sharply so far.

In the last ten years, the organization has organized dozens of international meetings.

## ② since 的用法:

a) since+过去的时间点;

b) since+从句 (从句用一般过去时; 主句用现在完成时)



## 小练笔

1. I \_\_\_\_\_ a habit of running in the morning since I was in kindergarten. (C)  
A. keeping                      B. kept                      C. have kept                      D. had kept
2. The country life he was used to \_\_\_\_\_ greatly since last year. (A)  
A. has changed                      B. changing                      C. change                      D. changed
- ③ “四大金刚” 的用法:

by/up to/till/until 后面加表示现在的时间状语, 句子用现在完成时; 加表示过去的时间状语, 句子用过去完成时; 加将来的时间状语, 对应句子用将来完成时。



### 小练笔

1. —Can I have your report this afternoon?  
—This afternoon? I don't think I \_\_\_\_\_ by then. (B)
- A. will be finishing                      B. will have finished  
C. am finishing                          D. have finished
2. You should have put the milk in the icebox; I expect it \_\_\_\_\_ undrinkable up to now. (C)
- A. become                    B. had become               C. has become               D. became

(2) 与之连用的句型:

① 一见钟情:

结构: 主语+had+hardly/scarcely/no sooner+done+when/than+从句主语+did, 表示 “一……就……”。

a) 搭配: hardly/scarcely 搭配 when, no sooner 搭配 than;

b) 时态: 主句用过去完成时 (had done), 从句用一般过去时 (did);

c) 倒装: Hardly/Scarcely/No sooner+had+主句主语+done+when/than+从句主语+did。



### 小练笔

1. No sooner \_\_\_\_\_ home than it began to rain. (B)
- A. I had reached                      B. had I reached
- C. I have reached                  D. have I reached
2. I \_\_\_\_\_ hardly stepped into the classroom when the bell rang. (A)
- A. had                      B. have                      C. would                      D. could

② by the time 的用法 “到……时候”:

by the time+从句 (从句用一般过去时), 主句用过去完成时。

by the time+从句 (从句用一般现在时表将来), 主句用将来完成时。



### 小练笔

1. By the time the course comes to an end, \_\_\_\_\_ a lot about computer. (A)
- A. we'll have learned                      B. we'll learn
- C. we're leaning                          D. we have learned
2. By the time I got there, the match \_\_\_\_\_ already. (A)
- A. had finished              B. was finished              C. has finished              D. finished

## 二、语态

(一) 定义: 指的是主语与谓语动词之间的关系, 主语是动作的发出者即为主动关系, 主语





## 第五节 主谓一致

### 一、定义

主语和谓语在人称和数量上要保持一致。一般情况下，主语是复数，谓语也用复数形式，主语是单数或不可数，谓语要用单数形式。

### 二、谓语动词的单数变化规则

谓语动词	单数	复数
be 动词	<u>am/is/was</u>	are/were
助动词	does/has	<u>do/have</u>
实义动词	直接加 s	<u>动词原形</u>
	以 sh/ch/x/o 结尾的词, 加 es	
	以辅音字母加 y 结尾的词, 变 y 为 i, 再加 es	
情态动词	无单复数变化	
注意: 谓语动词的单复数不存在于过去时态中, be 动词除外。		

### 三、原则

#### (一) 就近原则

当前后两个主语由 not only...but also, neither...nor, either...or, not...but, or 等连词连接以及 there be 句型中时，谓语与离它较近的主语的单复数保持一致。



小练笔

- There \_\_\_\_\_ some bread and two cakes in the plate. (B)  
A. are                      B. is                      C. have                      D. has
- Not only I but also my parents \_\_\_\_\_ deeply moved by his emotional singing last night. (A)  
A. were                      B. was                      C. is                      D. are

#### (二) 就远原则

当前后两个主语由以下词连接时，谓语的单复数与离它较远的主语的单复数保持一致。

和……一起: with, together with, along with, coupled with, accompanied with, as well as

除了: but, except

除了……还: besides, in addition to

包括: including

而不是: rather than



小练笔

- Nowadays, cycling, along with jogging and swimming, \_\_\_\_\_ as one of the best all-round forms of exercise. (B)  
A. regard                      B. is regarded                      C. are regarded                      D. regards
- Tom's parents' behavior, as well as their words \_\_\_\_\_ a key effect on him during the past twenty years. (C)  
A. have                      B. have had                      C. has had                      D. has

#### 四、谓语动词用单数的情况

- (一) to do 不定式, doing 动名词, 疑问词+to do, 从句作主语时, 一般情况下, 谓语用单数。
- (二) many a, more than one, every, each 修饰主语时, 即使有 and 连接, 谓语用单数。
- (三) 表示时间, 距离, 金额, 重量, 空间, 体积等意义的复数名词作主语, 谓语用单数。
- (四) one of+复数名词, 做主语, 谓语用单数。
- (五) 复合不定代词 (如: someone, everything 等) 做主语, 谓语用单数。



小练笔

- Either you or one of your students \_\_\_\_\_ to attend the meeting there. (A)  
A. is                      B. are                      C. were                      D. be
- Many a student \_\_\_\_\_ happy to hear the plan, and nearly every boy and every girl \_\_\_\_\_ in favor of this amazing plan. (C)  
A. is; are                      B. are; are                      C. is; is                      D. are: is
- Knowing the advantages and weaknesses of ourselves \_\_\_\_\_ easy at that time because of our young age. (B)  
A. isn't                      B. wasn't                      C. aren't                      D. weren't
- Look! Someone \_\_\_\_\_ the classroom. Do you know who did this? (C)  
A. cleaned                      B. is cleaning                      C. has cleaned                      D. will clean

#### 五、谓语动词用复数的情况

- (一) the+adj. 表示一类人做主语时, 谓语用复数。
- (二) and 和 both...and...连接两个主语时, 谓语用复数。
- 注意: 如 and 连接的两个主语只有第一个前有冠词修饰时, 或表示同一事物概念时, 谓语用单数。



小练笔

- The teacher and writer \_\_\_\_\_ coming to our school this afternoon. (A)  
A. is                      B. are                      C. be                      D. was

## 六、集合名词的主谓一致

(一) 常视为单数的集合名词做主语, 谓语用单数。如: machinery 器械, merchandise 商品, furniture 家具, luggage 行李, equipment 设备, jewellery 珠宝, poetry 诗歌总称。

(二) 常视为复数的集合名词做主语, 谓语用复数。如: police 警察, people 人们, youth 年轻人, cattle 牛群。

### (三) 可单可复的集合名词

1. 当指整个集体 (sth.的概念) 时, 谓语用单数。
2. 当指集体中的成员 (sb.的概念) 时, 谓语用复数。

如: family, class, team, personnel, staff.



### 小练笔

1. The medical team \_\_\_\_\_ 12 doctors. (A)
- A. is made up of                                      B. are made up of
- C. made up of                                        D. was made up of
2. All the furniture in this apartment \_\_\_\_\_ in good condition. That is why I think the rent of it is reasonable. (A)
- A. is    B. are    C. was    D. were

### 七、谓语动词单复数由后面名词单复数决定

(一) the majority of/plenty of/lots of/a lot of/a multitude of 等表示“许多”的短语;

(二) all of>most of>half of>part of>some of>the rest of>no 等表示“部分”的短语;

(三) 分数和百分数+of 后接名词。



### 小练笔

1. It was reported that most of the disabled in this city \_\_\_\_\_ in favor of the health care reform.  
(A)  
A. were                      B. was                      C. are                      D. is
2. Nearly \_\_\_\_\_ of the earth \_\_\_\_\_ covered by sea. (B)  
A. three fourth; is                      B. three fourths; is  
C. three fourth; are                      D. three fourths; are

## 九、特殊用法

(一) the number of+复数名词, 表示“……的数量”, 谓语用单数; a number of+复数名词, 表示“许多……”, 谓语用复数。



- 好老师教育四川分校·英语教研组  
第 40 页 / 共 280 页

## 第六节 倒装

语序分类：陈述语序：主语+谓语

倒装语序：谓语+主语

倒装的作用：强调作用

倒装的分类：

全部倒装：谓语的全部放于主语前：全部倒装条件+全部谓语+主语

部分倒装：谓语的部分放于主语前：部分倒装条件+be/情/助+主语+剩余谓语

In the beautiful garden stand an artificial hill (假山) and some tall trees.

### 一、全部倒装条件

表时间 (如 then, now...), 地点方位趋势的副词 (如 here/there, in/out, up/down, away 等), 介词短语 (如 at the top of ..., in front of..., under...等) 位于句首做状语, 且主语为名词时, 该句采用全部倒装。

注意：全部倒装主语不能为人称代词，谓语不能用进行时。



小练笔

- Between the two mountains \_\_\_\_\_ and they've decided to build a ropeway. (A)
 

A. lies a very deep valley	B. does a very deep valley lie
C. a very deep valley lies	D. a very deep valley lays
- \_\_\_\_\_ and caught the mouse. (C)
 

A. Up the cat jumped	B. Up did the cat jump
C. Up jumped the cat	D. Jumped up the cat

### 二、部分倒装条件

- 当表否定的词/词组/句式位于句首时, 其所在的句子用部分倒装。
  - 表示否定的词位于句首时, 比如: no/not/never/seldom/hardly/scarcely/rarely/few/little 等;
  - 表示否定的词组位于句首时, 比如: by no means/in no case/in no way/in no sense/under no circumstance/on no account/at no time 等表示“绝不”的短语;
  - 含否定词的句式且否定词位于句首时, 比如:
 

Not only+be/情/助+主语+剩余谓语+but also+主语+谓语

Hardly/Scarcely+had+主语+done+when+主语+谓语 (did)

No sooner+had+主语+done+than+主语+谓语 (did)

Not until+时间状语/时间状语从句+ be/情/助+主语+剩余谓语



小练笔

- Never \_\_\_\_\_ a more beautiful sunrise since the day I was born. (D)  
A. had I seen                      B. I saw                      C. did I see                      D. have I seen
- Not only \_\_\_\_\_, but \_\_\_\_\_ his wallet stolen yesterday. (A)  
A. did he fall over; he had                      B. he fell over; did he have  
C. he fell over; he had                      D. did he fall over; did he have
- No sooner \_\_\_\_\_ to marry him \_\_\_\_\_ to regret doing it. (C)  
A. she had agreed; that she started                      B. did she agree; than she started  
C. had she agreed; than she started                      D. had she agreed; when she started
- Not until I began to work \_\_\_\_\_ how much time I had wasted.  
A. didn't I realize                      B. did I realize  
C. had I realized                      D. realized
- As he has been in a terrible state of mind these days, in no way \_\_\_\_\_ succeed in the coming English speech competition. (C)  
A. he does                      B. does he                      C. will he                      D. he will

- “so...that...”表“如此……以至于”，当 so+adj./adv. 位于句首时，其所在的句子用部分倒装。其结构为：

So+adj./adv.+be/情/助+(剩余谓语)+that 从句



### 小练笔

- \_\_\_\_\_ that he found it difficult to stop at the red light. (C)  
A. So fast he was driving                      B. So fast he drove  
C. So fast was he driving                      D. So fast drove he
- \_\_\_\_\_ that their marriage broke up in the end. (A)  
A. So often did the couple quarrel                      B. So often does the couple quarrel  
C. So often quarreled the couple                      D. So often quarrels the couple
- 当 only+状语/状语从句 位于句首时，句子用部分倒装。



### 小练笔

- Only under special circumstances \_\_\_\_\_ to use the fire hose, otherwise they will be punished. (A)  
A. are people permitted                      B. people are permitted  
C. people permitted                      D. did people permit
- Only when \_\_\_\_\_ in the afternoon \_\_\_\_\_ able to leave. (B)

- A. the match was over; they were  
C. was the match over; were they

- B. the match was over; were they  
D. was the match over; they were

### 三、其他倒装情况

#### 1. “同样”倒, “的确”不倒

##### (1) 表“同样”:

- ① 肯定语境: so+be/情/助+主语  
② 否定语境: neither/nor+be/情/助+主语

##### (2) 表“的确”: so+主语+be/情/助



#### 小练笔

1. —Tom never has breakfast at school.

—\_\_\_\_\_. (D)

A. So doesn't Mary

B. So has Mary

C. Neither has Mary

D. Nor does Mary

2. —Jim went swimming with his parents yesterday afternoon.

—\_\_\_\_\_. (A)

A. So did Mary

B. So was Mary

C. So Mary does

D. So Mary did

2. as 引导让步状语从句位于句首表“虽然”时, 其所在的句子结构为:

adj./adv./n.+as+主语+谓语 (注意: 名词前省掉冠词)



#### 小练笔

1. Child \_\_\_\_\_ he was, he began to teach himself English. (B)

A. although

B. as

C. like

D. when

2. \_\_\_\_\_ in the past, at the moment it is a favorite choice for wedding gown. (D)

A. Unpopular as has white been

B. As unpopular white has been

C. As white has been unpopular

D. Unpopular as white has been

## 第七节 非谓语

非谓语动词就是在句子中不能单独做谓语的动词形式。一个句子通常情况下只能有一个谓语动词, 当句中已经有了谓语动词, 要选或要填的动词就只能用非谓语形式了。

### 一、非谓语形式

分类	形式		与谓语的关系
	主动	被动	
to do (将来或目的)	to do	<u>to be done</u>	之后
	to have done	to have been done	之前
	to be doing	/	同时
doing (进行或伴随)	doing	being done	同时
	<u>having done</u>	having been done	之前
done (完成或被动)	/	done	/

注意：非谓语的否定形式在其前加上 not

## 二、非谓语的用法

### (一) 充当主语：

1. 不定式 to do 和动名词 doing 做句子主语时，其后谓语用单数形式。

To protect the environment is important.

Reading English newspaper is one of the best ways to learn English news words.

2. it 作形式主语：

(1) It is+adj./n.+to do sth.

(2) It is+adj.+for sb./ of sb.+to do sth.

(3) It is no use/no good/no help/no point/no sense/useless/a waste of time+doing sth.



小练笔

根据汉语提示完成句子

1. It's hard to keep in touch (保持联系) with her.
2. It is more and more difficult for physical shops to compete (竞争) with online shops.
3. It is useless arguing (争论) with him because he is stubborn.

### (二) 充当宾语：

1. 不定式作宾语的情况：v.+to do/to be done

wish/hope 希望, plan 计划, fail 失败, choose 选择, claim 声称, refuse 拒绝, intend 打算, propose 建议, volunteer 自愿, attempt 试图, afford 负担得起, long 渴望, happen 碰巧, hesitate 犹豫, determine 决定, manage 设法成功, promise 承诺, seem 似乎……

For years researchers have attempted to show that television is dangerous to children.

2. 动名词作宾语的情况：v.+doing/being done



admit 准许, acknowledge 承认, enjoy 享受, escape 避免; 逃避, deny 否认, postpone=delay=prolong 延迟, resent 怨恨, mind 介意, miss 错过, risk 冒风险, finish 完成, avoid 避免, consider 认为, fancy 想象, excuse 原谅, include 包括, imagine 想象, resist 抵制, suggest 建议, advise 建议, allow 允许, practice 练习, appreciate 感激, can't help 情不自禁, feel like 想要, be fond of + doing/being done 喜欢……

I was so angry that I felt like throwing something at him.

3. 下列动词或词组既可以跟动名词作宾语, 也可以跟不定式作宾语, 但意义上有区别, 要特别注意。

forget/remember to do sth. 忘记/记得去做某事

go on to do sth. 接着做另一件事

forget/remember doing sth. 忘记/记得已经做过某事

go on doing sth. 继续做同一件事

regret to do sth. 遗憾去做某事

stop to do sth. 停下来去做另一件事

regret doing sth. 后悔做过某事

stop doing sth. 停止做一件事

try to do sth. 努力/试图做某事

mean to do sth. 打算做某事

try doing sth. 尝试着做某事

mean doing sth. 意味着做某事

make up one's mind to do sth. 下定决心做某事

mind doing sth. 介意做某事

I regret to tell you that the store has stopped selling their specialties.

4. it 作形式宾语:

主语+谓语 (think/find/make/believe/consider...)+it+宾补+to do sth.

Can you give me some advice? I find it difficult to motivate my workers to work more efficiently.



#### 小练笔

- The boy lied to his parents in order to escape \_\_\_\_\_. (D)  
A. punish                      B. to punish                      C. punishing                      D. being punished
- I didn't mean \_\_\_\_\_ anything, but these apples looked so good that I couldn't resist \_\_\_\_\_ one. (C)  
A. to eat; to try                      B. eating; to try  
C. to eat; trying                      D. eating; trying
- He makes \_\_\_\_\_ a rule \_\_\_\_\_ a diary every day. (D)  
A. this; to keep                      B. that; to keep  
C. it; keeping                      D. it; to keep

### (三) 充当补语



A. run

B. running

C. being run

D. to run

**(四) 充当状语****1. 目的状语: (位于句后时, 其前不能用逗号和前句隔开)**

(1) to do: 可位于句前和句后

(2) in order to do: 可位于句前和句后

(3) so as to do: 只可位于句后

To complete the project before the deadline, he had to stay up late.

**2. 结果状语**

(1) only to do

(2) only to be done

We've waited for the result for nearly three hours, only to be told to come again the next day.

**3. 非谓语作状语和独立主格作状语的区别**

- |   |                                       |
|---|---------------------------------------|
| { | <u>非谓语..., 主语+谓语+...</u>              |
|   | 主语+谓语+..., 非谓语...                     |
| { | (with)+名词/代词+非谓语..., 主语+谓语+...        |
|   | 主语+谓语+..., <u>(with)+名词/代词+非谓语...</u> |

**小练笔**

1. \_\_\_\_\_ how to do the homework, I went to ask my teacher for instruction. (A)

A. Not knowing

B. Not know

C. Knowing not

D. Not known

2. \_\_\_\_\_ some money, he finally was able to buy his mother those lovely flowers. (D)

A. To save

B. Saving

C. Saved

D. Having saved

3. The decision \_\_\_\_\_, what is to be done now is how to carry it out. (C)

A. been made

B. has been made

C. having been made

D. having been making

**(五) 充当定语**

doing 表主动, 进行, 事物本质

done 表被动, 完成, 人的感受

to do/to be done 表将来

Many graduates lacking confidence find it hard to accomplish the tutor's task.

The question to be discussed at tomorrow's meeting is very important.

The research, conducted by Tsinghua University, shows that different parents have different approaches to these problems.

## 第四章 语篇

### Passage 1

Today, I felt terrible. My head was full of problems and confusion (混乱). I decided to take a walk even though I didn't know where to go. The most special thing happened when I was out for this walk.

I saw an old man sitting on a chair. He was a seller of second-hand shoes. I thought he looked at least 70 years old. He seemed so tired and nobody was buying his shoes. I wanted to give him something but I had not brought anything with me.

Then, a little girl came toward him. I heard the child say, "Grandfather, may I polish your shoes?" That old man took pity on her, smiled, and gave her a shoe to polish.

The girl told him she needed money to buy her brother a new school uniform.

"Oh, little girl. Just stop doing this. Come with me and I will buy you a uniform." Then they walked to a market, and he bought her brother a uniform.

The girl said "thanks" to him and left, leaving the old man smiling.

He walked away from the market, but I stopped him. I whispered in his ear, "You are a hero! Thank you for your kindness!" As I walked away, I looked back and I could see him still smiling.

I was blown away by the kindness I had just seen. Someone who had so little was so generous! Amazing! My own sadness had completely disappeared, chased away by the light of this kind act.

I began realizing that I have a lot to be thankful for. I hope, some day, I can show my appreciation of what I have by following the example of the old man. He only had a little, but shared it so beautifully with someone who had nothing.

#### 【全文翻译】

今天，我感觉很糟糕。我的脑子里都是问题和困惑，所以我决定出去走走，尽管我不知道该去向何处。在我散步的路上，发生了一件很特别的事情。

我看到一个老人坐在椅子上，他是一个卖二手鞋的。我猜想他至少有 70 岁，他似乎特别地疲惫，没有人买他的鞋，我想要给他点什么但是我什么都没带就出门了。

随后，一个小女孩朝那个老人走去，我听到小女孩说：“老爷爷，我能帮您擦鞋吗？”那个老人同情地看着她，笑了笑，给了她一双鞋。

这个小女孩告诉老人说她需要钱去给她的弟弟买一件新的校服。

“哦，小姑娘，别做这些了。跟我来，我给你买一件新校服。”然后他们走向了市场，老人家给这个小女孩的弟弟买了一件新校服。

小女孩对老人说了谢谢之后离开了，老人很高兴地微笑着。

老人准备从集市离开，我拦住了他，并在他耳边小声说道：“你是一个英雄，感谢你的善良仁慈。”当我离开时，回头看向老人家，他还在那里微笑着。

我被自己所见的善举震惊了。一个自己拥有很少的人竟然如此慷慨，太让人惊讶了。我的悲伤完全被他这种善良的行为驱赶得烟消云散。

我开始意识到我有很多需要感恩的。希望有一天，我能够以老人家为榜样去尽我所能表达我的感谢。他拥有少之又少，但是却以一种如此美丽的方式与一无所有的人分享。

### 一、Reading and comprehension 阅读理解题

1. What did the girl need?

A. A pair of new shoes.

B. A uniform for her brother.

C. A uniform for herself.

D. A pair of second-hand shoes.

【本题答案】B

【本题解析】本题考查**细节题**。根据文章第四段“The girl told him she needed money to buy her brother a new school uniform”可知，这个女孩要给她的弟弟买一身新校服。综上所述，该题选择B。

2. Who did the girl clean the shoes for?

A. Her brother.

B. The writer.

C. The old man.

D. Herself.

【本题答案】C

【本题解析】本题考查**推理题**。文中第二段第一句就提到了 an old man，后文中也提到了 the old man。综上所述，该题选择C。

3. From the passage, we know that the old man was \_\_\_\_\_.

A. rich

B. dishonest

C. selfish

D. poor

【本题答案】D

【本题解析】本题考查**细节题**。根据文章第二段的描述，这个老人在卖二手鞋并且没有人买他的鞋，以及倒数第二段“someone who had so little was so generous”可知，这个老人家是贫穷的。综上所述，该题选择D。

4. What would be the best title for the passage?

A. A kind shoe seller

B. A pair of old shoes

C. A clever little girl

D. A girl's new uniform

【本题答案】A

【本题解析】本题考查**主旨题**。本文主要讲的是一个卖二手鞋的老爷家的善良与无私，因此 a kind shoe seller 作为题目最合适。综上所述，该题选择A。

5. What can we learn from the passage?

A. If we have only a little, we shouldn't help others.

B. When we have problems, we must ask others for help.

C. We should learn to be thankful and share what we have with others.

D. When we meet with difficulties, we should complain about them.

【本题答案】C

【本题解析】本题考查**推理题**。A 选项意思为“如果我们只有一点钱，我们不应该帮助他人”；B 选项意思为“当我们遇到困难时，我们必须向他人求助”；C 选项意思为“我们应该学着感恩并且与他人分享我们所拥有的”；D 选项意思为“当我们遇到困难时，我们应该抱怨”。根据文章最后一段第一句及文章中心思想可知 C 选项正确。综上所述，该题选择 C。

## 二、New words and expressions 生词和短语

写出下列词汇的词性及中文意思。

- |                                       |   |
|---------------------------------------|---|
| 1. terrible /'terəbl/ <u>adj.</u> 可怕的 | 8. market /'mɑ:rkɪt/ <u>n.</u> 市场             |
| 2. problem /'prɑ:bləm/ <u>n.</u> 问题   | 9. kindness /'kaɪndnəs/ <u>n.</u> 友善          |
| 3. special /'speʃl/ <u>adj.</u> 特殊的   | 10. example /ɪg'zæmpl/ <u>n.</u> 例子           |
| 4. seem /si:m/ <u>v.</u> 看来           | 11. sadness /'sædnəs/ <u>n.</u> 伤心            |
| 5. toward /tə'wɔ:rd/ <u>prep.</u> 朝向  | 12. share /ʃer/ <u>v.</u> 分享                  |
| 6. whisper /'wɪspər/ <u>v.</u> 低声说    | 13. appreciation /əˌpri:ʃi'eɪʃn/ <u>n.</u> 欣赏 |
| 7. uniform /'ju:nɪfɔ:rm/ <u>n.</u> 制服 | 14. generous /'dʒenərəs/ <u>adj.</u> 慷慨的      |

写出下列短语的中文意思

- |                          |                                |
|--------------------------|--------------------------------|
| 1. even though <u>虽然</u> | 4. be thankful for <u>感谢……</u> |
| 2. walk away <u>走开</u>   | 5. take pity on <u>对……表示同情</u> |
| 3. at least <u>至少</u>    | 6. chase away <u>赶走; 驱散</u>    |

## 三、Translation 翻译

将下列句子翻译成中文

1. I decided to take a walk even though I didn't know where to go.

【本题答案】我决定出去走走，尽管我不知道该去向何处。

【本题解析】本题考查**让步状语从句的翻译**。没有特殊翻译要求，从左往右翻译即可，“even though”译为“即使”。

2. I was blown away by the kindness I had just seen.

【本题答案】我被自己所见的善举震惊了。

【本题解析】本题考查**定语从句的翻译**。先行词 kindness 后为一个省去关系代词 that 的定语从句，定从翻译为“……的”。

3. He only had a little, but shared it so beautifully with someone who had nothing.

【本题答案】他拥有少之又少，但是却以一种如此美丽的方式与一无所有的人分享。

【本题解析】本题考查**定语从句的翻译**。先行词 someone，关系代词在从句中充当主语，定从翻译为“……的”。

## Passage 2

It's easy to see how to help some people, but what about those whose needs are not so clear?

This story may have happened not long ago—but it was a lesson which has stayed with me and helped me ever since.

It was Thanksgiving and I was volunteering with my parents at a shelter for the poor. We served hot food to whoever came in. Most of these people looked like they had been having hard times; their clothes were worn out and dirty. Then, a man came in, who looked anything but poor. He was well dressed. I wondered what he was doing there and my jaw (下巴) dropped in amazement when he joined the line for food. The closer he came to my service station, the more I muttered (小声抱怨). What was this man doing? Surely, he wasn't going to take food which was meant for those who were really in need!

Then my mother quietly took me to one side. She said, "You have thought that the needs of the people who come here must be purely physical hunger, etc. And this gentleman doesn't seem to have any of those problems. But what if his needs are emotional? What if he needs comfort, friends, or just to be among other human beings?" Her words hit me like a ton of bricks! I felt like I should apologize to the man—but I didn't.

About a week later the shelter received a large donation from an anonymous source. I can't help but wonder if it came from that man.

Now, whenever I meet someone I remember my mother's lesson and try to send kindness their way, no matter how they look. Needs aren't always seen. But kindness always makes a difference.

### 【全文翻译】

对于某些人的帮助，是很容易做的。但是对于那些需求不太明显的人们，情况又会如何呢？这个故事不久前才发生，但是这个教训将会一直伴随我并帮助我。

那天是感恩节，我和我的父母在一家为穷人提供的避难所做志愿者。我们给来人提供热的食物，大多数人看上去都很贫困，他们的衣服又破又脏。然后，进来了一个看上去一点都不穷的男人，他穿得很好。我好奇他来这里做什么，当他加入领饭的队伍时我惊讶得下巴都快掉下来了。他离我的服务台越近，我就抱怨越多，这个男人到底在干嘛？很明显他不是来领食物的，因为这些食物是为那些真正有需要的人们准备的。

然后我的妈妈悄悄把我带到一边，她说：“你认为来到这里的人们需要的就一定是纯粹的物质需求、饥饿等等。这个绅士看上去没有任何这些问题，但是万一他的需求是情感上的呢？如果他需要安慰、朋友或者仅仅是想参与到人群中呢？”妈妈的话让我恍然大悟，我觉得我应该向他道歉，但是我没有。

大约一周后，避难所收到了一大笔匿名捐款，我不禁想到是否是那位绅士捐赠的。

现在，无论遇到谁，我都会想起妈妈的话，并且努力给他人所需的关怀。需求不一定会时时刻刻都能被看到，但是友善和仁慈一定是非常重要的。

## 一、Reading and comprehension 阅读理解题

1. How did the author feel as the well-dressed man joined the line for food?



- A. Surprised.                      B. Excited.                      C. Nervous.                      D. Hopeless.

【本题答案】A

【本题解析】本题考查**细节题**。定位到第二段的倒数第三句话 “and my jaw dropped in amazement when he joined the line for food” 可知，当他加入领餐的队伍时，我惊讶得下巴都掉了下来，所以作者是惊讶的。综上所述，该题选择 A。

2. The author's mother mainly wanted to tell the author that we \_\_\_\_\_.

- A. shouldn't judge a man by his appearance  
B. shouldn't complain about others  
C. should give others what they want  
D. should accept everything we meet

【本题答案】A

【本题解析】本题考查**细节题**。根据妈妈说的话以及最后一段的 no matter how they look 可知，我们不应该以貌取人。综上所述，该题选择 A。

3. What does the underlined word “anonymous” in Paragraph 4 probably mean?

- A. Important                      B. Unknown                      C. Independent                      D. Excellent

【本题答案】B

【本题解析】本题考查**推理题**。根据上下文猜测，我们得到了一笔捐赠，我不禁在想是否是来自那个男人的，可知作者并不知道捐赠来自何处，因此 anonymous 和 unknown 同义。综上所述，该题选择 B。

4. From the last paragraph, we learn that \_\_\_\_\_.

- A. seeing is believing  
B. it's difficult to be kind to others  
C. some rich people pretend to be poor  
D. we should help people in the way they need

【本题答案】D

【本题解析】本题考查**细节题**。根据最后一段的 “send kindness their way” 和 “but kindness always make a difference”，可知我们应该尽可能地以他人需要的方式伸出援手帮助他人。综上所述，该题选择 D。

5. What would be the best title for the text?

- A. My Mother's Influence on My Growth  
B. The Importance of Volunteering  
C. One of My most Shameful Experiences  
D. My Mother's Simple Lesson in Kindness

【本题答案】D

【本题解析】本题考查**细节题**。本文主要讲了作者的母亲告诉他要善良地对待每一个需要帮助的人，因此 D 选项更符合本文的中心思想。综上所述，该题选择 D。

## 二、New words and expressions 生词和短语

写出下列词汇的词性及中文意思

- |  |   |
|--|---|
| 1. lesson /'lesn/ <u>n.</u> 课程           | 8. among /ə'mʌŋ/ <u>prep.</u> 在……中        |
| 2. emotional /ɪ'moʊʃənl/ <u>adj.</u> 情感的 | 9. service /'sɜ:rvɪs/ <u>n.</u> 服务        |
| 3. volunteer /vɔ:lən'tɪr/ <u>n.</u> 志愿者  | 10. apologize /ə'pɔ:lədʒaɪz/ <u>v.</u> 道歉 |
| 4. physical /'fɪzɪkl/ <u>adj.</u> 物理上的   | 11. quietly /'kwaɪətli/ <u>adv.</u> 安静地   |
| 5. shelter /'feltər/ <u>n.</u> 庇护所; 收容所  | 12. donation /dəʊ'neɪʃn/ <u>n.</u> 捐赠     |
| 6. comfort /'kʌmfərt/ <u>v.</u> 安慰       | 13. purely /'pjʊərli/ <u>adv.</u> 完全; 仅仅  |
| 7. serve /sɜ:rv/ <u>v.</u> 服务            | 14. kindness /'kaɪndnəs/ <u>n.</u> 友善     |

写出下列短语的中文意思

- |                                 |                          |
|---------------------------------|--------------------------|
| 1. look like 看起来像               | 4. make a difference 有影响 |
| 2. can't help but wonder 忍不住想知道 | 5. ever since 自从         |
| 3. in amazement 惊讶地             | 6. feel like 想要……        |

## 三、Translation 翻译

将下列句子翻译成中文

1. but it was a lesson which has stayed with me and helped me ever since.

【本题答案】但这是这一课，一直伴随着我，并一直帮助了我。

【本题解析】本题考查**定语从句的翻译**。先行词 lesson，关系代词 which 在从句中作主语，定从翻译为“……的”。“stay with”译为“伴随”，“ever since”译为“自从，自那以后”。

2. I wondered what he was doing there and my jaw (下巴) dropped in amazement when he joined the line for food.

【本题答案】我好奇他来这里做什么，当他加入领饭的队伍时我惊讶得下巴都快掉下来了。

【本题解析】本题考查**宾语从句和时间状语从句的翻译**。宾语从句和状语从句没有特殊翻译要求，从左往右翻译即可，“in amazement”译为“惊讶地；震惊地”。

3. I can't help but wonder if it came from that man.

【本题答案】我不禁想到是否是那位绅士捐赠的。

【本题解析】本题考查**宾语从句的翻译**。宾语从句没有特殊翻译要求，从左往右翻译即可“can't help”翻译为：情不自禁做……；if 翻译为“是否”。

## Passage 3

1970 was “World Conservation Year”. The United Nations wanted everyone to know that the world was in danger. They hoped that the governments would act quickly in order to conserve nature. Here is one example of the problem. At one time there were 1,300 different plants, trees and flowers in Holland, but now only 860 remain. The others have been destroyed by modern man and his technology. We are changing the earth, the air and the water, and everything that grows and lives.

We can't live without these things. If we continue like this, we shall destroy ourselves.

What will happen in the future? Perhaps it is more important to ask "What must we do now?" The people who will be living in the world of tomorrow are the young of today. A lot of them know that conservation is necessary. Many are hoping to save our world. They plant trees, build bridges across rivers in forests and so on. In a small town in the United States a large group of girls cleaned the banks of eleven kilometers of their river. Young people may hear about conservation through a record called "No, One's Going to Change Our World". It was made by Cliff Richard and other singers. The money from it will help to conserve wild animals.

### 【全文翻译】

1970 年是“世界自然保护年”。联合国想要每个人都知道世界正处在危险之中，他们希望政府能够立刻采取行动来保护自然。例如，曾经在荷兰有 1300 种不同种类的农作物、树和花草，但是现在只剩 860 种了，其余的都被现代人类和科技毁坏了。我们正在改变地球、空气、水以及所有生长的事物，我们离开这些事物无法生活，如果我们继续这样做，我们将会毁灭我们自己。

将来会发生什么呢？可能更重要的是考虑“我们现在必须做什么？”将来存活在世界上的人们正是当今的年轻人，他们当中很多人都知道保护地球是必要的，很多人都想要拯救我们的地球，他们植树，在森林中的河上建桥等等。在美国的一个小镇上，很多的女孩沿着 11 千米长的河岸进行清理。年轻人可能听到一个保护活动叫作“不能让人改变我们的世界”，它是由克里夫理查德和其他歌手一起发起的。活动所得资金将用于帮助保护野生动物。

### 一、Reading and comprehension 阅读理解题

1. There are few plants, trees and flowers in Holland now because \_\_\_\_\_.  
A. there has been a lot of conservation in Holland  
B. Holland does not need so many plants, trees and flowers  
C. many plants, trees and flowers don't grow there any more  
D. some plants, trees and flowers are dangerous

【本题答案】C

【本题解析】本题考查**细节题**。定位到文章第一段的第四行“the others have been destroyed by modern man and his technology”可知由于人类的破坏，植物已经被破坏了，C 选项与原文同义转述，综上所述，该题选择 C。

2. We shall destroy ourselves if we don't \_\_\_\_\_.  
A. improve our technology in planting trees  
B. hear about the record called "No, One's Going to Change Our World"  
C. try our best to save the world  
D. change the earth

【本题答案】C

【本题解析】本题考查**细节题**。定位到文章第一段最后一句 “if we continue like this, we shall destroy ourselves”，如果我们继续破坏自然环境，也就是我们不努力拯救地球，那我们就可能导致自我毁灭，综上所述，该题选择 C。

3. “No, One’s Going to Change Our World” was \_\_\_\_\_.

- A. an important book published in 1970
- B. a record calling on people to conserve nature
- C. an idea that nobody would accept
- D. a rule worked out by the United States

【本题答案】B

【本题解析】本题考查**细节题**。定位到文章倒数第二句 “young people may hear about conservation through a record called...”，可知 B 选项为同义替换。综上所述，该题选择 B。

4. What is the most important thing for us to do to save our world?

- A. We should clean the banks of our rivers.
- B. We should know what will happen in the future.
- C. We should know what we should do and do it now.
- D. We should plant more trees and flowers.

【本题答案】C

【本题解析】本题考查**主旨题**。根据文章可知，我们最需要的是知道我们该做什么并且立即行动，而不是具体的清理河滩、种树等，也不是知道将来要发生什么。综上所述，该题选择 C。

5. What’s the main idea of the passage?

- A. 1970 was “World Conservation Year”.
- B. The United Nations wanted everybody to know that the world is in danger.
- C. Conservation is necessary.
- D. It is the young people who are helping to save our world.

【本题答案】C

【本题解析】本题考查**主旨题**。本文围绕保护环境保护地球展开讨论。综上所述，该题选择 C。

## 二、New words and expressions 生词和短语

写出下列词汇的词性及中文意思。

- |  |   |
|--|---|
| 1. conservation /ˌkɑːnsəˈveɪʃn/ <u>n.</u> 保护 | 8. record /ˈrekərd/ <u>n.</u> 唱片; 记录      |
| 2. necessary /ˈnesəseri/ <u>adj.</u> 必要的     | 9. destroy /dɪˈstrɔɪ/ <u>v.</u> 破坏; 摧毁    |
| 3. government /ˈgʌvərmənt/ <u>n.</u> 政府      | 10. continue /kənˈtɪnjuː/ <u>v.</u> 继续    |
| 4. bank /bæŋk/ <u>n.</u> 银行; 岸               | 11. modern /ˈmɑːdərn/ <u>adj.</u> 现代的     |
| 5. nature /ˈneɪtʃər/ <u>n.</u> 自然            | 12. save /seɪv/ <u>v.</u> 拯救              |
| 6. kilometer /kɪˈlɒmətər/ <u>n.</u> 公里; 千米   | 13. technology /tekˈnɒlədʒi/ <u>n.</u> 科技 |
| 7. remain /rɪˈmeɪn/ <u>v.</u> 留下; 剩余         | 14. wild /waɪld/ <u>adj.</u> 野生的          |

写出下列短语的中文意思

- |                         |                      |
|-------------------------|----------------------|
| 1. in danger 濒危；处于危险之中  | 5. and so on 等等      |
| 2. at one time 一度；曾经    | 6. in the future 在将来 |
| 3. a large group of 一大群 | 7. in order to 为了    |
| 4. hear about 听说；得知     |                      |

### 三、Translation 翻译

将下列句子翻译成中文

1. They hoped that the governments would act quickly in order to conserve nature.

【本题答案】他们希望政府能够立刻采取行动来保护自然。

【本题解析】本题考查**宾语从句的翻译**。没有特殊翻译要求，从左往右翻译即可。“in order to”译为“为了”，“conserve”译为“保护”。

2. The people who will be living in the world of tomorrow are the young of today.

【本题答案】将来存活在世界上的人们正是当今的年轻人。

【本题解析】本题考查**定语从句的翻译**。先行词 the people，关系代词 who 在从句中充当主语，定语从句翻译为“……的”。

3. In a small town in the United States a large group of girls cleaned the banks of eleven kilometers of their river.

【本题答案】在美国的一个小镇上，很多的女孩沿着 11 千米长的河岸进行清理。

【本题解析】本题考查**简单句的翻译**。“a large group of”译为“一大群”，“kilometers”译为“千米”。

### Passage 4

Many people in China don't like to spend a lot of time outdoors in the hottest months of the year, when temperatures can become very high. But Britain, which doesn't get many sunny days, has a different attitude toward summer.

Most British people love sunshine, and they spend as much time as they can outdoors on sunny days. In Britain, a series of two or more days at 25°C and over is usually called a “heat wave”, and the whole country seems to become excited if such weather is reported. News reports and social media become filled with talk about the upcoming heat and sunshine.

Indeed, British newspaper *Metro* recently wrote: “A spell of beautiful weather is about to hit us, bringing temperatures of up to 30°C”. British people like to take advantage of good weather—it brings them together.

For example, adults will drink beer outside pubs, young people will play soccer in the park with their friends, and the smell of barbecue smoke will fill the air, as people hold garden parties with friends and relatives.

Although British summers are generally mild, they can also be unpredictable. Quite often, a

short period of sunshine is followed by days of cold air and heavy rain.

Young people usually put up with bad weather, but adults tend to complain about it. Some of them even blame the rain on weather forecasters.

But good weather can cause a lot of drama, too. During heat waves—whose temperatures usually don't get higher than 25°C—people often complain that it is “too hot”, and some even demand to leave work early.

The Trades Union Congress, an English and Welsh workers' union, is even trying to introduce a rule that forbids employers from making their employees work when the temperature outside is over 30°C. Just imagine that rule in Asia—every business would be empty in the summer.

Still, even if Britain does not have the perfect climate, it's always a lovely place to travel to in the summer. And if you're lucky enough to visit on a sunny day, you will see British people coming together to relax and enjoy themselves.

### 【全文翻译】

很多中国人不喜欢在一年中最热的几个月里花很多时间在户外，因为那时候气温会很高。而英国人，平时很少有阳光充足的日子，对夏天有着不同的态度。

大多数英国人喜欢阳光，他们尽可能多地呆在户外。在英国，一系列的两个或两个以上的在 25°C 或更高温的天气，通常称为“热浪”，如果有这样的天气报道整个国家似乎变得兴奋，新闻报道和社会媒体充满关于即将到来的高温和阳光的谈论。

事实上，英国《地铁报》最近写道：“一段美妙的天气就要来到我们身边，温度可以达到 30°C”。英国人喜欢好好利用好天气——这让他们走到一起。

例如，成年人会在酒吧外面喝啤酒，年轻人会和他们的朋友在公园踢足球，空气中弥漫着烧烤烟雾的味道，因为人们会和朋友和亲戚举行花园聚会。

虽然英国的夏天通常比较温和，但也可能难以预料通常，短暂的阳光过后是几天的冷空气和大雨。

年轻人通常忍受坏天气，但成年人往往抱怨它，有些人甚至把下雨归咎于天气预报员。

但好天气会导致很多戏剧。在通常温度不高于 25°C 的热浪中有些人还抱怨说“太热”，有的甚至要求早点下班。

英国工会联盟，英格兰和威尔士工人联盟，甚至试图引入一个规则，当室外温度超过 30°C 禁止雇主让他们的员工工作，想象一下规则在亚洲——每个业务在夏天会是空的。

然而，即使英国没有完美的气候，它始终是一个可爱的值得在夏天去旅行的地方。如果你足够幸运能在阳光明媚的日子参观，你一定会去的，那时将会看到英国人聚在一起放松和享受自己。

## 一、Reading and comprehension 阅读理解题

1. Which of the following statements is TRUE?

A. British people hate outdoor activities in summer because of heat.



- B. It is always cold and rainy in British summer.
- C. Barbecuing is a popular activity in Britain during good weather.
- D. British weather forecasters often make mistakes.

【本题答案】C

【本题解析】本题考查**细节题**。B、D 项文中没有提及，由文章第二段可知，British people 喜欢 outdoor activities，故 A 项错误，由文章第四段 “the smell of barbecue smoke...relatives” 可知，Barbecue 很受欢迎。综上所述，该题选择 C。

2. According to the passage, a British “heat wave” refers to those days when the temperature \_\_\_\_\_.

- A. breaks a local record
- B. reaches 30 °C
- C. keeps rising two days in a row
- D. goes past 25 °C for more than two days

【本题答案】D

【本题解析】本题考查**细节题**。由第二段第一句 “In Britain, a series of two or more days at 25°C and over is usually called a heat wave”，综上所述，该题选择 D。

3. How will most British people feel if there is “a heat wave”?

- A. Sad
- B. Angry
- C. Excited
- D. Disappointed

【本题答案】C

【本题解析】本题考查**细节题**。由文章第二段第二句 “the whole country seems to become excited if such weather is reported” 可知，British people 会觉得 excited，综上所述，该题选择 C。

4. What will the Trades Union do if the weather gets higher than 30°C?

- A. It will forbid employers from making their employees work.
- B. It will demand workers to leave work early.
- C. It will forbid employees from working.
- D. It will blame the weather forecasters.

【本题答案】A

【本题解析】本题考查**细节题**。由第八段 “The Trades Union Congress...over 30°C” 可知，英国工会联盟，英格兰和威尔士工人联盟，甚至试图引入一个规则，当室外温度超过 30°C 禁止雇主让他们的员工工作。综上所述，该题选择 A。

5. What can we learn from the last three paragraphs?

- A. British people spend most of their time traveling during sunny days.
- B. British employers often receive requests to leave work early during heat waves.
- C. British workers can choose to work at home if they find the weather too hot.
- D. Most British people are proud of their mild climate in summer.

【本题答案】B

【本题解析】本题考查**细节题**。A 选项，英国人在晴天不会花费大量的时间旅行；C 选项英国的员工不是可以选择居家工作，而是想要提前下班；D 选项文章没有提及。综上所述，该题选择 B。

## 二、New words and expressions 生词和短语

写出下列词汇的词性及中文意思

- |  |   |
|--|---|
| 1. temperature /'temprətʃər/ <u>n.</u> 温度  | 9. unpredictable /ˌʌnpri'dɪktəbl/ <u>adj.</u> 不可预测的   |
| 2. heavy /'hevi/ <u>adj.</u> 重的            | 10. climate /'klaɪmət/ <u>n.</u> 天气                   |
| 3. different /'dɪfrənt/ <u>adj.</u> 不同的    | 11. relative /'relətɪv/ <u>n.</u> 亲戚; <u>adj.</u> 相对的 |
| 4. complain /kəm'pleɪn/ <u>v.</u> 抱怨       | 12. blame /bleɪm/ <u>v.</u> 责备                        |
| 5. attitude /'ætɪtʃu:d/ <u>n.</u> 态度       | 13. introduce /ˌɪntrə'du:s/ <u>v.</u> 介绍              |
| 6. forbid /fər'brɪd/ <u>v.</u> 禁止          | 14. media /'mi:diə/ <u>n.</u> 媒体                      |
| 7. advantage /əd'væntɪdʒ/ <u>n.</u> 优势; 优点 |   |
| 8. employee /ɪm'plɔɪi/ <u>n.</u> 雇员        |   |

写出下列短语的中文意思

- |                    |                         |
|--------------------|-------------------------|
| 1. a series of 一系列 | 5. take advantage of 利用 |
| 2. tend to 打算      | 6. complain about 抱怨    |
| 3. filled with 充满  | 7. put up with 忍受       |
| 4. even if 即使      |                         |

## 三、Translation 翻译

将下列句子翻译成中文

- But Britain, which doesn't get many sunny days, has a different attitude toward summer.  
【本题答案】而英国人，平时很少有阳光充足的日子，对夏天有着不同的态度。  
【本题解析】本题考查非限定从的翻译。没有特殊要求，从左往右翻译即可。“attitude toward”译为“对……的态度”。
- News reports and social media become filled with talk about the upcoming heat and sunshine.  
【本题答案】新闻报道和社交媒体充满着关于即将到来的高温和阳光的谈论。  
【本题解析】本题考查简单句的翻译。“social media”译为“社交媒体”，“filled with”译为“充满”，“upcoming”译为“即将到来的”。
- people often complain that it is “too hot”, and some even demand to leave work early.  
【本题答案】人们常常抱怨说“太热了”，有的人甚至要求早点下班。  
【本题解析】本题考查简单句的翻译。“Complain”译为“抱怨”，“demand”译为“要求”。

## Passage 5

The United States is full of cars. There are still many families without cars, but some families have two or even more. However, cars are used for more than pleasure. They are necessary part of life.

Cars are used for business. They are driven to offices and factories by workers who have no



other way to their jobs. When salesmen (销售员) are sent to different parts of the city, they have to drive in order to carry their products. Farmers have to drive into the city in order to get supplies.

Sometimes small children must be driven to school. In some cities school buses are used only when children live more than a mile away from the school. When the children are too young to walk that far, their mothers take turns driving them to school. One mother drives on Mondays, taking her own children and the neighbors' children as well. Another drives on Tuesdays, another on Wednesday, and so on. This is called forming a car pool. Men also form car pools, with three or four men taking turns driving to the place where they all work.

More car pools should be formed in order to put fewer automobiles (汽车) on the road and to use less gasoline. Parking is a great problem, and so is the traffic in and around cities. Too many cars are being driven. Something will have to be done about the use of cars.

### 【全文翻译】

美国到处都是汽车。仍然有很多家庭没有汽车，但有些家庭有两个甚至更多。然而，汽车的用途不仅仅是为了娱乐。它们是生活中所必需的一部分。

汽车是用来做生意的。他们被那些没有其他工作途径的工人驱使到办公室和工厂。当销售人员被派到城市的不同地方时，他们必须开车来运送他们的产品。农民们必须开车进入城市以获得供应。

有时，小孩子必须被开车送去上学。在一些城市，只有当孩子们住在离学校一英里以上的地方时，才会使用校车。当孩子们还太小，还不能走那么远时，他们的母亲会轮流开车送他们去上学。一位母亲在周一开车，还带着自己的孩子和邻居的孩子。周二开车，再开车，周三开车，等等。这叫做形成一个汽车游泳池。男人也会拼车，三到四个男人轮流开车到他们工作的地方。

应该建立更多的汽车池，以减少路上的汽车，使用更少的汽油。停车是一个大问题，城市内部和周围的交通也是如此。人们开的汽车太多了。对于汽车的使用，我们必须采取一些措施。

### 一、Reading and comprehension 阅读理解题

1. Many families in the U.S. own cars because \_\_\_\_.

- A. children need them to go to school
- B. workers need them to get to their jobs
- C. salesmen use them to carry their products
- D. cars play a necessary part in life

【本题答案】D

【本题解析】本题考查**细节题**。根据文章第一段末尾两句“However, cars are used for more than pleasure. They are necessary part of life.”可知汽车不仅是用于娱乐，它们是生活中所必需的一部分。综上所述，该题选择D。

2. Which of the following groups is NOT mentioned though it certainly drives cars?

- A. Office workers. B. Policemen and mail carriers.  
C. Salesmen and farmers. D. Factory workers.

【本题答案】B

【本题解析】本题考查**推理题**。A、C、D 选项在文中二三段中都有所提及，综上所述，该题选择 B。

3. Paragraph 3 suggests that in the United States \_\_\_\_\_.

- A. children have to walk to school  
B. mothers drive children to school  
C. school buses take children to school  
D. school buses take the younger children only

【本题答案】B

【本题解析】本题考查**细节题**。根据文中 “In some cities school buses are used only when children live more than a mile away from the school. When the children are too young to walk that far, their mothers take turns driving them to school.” 可知在一些城市，只有当孩子们住在离学校一英里以上的地方时，才会使用校车。当孩子们还太小，还不能走那么远时，他们的母亲会轮流开车送他们去上学。综上所述，该题选择 B。

4. “A car pool” most probably means \_\_\_\_\_.

- A. a group of people taking turns driving to a place  
B. a place for parking cars  
C. a group of mothers driving alternatively  
D. a place for learning to drive

【本题答案】A

【本题解析】本题考查**推理题**。One mother drives on Mondays, taking her own children and the neighbors' children as well. Another drives on Tuesdays, another on Wednesday, and so on. This is called forming a car pool. 可知一位母亲在周一开车，还带着自己的孩子和邻居的孩子。另一位母亲周二再开车，另一位周三开车，等等。这叫做形成一个公用车队。综上所述，该题选择 A。

5. What is the author's advice about the use of cars?

- A. To provide larger parking spaces.  
B. To build better roads.  
C. To produce fewer automobiles.  
D. To form more car pools.

【本题答案】D

【本题解析】本题考查**细节题**。根据文中最后一段的第一句 “More car pools should be formed in order to put fewer automobiles (汽车) on the road and to use less gasoline.” 可知，应该建立更多的公用车队。综上所述，该题选择 D。

## 二、New words and expressions 生词和短语

写出下列词汇的词性及中文意思。

- |  |                                       |
|--|---------------------------------------|
| 1. pleasure /'pleʒər/ <u>n.</u> 高兴; 愉快   | 8. gasoline /'gæsəli:n/ <u>n.</u> 汽油  |
| 2. factory /'fæktri/ <u>n.</u> 工厂        | 9. product /'prɒ:dʌkt/ <u>n.</u> 产品   |
| 3. necessary /'nesəsəri/ <u>adj.</u> 必要的 | 10. traffic /'træfɪk/ <u>n.</u> 交通    |
| 4. supply /sə'plai/ <u>n./v.</u> 供应      | 11. neighbor /'neɪbə/ <u>n.</u> 邻居    |
| 5. business /'biznəs/ <u>n.</u> 商业       | 12. Tuesday /'tuz,deɪ/ <u>n.</u> 周二   |
| 6. sometimes /'sʌmtaɪmz/ <u>adv.</u> 有时  | 13. form /fɔ:rm/ <u>v.</u> 形成         |
| 7. different /'dɪfrənt/ <u>adj.</u> 不同的  | 14. Wednesday /'wenzdeɪ/ <u>n.</u> 周三 |

写出下列短语的中文意思

- |                        |                 |
|------------------------|-----------------|
| 1. be full of 充满       | 3. take turn 轮流 |
| 2. the use of .....的使用 | 4. and so on 等等 |

## 三、Translation 翻译

将下列句子翻译成中文

1. They are driven to offices and factories by workers who have no other way to their jobs.

【本题答案】它们被没有其他方式到达工作地点的工人们开到办公室或工厂。

【本题解析】本题考查定语从句的翻译。先行词 workers, 关系代词 who 在从句中充当主语, 定从翻译为“……的”。

2. When the children are too young to walk that far, their mothers take turns driving them to school.

【本题答案】当孩子们太小不能走那么远时, 他们的妈妈就会轮换着送他们去上学。

【本题解析】本题考查时间状语从句的翻译。When 引导一个时间状语从句, 从左往右翻译即可, “too...to...” 译为 “太……而不能……”, “take turns” 译为 “轮流”。

3. Men also form car pools, with three or four men taking turns driving to the place where they all work.

【本题答案】男人们同样会形成合伙用车的一群人, 三四个男人轮流开车前往他们一起上班的地方。

【本题解析】本题考查定语从句的翻译。先行词 the place, 关系副词 where 在从句中充当地点状语, 定语从句翻译为“……的”。

## Passage 6

The weather might be freezing at home, but that doesn't mean you have to spend the winter trembling. Instead, grab your bathing suit and sunscreen and head to these sunny spots that offer the best warm-weather getaways.

San Juan, Puerto Rico

Head to the hot city nightlife of San Juan, where the streets of smart Condado back right into the palm trees and lapping waves. Top chefs, stylish hotels, bars, clubs, and shops are all just steps away from the tropical beaches. Since Puerto Rico is a United States Commonwealth, it's one of the easiest islands in the Caribbean to visit since you won't need any pass, have to change money, or even worry about your cell phone working.

Riviera Maya, Mexico

What's better than diving into the salty sea? Going into the clear and salt-free waters of the natural limestone cenotes of the Riviera Maya and Yucatan Peninsula. Spend a sunny day exploring these natural cave pools filled with cool water that springs from the ground below and the thick palm forests that surround them. Then head back to Fairmont Mayakoba for comfortable rooms and modern Mexican cuisine.

New Orleans

New Orleans's lively nightlife and live-music scenes make the "Big Easy" a great girl's trip winter getaway. And even if your crew isn't one to seek out the boozy Bourbon Street crawl, there's plenty of amazing food to be discovered in the French Quarter, plenty of shopping and walking in the Garden District.

Clearwater, Florida

If you want to meet a real movie star while also taking in the sun, head to the Gulf shores of Clearwater, Florida. Here you can meet the stars of Dolphin Tale and Dolphin Tale.

### 【全文翻译】

家里的天气可能很冷，但这并不意味着你必须在发抖中度过冬天。相反，带上泳衣和防晒霜，前往这些阳光明媚的地方，那里提供了最好的温暖天气度假之地。

波多黎各圣胡安

前往圣胡安火热的城市夜生活，聪明的康达多的街道正好回到棕榈树和拍打的海浪中。顶级厨师、时尚酒店、酒吧、俱乐部和商店都离热带海滩只有几步之遥。由于波多黎各是美国联邦，它是加勒比地区最容易访问的岛屿之一，因为你不需要任何通行证，不需要找钱，甚至不担心手机工作。

里维埃拉玛雅，墨西哥

还有什么比潜入咸海更好的呢？走进玛雅里维埃拉和尤卡坦半岛的天然石灰岩洞穴中清澈无盐的水域。度过一个阳光明媚的日子，探索这些充满清凉水的天然洞穴水池，这些水从下面的地面和周围茂密的棕榈林中喷涌而出然后返回费尔蒙悦榕庄酒店，享受舒适的客房和现代墨西哥美食。

新奥尔良

新奥尔良热闹的夜生活和现场音乐场景使“大快活”成为一个很棒的女孩冬季度假之旅。即使你的团队不想去波旁街闲逛，在法国区也有很多令人惊叹的食物，在花园区有很多购物也可以在那里散步。

佛罗里达州克利尔沃特

如果你想在享受阳光的同时遇到一位真正的电影明星，可以前往佛罗里达州克利尔沃特的海湾海岸。在这里你可以见到海豚故事和海豚故事的明星。

### 一、Reading and comprehension 阅读理解题

1. What makes Puerto Rico an easy tourist destination?

- A. No pass is needed.
- B. It lies in the Caribbean.
- C. It's near the tropical beaches.
- D. Many travel services are offered.

【本题答案】A

【本题解析】本题考查**细节题**。根据第二段 “it's one of the easiest islands in the Caribbean to visit since you won't need a passport, 由于波多黎各是美国的联邦,它是加勒比地区最容易访问的岛屿之一,因为你不需要护照”可知不需要通行证。使波多黎各成为一个容易的旅游目的地。综上所述,该题选择A。

2. What can you do if going to Riviera Maya?

- A. Dive into the salty sea.
- B. Enjoy live-music scenes.
- C. Meet some real famous actors.
- D. Explore swimming in cave pools.

【本题答案】D

【本题解析】本题考查**细节题**。根据第三段 “Spend a sunny day exploring these natural cave pools filled with cool water that springs from the ground below and the thick palm forests that surround them. 用晴朗的一天去探索这些充满从地下涌出的凉水和环绕着它们的茂密的棕榈林的天然洞穴池塘”可知如果去里维埃拉玛雅你能探索洞穴游泳池。综上所述,该题选择D。

3. Which place will you go to if you are a film fan?

- A. San Juan, Puerto Rico.
- B. Riviera Maya, Mexico.
- C. New Orleans.
- D. Clearwater, Florida.

【本题答案】D

【本题解析】本题考查**推理题**。根据最后一段 “If you want to meet a real movie star while also taking in the sun, head to the Gulf shores of Clearwater, Florida. 如果你想在享受阳光的同时遇到一位真正的电影明星,那就去佛罗里达州的克利尔沃特海湾海岸”可知如果你是影迷,你会去佛罗里达州克利尔沃特。综上所述,该题选择D。

### 二、New words and expressions 生词和短语

写出下列词汇的词性及中文意思。

- |   |   |
|---|---|
| 1. spend /spend/ <u>v.</u> 花费           | 8. seek /si:k/ <u>v.</u> 寻找                 |
| 2. surround /sə'raʊnd/ <u>v.</u> 包围; 环绕 | 9. natural /'nætʃrəl/ <u>adj.</u> 天然的       |
| 3. spot /spɑ:t/ <u>n.</u> 地点            | 10. discover /dɪ'skʌvər/ <u>v.</u> 发现       |
| 4. modern /'mɑ:dərn/ <u>adj.</u> 现代的    | 11. cave /keɪv/ <u>n.</u> 洞穴                |
| 5. getaway /'getəweɪ/ <u>n.</u> 度假胜地    | 12. district /'dɪstrɪkt/ <u>n.</u> 地区       |
| 6. crew /kru:/ <u>n.</u> 团队             | 13. comfortable /'kʌmfətl̩/ <u>adj.</u> 舒适的 |
| 7. stylish /'staɪlɪʃ/ <u>adj.</u> 时尚的   | 14. dolphin /'dɒ:lfɪn/ <u>n.</u> 海豚         |

写出下列短语的中文意思

- |                          |                        |
|--------------------------|------------------------|
| 1. head to <u>前往</u>     | 5. fill with <u>充满</u> |
| 2. even if <u>即使</u>     | 6. plenty of <u>许多</u> |
| 3. worry about <u>担心</u> | 7. head back <u>返回</u> |
| 4. seek out <u>发现</u>    |                        |

### 三、Translation 翻译

将下列句子翻译成中文

1. head to these sunny spots that offer the best warm-weather getaways.

【本题答案】前往这些提供了最好的温暖天气度假之地的阳光明媚的地方。

【本题解析】本题考查定语从句。本题中 that 引导了一个定语从句，从句翻译为“……的”，修饰限定先行词 spots。“warm-weather”翻译为“温暖天气的”；“getaways”翻译为“度假胜地”。

2. Top chefs, stylish hotels, bars, clubs, and shops are all just steps away from the tropical beaches.

【本题答案】顶级厨师、时尚酒店、酒吧、俱乐部和商店都离热带海滩只有几步之遥。

【本题解析】本题考查简单句的翻译。从左往右翻译即可。“stylish”译为“时尚的”；“tropical”译为“热带的”。

3. New Orleans's lively nightlife and live-music scenes make the “Big Easy” a great girl's trip winter getaway.

【本题答案】本题考查简单句的翻译。新奥尔良热闹的夜生活和现场音乐场景使“大快活”成为一个很棒的女孩冬季度假之旅。

【本题解析】本题是一个简单句从左往右翻译即可。“nightlife”译为“夜生活”；“scene”译为“场景”。

## 第五章 语法练习

## 第一节 词性

## 1-5: BCCAB

1. “It depends on my \_\_\_\_\_ decision.” the mother said and looked at her two sons.

A. children                      B. children's                      C. child's                      D. childrens'

【本题答案】B

【本题解析】本题考查**名词所有格**。此处用名词所有格形式修饰后面名词 decision, 排除选项 A; 根据后面 “...her two sons.” 可知, 此处是名词复数所有格形式。综上所述, 该题选择 B。

【本题翻译】“这取决于我的孩子们的决定。”母亲看着她的两个儿子说。

2. Peter and Joe tried to use the computer to find \_\_\_\_\_ about forests.

A. a information                      B. an information  
C. some information                      D. some informations

【本题答案】C

【本题解析】本题考查**不可数名词**。information 信息, 消息, 不可数名词, 不可用 a/an 修饰, 没有复数形式。综上所述, 该题选择 C。

【本题翻译】彼得和乔试图用电脑找到一些关于森林的信息。

3. —I'm afraid I can't walk to the supermarket. It's too far.

—You can ride \_\_\_\_\_ bike.

A. me                      B. mine                      C. my                      D. I

【本题答案】C

【本题解析】本题考查**形容词性物主代词**。me 我, 宾格; mine 我的, 名词性物主代词; my 我的, 形容词性物主代词; I 我, 主格。根据 “ride...bike.” 可知, bike 为名词, 前应跟形容词性物主代词 my 表示 “我的”, 作定语。综上所述, 该题选择 C。

【本题翻译】——恐怕我不能步行去超市。它太远了。

——你可以骑我的自行车。

4. Would you like \_\_\_\_\_ to eat?

A. something delicious                      B. anything delicious  
C. delicious something                      D. delicious anything

【本题答案】A

【本题解析】本题考查**不定代词和形容词作定语**。delicious 美味的; something 某物, 用在肯定句中或表征求意见的疑问句中; anything 任何东西, 用在否定或疑问句中, 句子是表征求意见的疑问句, 所以用 something, 排除 B 和 D, 形容词修饰复合不定代词时, 放在不定代词后。综上所述, 该题选择 A。

【本题翻译】你想吃点好吃的吗?

5. —Do you know \_\_\_\_\_ young man in the room?

—Yes. He is John. He often plays \_\_\_\_\_ chess with me.



A. a; /

B. the; /

C. the; the

D. a; the

【本题答案】B

【本题解析】本题考查冠词的用法。根据 “Do you know...young man in the room” 可知，此处表特指，应该用定冠词 the。play chess “下象棋”，固定短语。综上所述，该题选择 B。

【本题翻译】——你认识房间里的那个年轻人吗？

——是的，他是约翰。他经常和我下棋。

## 6-10: BDDDD

6. This pair of shoes is too large for me. Could you show me \_\_\_\_\_ pair?

A. one

B. another

C. other

D. else

【本题答案】B

【本题解析】本题考查代词的用法。one 一; another 三者或三者以上中的另一个; other 其他的，后跟名词复数形式; else 别的。根据 “This pair of shoes is too large for me.” 可知，这双太大，所以要看另一双，是从三者以上中的鞋子里选择，所以用 another。综上所述，该题选择 B。

【本题翻译】这双鞋我穿太大了。你能给我看另一双吗？

7. —Any other suggestions, Dr. Lin?

—Remember not to smoke. Babies' health is much more likely to be influenced if \_\_\_\_\_ parent smokes.

A. neither

B. none

C. both

D. either

【本题答案】D

【本题解析】本题考查代词。neither 两者都不; none 三者及以上的都不; both 两者都不; either 两者中的任何一个。根据 “Babies' health is much more likely to be influenced if...parent smokes.” 可知父母只要有一个吸烟，都会影响婴儿的健康，either 符合。综上所述，该题选择 D。

【本题翻译】——林医生，还有其他建议吗？

——记住不要吸烟。如果父母中的任何一方吸烟，婴儿的健康更有可能受到影响。

8. There are \_\_\_\_\_ brave doctors and nurses helping us beat the virus.

A. hundred

B. hundreds

C. hundred of

D. hundreds of

【本题答案】D

【本题解析】本题考查基数词的用法。hundred “百”，表示具体数字时，前面有基数词，且不用变复数；表示不具体的数字时，hundred 要变复数且加 of。根据 “There are...brave doctors and nurses helping us beat the virus.” 可知，此处表示不具体的数字，应用 hundreds of “数以百计的”。综上所述，该题选择 D。

【本题翻译】有数百名勇敢的医生和护士帮助我们战胜病毒。

9. It is Kate's \_\_\_\_\_ birthday party. She is \_\_\_\_\_ years old now

A. twelve; twelve

B. twelfth; twelfth

C. twelve; twelfth

D. twelfth; twelve

【本题答案】D



【本题解析】本题考查**数词的用法**。twelve 十二，基数词；twelfth 第十二，序数词。第一空表示“第十二岁生日”，用序数词表顺序，故第一空填 twelfth；第二空表示“12岁”，年龄要用基数词+year(s)+old 表示。综上所述，该题选择 D。

【本题翻译】这是Kate的十二岁生日派对。她现在 12 岁了。

10. —Which month has \_\_\_\_\_ days, February, March or April?

—February.

A. the least

B. the most

C. the shortest

D. the fewest

【本题答案】D

【本题解析】本题考查**形容词辨析**。the least最少，后跟不可数名词；the most最多；the shortest最短；the fewest最少，后跟可数名词复数。根据“Which month has...days, February, March or April”可知，此处询问哪个月天数最少，使用the fewest，后跟可数名词复数days。综上所述，该题选择D。

【本题翻译】——哪一个月的天数最少，二月、三月还是四月？

——二月。

#### 11-15: BABAB

11. Now mobile phones are much \_\_\_\_\_ than before.

A. cheap

B. cheaper

C. cheapest

D. the cheapest

【本题答案】B

【本题解析】本题考查**形容词比较级**。cheap形容词，原级；cheaper更便宜的，比较级；cheapest最便宜的，最高级；the cheapest最便宜的，最高级，形容词的最高级前常用定冠词the。根据“much”和“than”可知，此处用形容词比较级。综上所述，该题选择B。

【本题翻译】现在手机比以前便宜多了。

12. What you said made Mr. Brown \_\_\_\_\_.

A. angry

B. angrily

C. happily

D. anger

【本题答案】A

【本题解析】本题考查**形容词作宾补**。angry生气的，形容词；angrily生气地，副词；happily开心地，副词；anger生气，名词，根据“make Mr. Brown”可知，此处指让Brown先生生气，用形容词作宾语补足语。综上所述，该题选择A。

【本题翻译】你所说的让Brown先生很生气。

13. They traveled all night to Paris and arrived \_\_\_\_\_ 5 o'clock \_\_\_\_\_ the morning.

A. on; in

B. at; in

C. at; on

D. in; on

【本题答案】B

【本题解析】本题考查**介词**。at用于指某一特定的时刻；in用于表泛指早、午、晚；on用于指具体某一天。第一空后“5 o'clock”指具体时刻，故应用介词at，A、D选项可排除。第二空后“the morning”泛指早上，故应用介词in。综上所述，该题选择B。

【本题翻译】他们彻夜赶往巴黎，早上 5 点到达。

14. What you said made Mr. Brown \_\_\_\_\_.

- A. angry                      B. angrily                      C. happily                      D. anger

【本题答案】A

【本题解析】本题考查**形容词作宾补**。angry生气的, 形容词; angrily生气地, 副词; happily开心地, 副词; anger生气, 名词, 根据“make Mr. Brown”可知, 此处指让Brown先生生气, 用形容词作宾语补足语。综上所述, 该题选择A。

【本题翻译】你所说的让Brown先生很生气。

15. They traveled all night to Paris and arrived \_\_\_\_\_ 5 o'clock \_\_\_\_\_ the morning.

- A. on; in                      B. at; in                      C. at; on                      D. in; on

【本题答案】B

【本题解析】本题考查**介词**。at用于指某一特定的时刻; in用于表泛指早、午、晚; on用于指具体某一天。第一空后“5 o'clock”指具体时刻, 故应用介词at, A、D选项可排除。第二空后“the morning”泛指早上, 故应用介词in。综上所述, 该题选择B。

【本题翻译】他们彻夜赶往巴黎, 早上5点到达。

#### 16-20: CBCDA

16. We have three sons, but \_\_\_\_\_ of them lives nearby.

- A. either                      B. neither                      C. none                      D. all

【本题答案】C

【本题解析】本题考查**代词辨析**。either两者之一; neither两者都不; none没有一个, 没有人, 常与介词of连用, 用于复数名词前时表示“(三者或三者以上)都不”, 谓语动词用单复数均可, 用于不可数名词前时表示“都不, 一点也不”; all所有, 全部。综上所述, 该题选择C。

【本题翻译】我们三个儿子, 但他们都不住在附近。

17. To a great \_\_\_\_\_, the way you learn at college is different from that when you were in high school.

- A. amount                      B. extent                      C. reason                      D. goal

【本题答案】B

【本题解析】本次考查**名词辨析**。amount数量; extent程度; 范围; reason原因; goal目标; 进球。to a great extent为固定搭配, 意为“在很大程度上”。综上所述, 该题选择B。

【本题翻译】在很大程度上, 你在大学里的学习方式和你在高中时的是不同的。

18. Of more than three hundred people in the airplane that crashed last week, only five \_\_\_\_\_ miraculously.

- A. sustained                      B. endured                      C. survived                      D. maintained

【本题答案】C

【本题解析】本题考查**动词辨析**。sustain维持, 支撑; endure忍耐, 忍受; survive生存, 存活; maintain维持, 保持。综上所述, 该题选择C。

【本题翻译】在上周坠毁的飞机上有300多人, 其中只有5人奇迹般地生还了。

19. The couple had to move to the north because they found it hard to \_\_\_\_\_ themselves to the hot climate in the south.

- A. adopt                      B. make                      C. enjoy                      D. adjust

【本题答案】D

【本题解析】本题考查**动词辨析**。adopt收养，采取；make使，制作；enjoy喜欢，享受；enjoy oneself意为“过得愉快”；adjust使适应；adjust oneself to意为“使自己适应……”。综上所述，该题选择D。

【本题翻译】这对夫妇不得不搬到北方去，因为他们发现自己很难适应南方炎热的气候。

20. He was \_\_\_\_\_ enough to see that Jack was the best candidate for the job.

- A. sensible                      B. sensitive                      C. sensational                      D. sensual

【本题答案】A

【本题解析】本题考查**形容词辨析**。sensible明智的；通晓事理的；sensitive敏感的；sensational轰动的，耸人听闻；sensual感官的，世俗的。综上所述，该题选择A。

【本题翻译】他很明智，看出杰克是这个工作的最佳人选。

## 第二节 句子成分

一、判断下列英文句子划线部分的句子成分。

- The sky is blue. 表语
- I bought a book. 主语
- Tom runs fast. 谓语
- Learning English makes me happy. 主语
- Mr. Li, our math teacher, is good at singing. 同位语
- He has gone to the library. 谓语
- When I called him, he was having dinner. 状语
- Tom is really a smart boy. 定语
- Don't speak to your mom in that way. 宾语
- They must keep their hands behind their backs. 谓语
- Please show me your new book. 宾语
- The reason is that my wife will be disappointed. 表语
- What you are reading is my article. 主语
- She saw me crying. 补语
- He found the book readable. 补语

二、单项选择

1-5: DBAAB

1. There were no tickets \_\_\_\_\_ for Friday's performance.

- A. preferable                      B. considerable                      C. possible                      D. available

【本题答案】D

【本题解析】本题考查**形容词辨析**。preferable更适合的，更可取的；considerable相当多（或大、重要等）的；possible可能的；available可获得的，可购得的；常与介词for搭配使用。综上所述，该题选择D。

【本题翻译】周五表演的门票已经没有了。

2. When asked by news reporters, the Prime Minister \_\_\_\_\_ that he would visit France the following month.

A. discovered                      B. confirmed                      C. ascertained                      D. inquired

【本题答案】B

【本题解析】本题考查**动词辨析**。discover发现；confirm确认；ascertain弄清，查明；inquire打听，询问。综上所述，该题选择B。

【本题翻译】当被新闻记者提问时，总理确认他将于下个月访问法国。

3. Mark needs to travel \_\_\_\_\_ with his varied business interests.

A. frequently                      B. intensively                      C. broadly                      D. widely

【本题答案】A

【本题解析】本题考查**副词辨析**。frequently经常地，频繁地；intensively集中地；broadly大体上，基本上；widely广泛地，普遍地。综上所述，该题选择A。

【本题翻译】由于各种商业利益，马克需要经常出差。

4. The man lost his \_\_\_\_\_ just because his secretary was ten minutes late.

A. temper                      B. mood                      C. mind                      D. passion

【本题答案】A

【本题解析】本题考查**固定搭配**。temper脾气；lose one's temper为固定短语，意为“勃然大怒，发脾气”；mood心情，情绪；mind思维，想法；passion情感，激情。综上所述，该题选择A。

【本题翻译】这位男士勃然大怒，仅仅是因为他的秘书迟到了十分钟。

5. It is \_\_\_\_\_ that text messaging while driving is very dangerous.

A. significant                      B. obvious                      C. necessary                      D. sufficient

【本题答案】B

【本题解析】本题考查**形容词辨析**。significant重要的；重大的；obvious显然的，明显的；necessary必要的；sufficient充足的。综上所述，该题选择B。

【本题翻译】很明显，开车的时候发短信是很危险的。

### 第三节 句子结构和句子种类

一、判断下列句子类型，如果是从句请划出从句并判断从句类型。（斜体部分为连词）

- Nothing will make him stop smoking. (主谓宾宾补)
- He *not only* gave us a lot of advice, *but also* helped us to study English. (并列句)
- I don't believe *that* he will do so. (宾语从句)
- To love is to give. (主系表)

5. He had the thought *that* Mary had probably fallen ill. (同位语从句)
6. Having finished the work, he could have a rest. (主谓宾)
7. We can't have a picnic *because* it's raining. (原因状语从句)
8. *Who* will win the match is still unknown. (主语从句)
9. Sally doesn't believe the truth *that* I told her. (定语从句)
10. The fact is *that* we have already lost the game. (表语从句)

## 二、单项选择。

### 1-5: ABDDB

1. —“Is your uncle a driver?”

—“\_\_\_\_\_.”

A. No, but my aunt is

B. Yes, but my aunt is

C. No, he doesn't

D. Yes, he does

【本题答案】A

【本题解析】本题考查一般疑问句。一般疑问句的回答一般是 Yes 或 No 加上相应的主语和 be/情/助的肯否，疑问句中用 is 提问，应用 is 回答 Yes, he is/No, he isn't, 排除 C、D。根据 but 转折语境只能选择 A 选项。综上所述，该题选择 A。

【本题翻译】——你的叔叔是司机吗？

——不，但是我的姑妈是。

2. \_\_\_\_\_ Peter and Jim \_\_\_\_\_ hamburgers?

A. Does; like

B. Do; like

C. Does; likes

D. Do; likes

【本题答案】B

【本题解析】本题考查一般疑问句。本题的主语是 Peter and Jim, 是复数，故用助动词 do 构成一般疑问句，助动词后应该用动词原形，故用 like。综上所述，该题选择 B。

【本题翻译】彼得和吉姆喜欢吃汉堡吗？

3. \_\_\_\_\_ there lots of \_\_\_\_\_ on the hill?

A. Is; sheep

B. Is; sheeps

C. Are; sheeps

D. Are; sheep

【本题答案】D

【本题解析】本题考查 there be 句型及一般疑问句。There be 句型中遵循就近一致原则，谓语动词的单复数离他最近的主语的单复数保持一致，sheep 绵羊，单复同形，用 lots of 大量的修饰表面有很多羊复数的概念，故谓语动词用复数，排除 AB。综上所述，该题选择 D。

【本题翻译】在山上有很多羊吗？

4. \_\_\_\_\_ great news it is! We'll have a school trip next week.

A. What a

B. What

C. How a

D. How

【本题答案】B

【本题解析】本题考查感叹句。根据 great news it is! 可知这里考查了感叹句，本句的中心词是

news, 它是一个不可数名词, great 是一个形容词, 在这里修饰 news, 根据 What+形容词+可数名词复数/不可数名词+主语+谓语! 综上所述, 该题选择 B。

【本题翻译】多么妙的消息啊! 我们下周将去郊游。

5. —Dad, what do you think of the picture I drew?

—\_\_\_\_\_! It's the nicest one that I have ever seen.

A. What beautiful

B. How terrible

C. How wonderful

D. What wonderful picture

【本题答案】C

【本题解析】本题考查**感叹句**。what 修饰名词或名词短语, 故 A 不对; 根据下文 the nicest one 可知对这幅画是肯定的, 故 B 多讨厌啊! 不合题意; picture 是可数名词, 前面要用不定冠词 a 表示单数, 故 D 不对; how 修饰形容词或副词。综上所述, 该题选择 C。

【本题翻译】——爸爸, 你认为我画的图片怎么样?

——精彩极了, 这是我曾经看见的最好看的一副。

#### 6-10: CCBBB

6. Our visitors decided to stay in our city for \_\_\_\_\_ two days as they wanted to have a look around.

A. other

B. the other

C. another

D. other's

【本题答案】C

【本题解析】本题考查**代词辨析**。another 意为“又一; 另一; 再一”, 可与数字加复数名词连用, 表示在原有基础上再增加……; another two days 意为“另外两天”。综上所述, 该题选择 C。

【本题翻译】我们的访问者决定在我们市再多待两天, 因为他们想到处转转。

7. With good treatment and care, Professor Smith unbelievably \_\_\_\_\_ from a heart attack in a week.

A. remained

B. returned

C. recovered

D. removed

【本题答案】C

【本题解析】本题考查**动词辨析**。remain 保持; 剩余; return 返回; recover 恢复; 通常指疾病的恢复; remove 移除。综上所述, 该题选择 C。

【本题翻译】在优越的治疗条件和悉心照料之下, 史密斯教授的心脏病居然在一周之后得以恢复。

8. The old lady was \_\_\_\_\_ to the young man who helped her find her lost grandson.

A. touched

B. grateful

C. cheerful

D. generous

【本题答案】B

【本题解析】本题考查**形容词辨析**。touched 感动的; grateful 感激的, 常与 to 搭配; cheerful 愉快的, 高兴的; generous 慷慨的, 大方的。综上所述, 该题选择 B。

【本题翻译】老妇人非常感激那个帮她找到她走失的孙子的年轻人。

9. Sandy feels sure about her own ability. She is a (n) \_\_\_\_\_ person.

A. energetic

B. confident

C. outgoing

D. curious

【本题答案】B

【本题解析】本题考查**形容词辨析**。energetic 精力充沛的; confident 自信的; outgoing 外向的; curious 好奇的。综上所述, 该题选择 B。

【本题翻译】Sandy 对自己的能力很有信心。她是一个自信的人。

10. —May I \_\_\_\_\_ your motorbike, please?

—Certainly. But you mustn't \_\_\_\_\_ it to others.

A. lend; lend                      B. borrow; lend                      C. borrow; borrow                      D. lend; borrow

【本题答案】B

【本题解析】本题考查**动词辨析**。borrow 表示从别人那里借进某物; lend 表示将某物借给某人。综上所述, 该题选择 B。

【本题翻译】—我可以借用一下你的摩托车吗?

—当然可以, 但是你不能借给别人。

#### 第四节 时态语态

##### 1-5: DCCAB

1. The kite \_\_\_\_\_ in China more than 2000 years ago.

A. invents                      B. invented                      C. is invented                      D. was invented

【本题答案】D

【本题解析】本题考查**一般过去时和被动语态**。根据时间状语“2 000 years ago”可知, 此处应用一般过去时; 又因主语 The kite 与谓语动词 invent 之间构成被动关系, 应用被动语态。综上所述, 该题选择 D。

【本题翻译】风筝是 2000 多年在中国发明的。

2. —What happened to Mrs. Smart?

—She cut herself while she \_\_\_\_\_ lunch.

A. prepares                      B. is preparing                      C. was preparing                      D. has prepared

【本题答案】C

【本题解析】本题考查**过去进行时**。根据 happened 及句意可知, 整个句子在描述过去发生的事情; while 引导的时间状语从句中的谓语动词表示的是正在发生的动作, 故该用过去进行时。综上所述, 该题选择 C。

【本题翻译】—Smart 夫人发生了什么事?

—她在准备晚饭时切伤了自己。

3. —Have you ever visited Shenyang EXPO Garden?

—Yes. I \_\_\_\_\_ it last year.

A. have visited                      B. visit                      C. visited                      D. will visit

【本题答案】C

【本题解析】本题考查**一般过去时**。根据时间状语“last year”可知, 此处应用一般过去时。综上所述, 该题选择 C。



【本题翻译】—你参观过沈阳世博园吗？

—是的。我去年参观的。

4. —Hi, Jill. I \_\_\_\_\_ rapid progress in my math since you shared your good experience with me.

—Great! Congratulations!

A. have made

B. made

C. will make

D. make

【本题答案】A

【本题解析】本题考查**现在完成时**。根据 since+从句（从句时态为一般过去时），前面主句时态应为现在完成时。综上所述，该题选择 A。

【本题翻译】—你好，Jill。自从你跟我分享了好经验，我的数学突飞猛进。

—太好了！祝贺你！

5. —Krystal, do you know how tea is produced?

—Yes. When tea leaves are ready, they are picked by hand and then \_\_\_\_\_ for processing.

A. send

B. are sent

C. were sent

D. sent

【本题答案】B

【本题解析】本题考查**一般现在时和被动语态**。根据语境并分析句子结构可知，主语 they 与动词 send 之间构成被动关系，应用被动语态；且此处是在说明一个事实，应用一般现在时。综上所述，该题选择 B。

【本题翻译】—Krystal,你知道茶是怎么制成的吗？

—知道啊。当茶叶长好了，要手工采摘下来，然后送去加工处理。

#### 6-10: CCCDB

6. I \_\_\_\_\_ on the computer when Frank called me last night.

A. work

B. will work

C. was working

D. am working

【本题答案】C

【本题解析】本题考查**过去进行时**。根据句意可知，work 是过去某个时刻正在进行的动作，应用过去进行时。综上所述，该题选择 C。

【本题翻译】昨晚 Frank 给我打电话时我正用电脑工作。

7. Bob, you \_\_\_\_\_ in this city since 2018. How do you like it?

A. lived

B. live

C. have lived

D. had lived

【本题答案】C

【本题解析】本题考查**现在完成时**。根据 since+过去时间，句子应用现在完成时。综上所述，该题选择 C。

【本题翻译】Bob，自 2018 年起你就居住在这个城市了。你对这个城市怎么看？

8. —The air here is much fresher than before.

—Exactly! We \_\_\_\_\_ a lot of trees in the past few years.

A. planted

B. were planting

C. have planted

D. will plant

【本题答案】C



【本题解析】本题考查**现在完成时**。根据时间状语“in the past few years”可知，本句时态应用现在完成时。综上所述，该题选择 C。

【本题翻译】—这里的空气比以前清新多了。

—确实如此！过去几年我们在这里种了好多树。

9. —Have scientists found life on Mars?

—Not yet, but I think they \_\_\_\_\_ it some day.

A. find

B. found

C. have found

D. will find

【本题答案】D

【本题解析】本题考查**一般将来时**。根据时间状语“some day”和句意可知，此处应用一般将来时。综上所述，该题选择 D。

【本题翻译】—科学家们在火星上发现生命了吗？

—还没有，但是我认为总有一天他们会发现（生命）的。

10. —You promised that you \_\_\_\_\_ me to Disneyland, Dad.

—Well, I did, dear. But we have to change the plan.

A. will take

B. would take

C. has taken

D. had taken

【本题答案】B

【本题解析】本题考查**过去将来时**。根据第一句中的“promised”和第二句中的“we have to change the plan”可知，take 是从过去某一时间来看将要发生的动作，应用过去将来时。综上所述，该题选择 B。

【本题翻译】—爸爸，你答应过要带我去迪士尼乐园。

—是的，亲爱的，我确实说过。但我们不得不改变计划。

### 11-15: CBAAD

11. Every year thousands of tourists \_\_\_\_\_ the mountain area to relax themselves.

A. visited

B. were visiting

C. visit

D. have visited

【本题答案】C

【本题解析】本题考查**一般现在时**。根据时间状语“Every year”可知，时态应用一般现在时。综上所述，该题选择 C。

【本题翻译】每年数以千计的游客到山里来放松自己。

12. Mike \_\_\_\_\_ the furniture into his new flat this time yesterday.

A. would move

B. was moving

C. has moved

D. had moved.

【本题答案】B

【本题解析】本题考查**过去进行时**。根据时间状语“this time yesterday”可知，时态应用过去进行时。综上所述，该题选择 B。

【本题翻译】昨天这个时候，Mike 正把家具搬进他的新房里。

13. —The coffee's finished!

—Oh, sorry! I \_\_\_\_\_ to the shop to get some.

- A. am going                      B. was going                      C. went                      D. have gone

【本题答案】A

【本题解析】本题考查位移动词用进行时表将来。go 是位移动词，常用现在进行时表示一般将来。综上所述，该题选择 A。

【本题翻译】—咖啡喝完了。

—哦，对不起。我马上去店里买一些咖啡。

14. By the end of last month, the workers \_\_\_\_\_ 20,000 trees in the science and technology park.

- A. had planted                      B. have planted                      C. planted                      D. having been plant

【本题答案】A

【本题解析】本题考查完成时。“四大金刚”by 译为“直到”，其后加 last month 上个月，是表示过去的时间，因此句子的时态要用过去完成时 had done。综上所述，该题选择 A。

【本题翻译】到上个月底，工人们在科技园已经种植了 20000 棵树了。

15. By the time you get back, great changes \_\_\_\_\_ in this area.

- A. will take place                      B. will be taken place  
C. are going to take place                      D. will have taken place

【本题答案】D

【本题解析】本题考查完成时。by the time+从句，从句用一般现在时，主句时态用将来完成时。综上所述，该题选择 D。

【本题翻译】到你回来的时候，这个地方会发生很多变化。

#### 16-20: BDDBD

16. \_\_\_\_\_ the meeting, I would have gone to the concert last Sunday.

- A. In spite of                      B. But for                      C. Because of                      D. As for

【本题答案】B

【本题解析】本题考查短语辨析。In spite of 尽管; but for 要不是; because of 由于; as for 至于。综上所述，该题选择 B。

【本题翻译】要不是开会的话，我上周日就去听音乐会了。

17. It's \_\_\_\_\_ late now, but I still have \_\_\_\_\_ homework to do.

- A. too much; too much                      B. much too; much too  
C. too much; much too                      D. much too; too much

【本题答案】D

【本题解析】本题考查短语辨析。too much 太多 (接不可数名词), much too 太…(接形容词副词)。结合句意及句子结构可知选 D。综上所述，该题选择 D。

【本题翻译】虽然现在很晚了，但是我还有很多作业要做。

18. He bought her what she wanted, \_\_\_\_\_ the fact that they were costly.

- A. even if                      B. as though                      C. only if                      D. regardless of

【本题答案】D

【本题解析】本题考查**短语辨析**。even if 尽管 (其后接从句); as though 好像; only if 只有; regardless of 尽管 (其后接词)。结合句意和句子结构可知选 D。综上所述，该题选择 D。

【本题翻译】他给她买了她想要的东西，尽管这些东西很贵。

19. A good writing \_\_\_\_\_ clear organization and choices of words.

- A. calls on                      B. calls for                      C. calls up                      D. calls off

【本题答案】B

【本题解析】本题考查**短语辨析**。call on 拜访; call for 需要; call up 打电话; 使想起; call off 取消。综上所述，该题选择 B。

【本题翻译】好的写作需要清晰的文章组织结构和恰当的词汇选择。

20. Our new house is very \_\_\_\_\_ for me as I can get to the office within five minutes.

- A. comfortable                      B. convenient                      C. available                      D. capable

【本题答案】D

【本题解析】本题考查**形容词辨析**。comfortable 舒服的; convenient 方便的; available 可获得的; capable 有能力的。综上所述，该题选择 D。

【本题翻译】我们的新家对我来说很方便，因为我五分钟之内就能到办公室。

## 第五节 主谓一致

### 1-5: ABBAB

1. Not only some international stars but also the Chinese singer and dancer \_\_\_\_\_ wonderful performances at the concert recently.

- A. has given                      B. have given                      C. is giving                      D. will be giving

【本题答案】A

【本题解析】本题考查**就近原则和时态**。根据句意和句中 recently 可知，句子应用现在完成时，句中涉及 not only...but also...句型，应用就近原则，即谓语动词与靠近的主语保持一致，“the Chinese singer and dancer”意为“中国的歌手兼舞蹈家”，为可数名词单数形式，故应用 has，空格处应填 has given。综上所述，该题选择 A。

【本题翻译】最近不仅有一些国际明星，还有中国的歌手兼舞蹈家在音乐会上进行了精彩的表演。

2. More than one student as well as three teachers \_\_\_\_\_ at the meeting the other day.

- A. were awarded                      B. was awarded  
C. will be awarded                      D. have been awarded

【本题答案】B

【本题解析】本题考查**就远原则和时态**。分析句子可知，动词 award 是句中谓语动词，与主语 More than one student 之间是被动关系，结合时间状语 the other day 可知，讲述过去的事情，应用一般过去时态；当主语后有由 as well as 连接时，遵循就远原则，所以 More than one student 决定谓语动词用单数还是复数，又因 more than one+可数名词单数作主语时，谓语动词用单数，所以本句中谓语动词应用单数形式。综上所述，该题选择 B。

【本题翻译】在前几天的会议上，不止一名学生和三名老师获奖。

3. Drinking cola often \_\_\_\_\_ the cinema experience more enjoyable.

A. make                      B. makes                      C. made                      D. has made

【本题答案】B

【本题解析】本题考查**主谓一致和时态**。根据句意和句中 often 可知，句子陈述的是经常性、习惯性的动作，应用一般现在时；句子主语为动名词 drinking cola，谓语动词应用单数，make 的三单形式为 makes。综上所述，该题选择 B。

【本题翻译】喝可乐常常使我们的电影体验更加愉快。

4. So far, the coach together with all the players \_\_\_\_\_ their confidence.

A. has lost                      B. have lost                      C. lost                      D. is losing

【本题答案】A

【本题解析】本题考查**就远原则和时态**。由 So far 可知，句子时态用现在完成时；as well as 连接并列的两个主语时，谓语动词的数与前面的主语保持一致，即根据 coach 来定，coach 是单数，因此空格处是 has lost。综上所述，该题选择 A。

【本题翻译】到目前为止，教练和所有的球员都失去了信心。

5. The police \_\_\_\_\_ the murderer everywhere when he suddenly appeared in the theatre.

A. are searching                      B. were searching                      C. is searching                      D. was searching

【本题答案】B

【本题解析】本题考查**主谓一致和时态**。分析句子，时间状语从句用了一般过去时，故主句用过去进行时，表示过去正在进行的动作；police 是看做复数的集体名词，谓语动词用复数形式。综上所述，该题选择 B。

【本题翻译】当他突然出现在剧院时，警方正在四处搜查谋杀犯。

#### 6-10: ACBBC

6. The number of foreigners \_\_\_\_\_ increasing at a rate of about 10% per year.

A. is                      B. are                      C. was                      D. were

【本题答案】A

【本题解析】本题考查**主谓一致和时态**。根据 per year，时态应该用一般现在时；The number of 表示“……的数量”，The number of+复数名词做主语时，谓语动词要用单数。综上所述，该题选择 A。

【本题翻译】来到中国的外国人的数量正以每年百分之十左右的速度递增。

7. His private museum together with his art collections \_\_\_\_\_ to the country as a gift.

A. has offered                      B. have offered                      C. is offered                      D. are offered

【本题答案】C

【本题解析】本题考查**就远原则和语态**。together with 连接两个并列的主语时，遵循就远原则，谓语动词的形式和较远的主语保持一致，本句和 private museum 保持一致，且主语和 offer 之间是被动关系，应该用被动语态。综上所述，该题选择 C。

【本题翻译】他的私人博物馆和他的艺术收藏品作为礼物赠送给了这个国家。

8. Neither your brother nor mine \_\_\_\_\_ the good news. Let's tell them.

A. know                      B. knows                      C. had known                      D. have known

【本题答案】B

【本题解析】本题考查**就近原则和时态**。neither...nor...表示既不……也不……，neither...nor...连接两个主语时，谓语动词根据临近原则决定；叙述客观事实，应用一般现在时。此处 mine 相当于 my sister，是第三人称单数，应用 knows。综上所述，该题选择 B。

【本题翻译】你的妹妹和我的妹妹都不知道这个好消息，让我们告诉他们。

9. Now every means \_\_\_\_\_ prevent the water from \_\_\_\_\_.

A. get used to; polluted                      B. is used to; being polluted  
C. gets used to; pollution                      D. are used to; polluting

【本题答案】B

【本题解析】本题考查**主谓一致**。分析句子结构可知，主语是 every means (每一种方法)，其中 means 是名词，表示“方法”，单复数同形，由前面的 every 可知，此处主语是单数；根据句意可知，此处表示“每一种方法被用来”，应用 be/get used to do 表示“被用来”。prevent sth. from doing sth. 是固定搭配，表示“防止某事……”，此处表示“防止水被污染”，所以应用动名词的被动式：being polluted。综上所述，该题选择 B。

【本题翻译】现在每一种方法都被用来防止水被污染。

10. —Look! Every desk and every chair \_\_\_\_\_ in the classroom.

—Oh, it must have taken you lots of time.

A. is cleaned                      B. are cleaned  
C. has been cleaned                      D. have been cleaned

【本题答案】C

【本题解析】本题考查**主谓一致和时态**。and 连接的并列主语是单数概念，且前面有 every 修饰时，谓语动词用单数。根据语境可知，此处应用现在完成时，表示已经完成的动作。综上所述，该题选择 C。

【本题翻译】一看！教室里的每一张桌子和每一把椅子都已经被打扫了。

—那一定花了你很多时间。

### 11-15: ACBCD

11. The Chinese people \_\_\_\_\_ loving peace.

A. are praised for                      B. are in praise of                      C. is in praise of                      D. is praised for

【本题答案】A

【本题解析】本题考查**主谓一致**。分析句子可知，句中 people 的谓语用复数形式，系动词应该用 are，故 C 与 D 不对。be praised for 意为“因……而受到称赞”，be in praise of 结构有误，应为 do...in praise of...，其意为“做……赞扬……”。综上所述，该题选择 A。

【本题翻译】中国人民以爱好和平而著称。

12. Edison, along with many other scientists, \_\_\_\_\_ us and taught us that conducting experiments is a scientific approach to establishing the truth.

A. has inspired                      B. have inspired                      C. inspire                      D. inspired

【本题答案】C

【本题解析】本题考查**就远原则**。along with 连接两个并列的主语时，遵循就远原则，谓语动词的形式和较远的主语保持一致，本句和 Edison 保持一致，用单数。综上所述，该题选择 C。

【本题翻译】爱迪生和其他许多科学家激励我们，教导我们做实验是建立真理的科学方法。

13. This is one of the most popular novels that \_\_\_\_\_ by the writer.

A. have written                      B. have been written  
C. has written                      D. has been written

【本题答案】B

【本题解析】本题考查**定语从句的主谓一致和语态**。先行词为 novels，关系代词在定语从句中做主语时，从句谓语动词的数应与先行词的单复数保持一致，先行词 novels 为复数，所以从句谓语动词应用复数形式；其次 novel 和 write 之间应为被动关系。综上所述，该题选择 B。

【本题翻译】这是这位作家写的最受欢迎的小说之一。

14. Everybody \_\_\_\_\_ to know the law, but few people do.

A. suppose                      B. supposes                      C. is supposed                      D. supposed

【本题答案】C

【本题解析】本题考查**主谓一致**。本句的主语是 Everybody，谓语动词应用第三人称单数；be supposed to do sth. 意为“应该做某事”。综上所述，该题选择 C。

【本题翻译】每个人都应该知道法律，但很少有人这样做。

15. This is the only one of the best films that \_\_\_\_\_ this year.

A. have shown                      B. have been shown                      C. has shown                      D. has been shown

【本题答案】D

【本题解析】本题考查**定语从句的主谓一致**。分析句子可知，此处是定语从句。当先行词是 the only one of + 名词的复数时，定语从句的先行词就是 the only one，这是一个单数，从句谓语动词用单数形式；其次 film 和 show 之间应是被动关系。综上所述，该题选择 D。

【本题翻译】这是今年上映的唯一一部最好的电影。

#### 16-20: BBDA

16. Tom had prepared carefully for his English examination so that he could be sure of passing it on his first \_\_\_\_\_.

A. intention                      B. attempt                      C. purpose                      D. desire

【本题答案】B

【本题解析】本题考查**名词辨析**。intention 意图；attempt 尝试；purpose 目的；desire 欲望。固定搭配 On one's first attempt 第一次尝试。综上所述，该题选择 B。

【本题翻译】汤姆为英语考试做了仔细的准备，以便有把握第一次考试就及格。



17. On his way to the airport, it \_\_\_\_\_ to him that he had forgotten to take his passport.

- A. happened                      B. occurred                      C. reflected                      D. took place

【本题答案】B

【本题解析】本题考查**动词辨析**。happen 发生，出现，碰巧；occur 发生，出现；it occurs to sb. that...某人突然想到；reflect 反映，显示，认真思考；take place 发生，举行。综上所述，该题选择 B。

【本题翻译】在去机场的路上，他突然想到忘带护照了。

18. \_\_\_\_\_ I can see, the weather is not likely to change in a few days.

- A. As well as                      B. As long as                      C. As soon as                      D. As far as

【本题答案】D

【本题解析】本题考查**短语辨析**。as well as 和……一样；和；as long as 只要；as soon as 尽快；as far as 就……而言。综上所述，该题选择 D。

【本题翻译】依我看，这些天天气不大可能会变。

19. He \_\_\_\_\_ knowledge of this language by careful study.

- A. acquired                      B. required                      C. inquired                      D. requested

【本题答案】A

【本题解析】本题考查**动词辨析**。acquire 获得，得到；require 要求；inquire 询问；request 请求，要求。综上所述，该题选择 A。

【本题翻译】他通过努力的学习获得了这门语言的知识。

20. I haven't made any new friends yet and everybody here makes \_\_\_\_\_ of me.

- A. fun                      B. joy                      C. laugh                      D. smile

【本题答案】A

【本题解析】本题考查**短语单配**。fun 乐趣；joy 高兴；laugh 笑；smile 微笑；make fun of sb.取笑某人。综上所述，该题选择 A。

【本题翻译】我还没有交到新朋友，这里的每个人都取笑我。

## 第六节 倒装

### 1-5: CBCDB

1. So much of interest \_\_\_\_\_ that most visitors simply run out of time before seeing it all.

- A. offers Beijing                      B. Beijing offers                      C. does Beijing offer                      D. Beijing does offer

【本题答案】C

【本题解析】本题考查**部分倒装**。so...that...意为“如此……以至于……”。根据语法规则当 so +adj./adv.位于句首时，其所在句子要用部分倒装。综上所述，该题选择 C。

【本题翻译】北京旅游景点如此多，以至于游客根本没有时间能够游玩完所有的地方。

2. Bill wasn't happy about the delay of the report by Jason, and \_\_\_\_\_.

- A. I was neither                      B. neither was I                      C. I was either                      D. either was I

【本题答案】B

【本题解析】本题考查**反复倒装**。根据句意可知，后面句子表达的含义是“我也是”，且前面有 wasn't，否定语境的“...和...一样”，用 neither/nor+be/情/助+另一主语。综上所述，该题选择 B。

【本题翻译】贝尔听说乔森的报告会后感到非常不高兴，我也是。

3. Seldom \_\_\_\_\_ video games ever since they entered college.

- A. did they play      B. they played      C. have they played      D. they have played

【本题答案】C

【本题解析】本题考查**部分倒装**。seldom 为否定词，位于句首时句子要部分倒装倒装。综上所述，该题选择 C。

【本题翻译】自从他们进入大学，他们很少玩电子游戏。

4. Only then \_\_\_\_\_ how much damage had been caused.

- A. she realized      B. she had realized      C. had she realized      D. did she realize

【本题答案】D

【本题解析】本题考查**部分倒装**。当 only 位于句首修饰状语时，句子用部分倒装；排除 AB；then 意为“那时”，表示过去，所以要用一般过去时；过去完成时表示动作发生在过去的过去。综上所述，该题选择 D。

【本题翻译】只有在那时她才意识到造成了多大的破坏。

5. Not until the motorbike looked almost new \_\_\_\_\_ repairing and cleaning it.

- A. he stopped      B. did he stop      C. stopped he      D. he did stop

【本题答案】B

【本题解析】本题考查**部分倒装**。Not until 位于句首时，主句要用部分倒装。综上所述，该题选择 B。

【本题翻译】直到摩托车看起来几乎是新的，他才停止修理和清洁它。

#### 6-10: DBABB

6. Little \_\_\_\_\_ that we were watching his every move, so he seemed to be going his own way in this business.

- A. he realized      B. he didn't realize      C. didn't he realize      D. did he realize

【本题答案】D

【本题解析】本题考查**部分倒装**。little 是否定词，位于句首时，句子要进行部分倒装，即把助动词移至主语前。又因为 little 是否定词，所以不用再与否定句连用了。综上所述，该题选择 D。

【本题翻译】他几乎没有意识到我们在注视着他的一举一动，所以他这一行似乎我行我素。

7. \_\_\_\_\_ that Marie was able to set up new branches elsewhere.

- A. So successful her business was      B. So successful was her business  
C. So her business was successful      D. So was her successful business

【本题答案】B

【本题解析】本题考查**部分倒装**。so...that...意为“如此……以至于……”，根据语法规则当 so+adj./adv.位于句首时，其所在句子要用部分倒装，即：So+adj./adv.+be/情/助+主语+(V 剩)+that



从句。综上所述，该题选择 B。

【本题翻译】Marie 的生意如此成功，以至于她能够在其他地方开办新的分公司。

8. —Did Linda see the traffic accident?

—No, no sooner \_\_\_\_\_ than it happened.

A. had she gone      B. she had gone      C. has she gone      D. she has gone

【本题答案】A

【本题解析】本题考查**一见三钟情**。no sooner...than...意为“一……就……”，主句的谓语要用过去完成时，than 从句中的谓语要用一般过去时。当 no sooner 位于句首时，其所在句子要部分倒装，即：No sooner+had+主语+done+than+主+谓。综上所述，该题选择 A。

【本题翻译】—Linda 看见了这起交通事故吗？

—没有，她刚走，事故就发生了。

9. Just in front of our house \_\_\_\_\_ with a history of 1,000 years.

A. does a tall tree stand      B. stands a tall tree  
C. a tall tree is standing      D. a tall tree stands

【本题答案】B

【本题解析】本题考查**全部倒装**。in front of our house 为表达地点方位的介词短语，当表达地点方位的介词短语位于句首，且主语为名词时，其所在句子要用全部倒装，即将全部的谓语提到主语之前。综上所述，该题选择 B。

【本题翻译】就在我们的房子前面有一棵有 1000 年历史的大树。

10. At the foot of the mountain \_\_\_\_\_.

A. a village lie      B. lies a village      C. does a village lie      D. lying a village

【本题答案】B

【本题解析】本题考查**全部倒装**。At the foot of the mountain 为表达地点方位的介词短语，当表达地点方位的介词短语位于句首，且主语为名词时，其所在句子要用全部倒装，即将全部的谓语提到主语之前。综上所述，该题选择 B。

【本题翻译】山脚下有一个村庄。

### 11-15: DBDCA

11. I've tried very hard to improve my English. But by no means \_\_\_\_\_ with my progress.

A. the teacher is not satisfied      B. is the teacher not satisfied  
C. the teacher is satisfied      D. is the teacher satisfied

【本题答案】D

【本题解析】本题考查**部分倒装**。by no means 意为“绝不”，表否定含义的词组，当其位于句首时，其所在句子要用部分倒装；其次 by no means 已经表达否定含义了，后面不用 not。综上所述，该题选择 D。

【本题翻译】我非常努力地提高我的英语水平。但是老师对我的进步一点也不满意。

12. \_\_\_\_\_ snacks and drinks, but they also brought cards for entertainment when they had a picnic

in the forest.

A. Not only they brought

B. Not only did they bring

C. Not only brought they

D. Not only they did bring

【本题答案】B

【本题解析】本题考查**部分倒装**。not only...but also...意为“不但……而且……”，当 not only 位于句首时，其所在句子要用部分倒装，即：Not only+be/情/助+主语+V 剩+but also+主+谓。综上所述，该题选择 B。

【本题翻译】他们不仅带了零食和饮料，而且在森林里野餐时还带了娱乐卡片。

13. Only when your identity has been checked \_\_\_\_\_.

A. you are allowed in

B. you will be allowed in

C. will you allow in

D. will you be allowed in

【本题答案】D

【本题解析】本题考查**部分倒装**。当 only 位于句首修饰状语时，句子用部分倒装，其次 you 和 allow 之间应该是被动关系，故用被动语态。综上所述，该题选择 D。

【本题翻译】只有在检查了你的身份后，你才能获准进入。

14. Only in this way \_\_\_\_\_ to make improvement in the operating system.

A. you can hope

B. you did hope

C. can you hope

D. did you hope

【本题答案】C

【本题解析】本题考查**部分倒装**。当 only 位于句首修饰状语时，句子用部分倒装，其次根据句意，需要提前的应该是情态动词 can。综上所述，该题选择 C。

【本题翻译】只有这样，你才有希望在操作系统上做出改进。

15. By no means \_\_\_\_\_ to our plan for the trip.

A. will she agree

B. she will agree

C. agrees she

D. will agree she

【本题答案】A

【本题解析】本题考查**部分倒装**。by no means 意为“绝不”，表否定含义的词组，当其位于句首时，其所在句子要用部分倒装。综上所述，该题选择 A。

【本题翻译】她绝不同意我们的旅行计划。

#### 16-20: ACBDD

16. I took the medicine, but it didn't have any \_\_\_\_\_ on me.

A. effect

B. relation

C. touch

D. affect

【本题答案】A

【本题解析】本题考查**名词辨析**。effect n. 效果，影响；have...effect on...对……有影响；relation 关系；touch 触摸；affect v. 影响。综上所述，该题选择 A。

【本题翻译】我吃药了，但是不起任何作用。

17. No agreement was \_\_\_\_\_ in the discussion as neither side would give way to the other.

A. arrived

B. obtained

C. reached

D. gained

【本题答案】C

【本题解析】本题考查**动词辨析**。arrive 到达，达成（协议）；obtain 获得，得到；reach 到达，达到；gain 获得，取得；arrive at/reach an agreement 达成协议。综上所述，该题选择 C。

【本题翻译】讨论没有达成协议，因为双方都不愿意让步。

18. The boy is eager to \_\_\_\_\_ knowledge in different fields.

- A. accomplish      B. absorb      C. arrange      D. approach

【本题答案】B

【本题解析】本题考查**动词辨析**。accomplish 完成；absorb 吸收，理解，使全神贯注；arrange 安排，筹备，整理；approach 靠近，着手处理。综上所述，该题选择 B。

【本题翻译】这个男孩渴望吸收各个领域的知识。

19. Tim, we're going to Beijing for vacation, please \_\_\_\_\_ some information online.

- A. look for      B. look out      C. look after      D. look up

【本题答案】D

【本题解析】本题考查**短语辨析**。look for 寻找；look out 当心；look after 照顾；look up 查找。综上所述，该题选择 D。

【本题翻译】Tim，我们打算去度假，请上网找些信息。

20. You should take \_\_\_\_\_ of this opportunity and try to get the post.

- A. care      B. charge      C. place      D. advantage

【本题答案】D

【本题解析】本题考查**短语辨析**。选中的词都可以和 take 以及 of 搭配构成短语 take care of 照顾；take charge of 管理，负责；take place of 代替；take advantage of 利用。根据句意可知，此处是指好好利用这次机会。综上所述，该题选择 D。

【本题翻译】你应该好好利用这次机会，争取得到这个职位。

## 第七节 非谓语

### 1-5: DCCCC

1. The officers narrowly escaped \_\_\_\_\_ in the hot battle.

- A. have killed      B. to kill      C. to be killed      D. being killed

【本题答案】D

【本题解析】本题考查**非谓语做宾语**。escape 意为“逃避”，后接动名词形式作宾语，且 kill 与句子的主语 officers 之间存在着逻辑上的动宾关系，这里要用被动，故使用 being killed。综上所述，该题选择 D。

【本题翻译】军官们在激烈的战斗中险些丧命。

2. People couldn't help \_\_\_\_\_ the foolish emperor in the procession.

- A. laugh at      B. to laugh at      C. laughing at      D. laughing on

【本题答案】C

【本题解析】本题考查**非谓语做宾语**。couldn't help 意为“情不自禁”，后接动名词形式作宾语，

couldn't help doing sth.情不自禁做某事。综上所述，该题选择 C。

【本题翻译】人们情不自禁地嘲笑那位愚蠢的国王。

3. Much time \_\_\_\_\_ sitting at a desk, office workers are generally troubled by health problems.

- A. being spent                  B. having spent                  C. spent                  D. spending

【本题答案】C

【本题解析】本题考查**独立主格做状语**。该结构中的逻辑主语 much time 与 spend 之间为被动关系且非谓语动作已完成，故用过去分词 done 的形式。综上所述，该题选择 C。

【本题翻译】因为在桌前久坐，办公室工作人员一般都被健康问题所困扰。

4. \_\_\_\_\_ in the poorest area of Glasgow, he had a long, hard road to becoming a football star.

- A. Being raised                  B. Raising                  C. Raised                  D. To raise

【本题答案】C

【本题解析】本题考查**非谓语做状语**。raise 意为“养育”与句子主语 he 之间为被动关系，且动作已经完成，故用过去分词 done 的形式。综上所述，该题选择 C。

【本题翻译】他是在格拉斯哥最贫穷的地区长大的，经过一条漫长而艰难的道路才成了一名足球明星。

5. \_\_\_\_\_ the early flight, we ordered a taxi in advance and got up very early.

- A. Catching                  B. Caught                  C. To catch                  D. Catch

【本题答案】C

【本题解析】本题考查**非谓语做状语**。根据上下文逻辑关系可知设空处为目的状语，to do 不定式可做目的状语。综上所述，该题选择 C。

【本题翻译】为了赶上早班航班，我们提前预订了出租车，并且起得很早。

#### 6-10: DCBBD

6. \_\_\_\_\_ for two days, Steve managed to finish his report on schedule.

- A. To work                  B. Worked                  C. To be working                  D. Having worked

【本题答案】D

【本题解析】本题考查**非谓语做状语**。非谓语动作与句子主语 Steve 之间为逻辑上的主动关系，且非谓语动作发生在句子谓语动词 managed 之前，所以要用 having done 形式。综上所述，该题选择 D。

【本题翻译】工作了两天之后，史蒂夫设法按时完成了他的报告。

7. The manager was satisfied to see many new products \_\_\_\_\_ after great effort.

- A. having developed                  B. to develop                  C. developed                  D. develop

【本题答案】C

【本题解析】本题考查**非谓语做宾补**。非谓语动作与其逻辑主语 new products 为被动关系，选项中表示被动的非谓语动词只有 C 选项 developed。综上所述，该题选择 C。

【本题翻译】经理看到经过巨大努力许多新产品被研发出来非常满意。

8. When it comes to \_\_\_\_\_ in public, no one can match him.

- A. speak                      B. speaking                      C. being spoken                      D. be spoken

【本题答案】B

【本题解析】本题考查**非谓语做宾语**。come to 中的 to 为介词，故后面需用动名词 doing 形式，A 和 D 显然不正确；C 项为动名词的被动形式，不符合题意。综上所述，该题选择 B。

【本题翻译】谈到在公共场合演说，没人比得上他。

9. It's quite hot today. Do you feel like \_\_\_\_\_ for a swim?

- A. to go                      B. going                      C. go                      D. having gone

【本题答案】B

【本题解析】本题考查**非谓语做宾语**。feel like doing sth. 想要做某事。非谓语动词表示的动作并未在谓语动词的动作之前发生，排除 D。综上所述，该题选择 B。

【本题翻译】今天天气好热。你想去游泳吗？

10. The lecture \_\_\_\_\_, a lively question-and-answer session followed.

- A. being given                      B. having given  
C. to be given                      D. having been given

【本题答案】D

【本题解析】本题考查**独立主格做状语**。the lecture 是 give 的逻辑主语，两者间为被动关系，且该动作发生在谓语动词 followed 之前，故应使用现在分词完成式的被动形式。综上所述，该题选择 D。

【本题翻译】演讲之后，紧跟着一个生动的问答环节。

### 11-15: AADDA

11. There's a note pinned to the door \_\_\_\_\_ when the shop will open again.

- A. saying                      B. says                      C. said                      D. having said

【本题答案】A

【本题解析】本题考查**非谓语做定语**。note 和 say 之间是逻辑上的主动关系，故用 saying 作后置定语。say (用文字、数字、图画) 表达，说明(信息)。综上所述，该题选择 A。

【本题翻译】门上钉着一张便条，上面写着这家店再次开张的时间。

12. Anxiously, she took the dress out of the package and tried it on, only \_\_\_\_\_ it didn't fit.

- A. to find                      B. found                      C. finding                      D. having found

【本题答案】A

【本题解析】本题考查**非谓语做状语**。根据语境可知，此处考查“only+动词不定式”表示出乎意料的结果。综上所述，该题选择 A。

【本题翻译】她忧心忡忡地从袋子里取出那条连衣裙试穿了一下，结果发现它并不合身。

13. There are still many problems \_\_\_\_\_ before we are ready for a long stay on the Moon.

- A. solving                      B. solved                      C. being solved                      D. to be solved

【本题答案】D

【本题解析】本题考查**非谓语做定语**。被修饰词 problems 与 solve 之间为被动关系，故排除 A

项。根据句意可知“这些问题还未解决”。solved 表示被动并完成, 不符合句意。being solved 表示进行的被动, 也不符合句意。to be solved 既表被动又表示将来, 故选择 D 项。综上所述, 该题选择 D。

【本题翻译】在我们准备好在月球上长久停留之前, 仍然还有许多问题有待解决。

14. Last night, there were millions of people \_\_\_\_\_ the opening ceremony live on TV.

- A. watch                      B. to watch                      C. watched                      D. watching

【本题答案】D

【本题解析】本题考查**非谓语做定语**。被修饰词 people 与 watch 之间为逻辑上的主动关系, 故排除 C 项(表被动); 不定式表示目的或将来, 与句意不符, A 选项不是非谓语动词。综上所述, 该题选择 D。

【本题翻译】昨天夜里有数百万人在电视上观看了开幕式的现场直播。

15. This project \_\_\_\_\_ to help landless people just didn't work out as planned.

- A. designed                      B. having designed                      C. to be designed                      D. being designed

【本题答案】A

【本题解析】本题考查**非谓语做定语**。分析句子结构此处非谓语动词作定语, 修饰名词 the project, 非谓语动词 design 和逻辑主语 project 为被动关系, 且根据题干中的 did work 可知此处应该是已经完成的被动动作, 故用 designed。综上所述, 该题选择 A。

【本题翻译】那项为了帮助没有土地的人设计的项目结果并没有像原计划的那样起作用。

#### 16-20: CDBDB

16. If women remain unequal to men, it is hardly possible for them to have \_\_\_\_\_ to nature resources.

- A. approach                      B. connection                      C. access                      D. achievement

【本题答案】C

【本题解析】本题考查**短语搭配**。have access to 有机会; 有权利; approach 接近; 方法; 多用于 the approach to doing; connection 联系; achievement 成就。综上所述, 该题选择 C。

【本题翻译】如果女性仍然与男性不平等, 他们几乎不可能有机会接触自然资源。

17. —Could you please teach me how to \_\_\_\_\_ hongbao on WeChat?

—Sure. Let me show you.

- A. give away                      B. give up                      C. give back                      D. give out

【本题答案】D

【本题解析】本题考查**短语辨析**。give away 捐赠; give up 放弃; give back 归还; give out 分发。根据“...hongbao on WeChat”可知, 此处是指发红包。综上所述, 该题选择 D。

【本题翻译】—你能教我怎么在微信上发红包吗?

—当然。让我示范给你看。

18. The volunteer was proud \_\_\_\_\_ his work. What he did helped many people.

- A. by                      B. of                      C. for                      D. with

【本题答案】B

【本题解析】本题考查**短语搭配**。by 通过; of……的; for 为了; with 和。根据短语 be proud of “对……感到自豪”。综上所述，该题选择 B。

【本题翻译】这位志愿者为自己的工作感到自豪。他所做的帮助了许多人。

19. She isn't satisfied \_\_\_\_\_ what she has.

A. in

B. at

C. for

D. with

【本题答案】D

【本题解析】本题考查**短语搭配**。根据 be satisfied with 表“对……满足”。综上所述，该题选择 D。

【本题翻译】她不满足于她所拥有的。

20. I spent two hundred dollars \_\_\_\_\_ my clothes.

A. in

B. on

C. about

D. with

【本题答案】B

【本题解析】本题考查**短语搭配**。spend+时间/金钱+on+sth. 在某物上花费时间/金钱。综上所述，该题选择 B。

【本题翻译】我花了 200 美元买衣服。



## 第六章 补全对话

## Task 1

A: Good morning. Sit down, please.

B: Morning, doctor.

A: \_\_1\_\_

B: I was caught in the rain. I've got a bad cough and my head hurts.

A: Do you have a fever?

B: \_\_2\_\_ I feel terrible.

A: Let me see... There's nothing serious. \_\_3\_\_ Have a good rest, and you'll be fine soon.

B: Thanks, I will. \_\_4\_\_

A: You'd better choose your clothes according to the weather report. The weather often changes in summer.

B: How will the weather be tomorrow?

A: \_\_5\_\_ Now we're in the season of rain.

B: What bad weather!

A: When you go out, please wear warm clothes and take an umbrella with you.

B: Thank you, doctor.

A. You just have a cold.

B. It'll still be rainy tomorrow.

C. What's the weather like?

D. Yes. My temperature is 38°C.

E. I have a headache.

F. What's the matter with you?

G. Any other suggestions?

## 【全文翻译】

A: 早上好。请坐下。

B: 早上，医生。

A: 你怎么了？

B: 我被雨淋了。我咳嗽厉害，头疼。

A: 你发烧了吗？

B: 是的。我的体温是 38°C。我感觉很糟糕。

A: 让我想想没有什么严重的。你只是感冒了。好好休息一下，你很快就会好起来的。

B: 谢谢你，我会的。还有其他建议吗？



A: 你最好根据天气预报来选择你的衣服。夏天的天气经常发生变化。

B: 明天的天气会怎么样?

A: 明天还是会下雨。现在我们是雨季。

B: 多么糟糕的天气啊!

A: 外出时, 请穿暖和的衣服, 带一把伞。

B: 谢谢你, 医生。

### 1-5: FDAGB

1. F

【本题解析】根据下文回答 “I was caught in the rain. I’ve got a bad cough and my head hurts. (我淋了雨。我咳嗽得很厉害, 头也疼。)” 可知, 患者在描述症状, 此处应该在问 “怎么了”。所以F项 “What’s the matter with you? (你怎么了?)” 符合语境。综上所述, 该题选择F。

2. D

【本题解析】根据上文 “Do you have a fever? (你发烧吗?)” 可知, 医生询问是否发烧, 此处应该是yes或no的回答。所以D项 “Yes. My temperature is 38°C. (是的。我的体温是38°C。)” 符合语境。综上所述, 该题选择D。

3. A

【本题解析】根据上文提示 “Let me see... There’s nothing serious. (让我看看...不是非常严重。)” 和下文提示 “Have a good rest, and you’ll be fine soon. (好好休息, 你很快就会好的。)” 可知, 医生判断患者病得并不严重, 建议休息, 此处与病情有关。所以A项 “You just have a cold. (你只是感冒了。)” 符合语境。综上所述, 该题选择A。

4. G

【本题解析】根据下文回答 “You’d better choose your clothes according to the weather report. The weather often changes in summer. (你最好根据天气预报选衣服。夏天天气经常变化。)” 可知, 医生给出穿衣方面的建议, 此处应该是问句, 询问一些建议。所以G项 “Any other suggestions? (还有其他建议吗?)” 符合语境。综上所述, 该题选择G。

5. B

【本题解析】根据上文问句 “How will the weather be tomorrow? (明天天气如何?)” 可知, 患者询问天气, 此处要回答天气情况。所以B项 “It’ll still be rainy tomorrow. (明天还是会下雨。)” 符合语境。综上所述, 该题选择B。

### Task 2

A: Have you heard of Rong Chuang Amusement Park?

B: Yes. But I haven’t been there before. \_\_1\_\_

A: Sure. Are you interested in exciting rides?

B: Umm... a little.

B: Oh, I can’t try that. \_\_2\_\_ What about others?

A: One thing you can't miss there is Leaping over Chongqing. \_\_3\_\_ You can sit on a special chair and wear VR glasses. And most of the famous spots in Chongqing will be shown in front of you.

B: That's amazing. \_\_4\_\_

A: \_\_5\_\_ you'd better take enough money.

B: Thank you for telling me so much, I will go there this weekend

A: Hope you have a good time there.

A. It will make me feel so scared.

B. Can you introduce some interesting rides for me?

C. You can enjoy Beijing opera there.

D. By the way, the food there is very delicious.

E. Would you like to go with me?

F. It must be the most meaningful project there.

G. I can't wait to have a try.

### 【全文翻译】

A: 你听说过融创游乐园吗?

B: 是但我以前没去过那里。你能给我介绍一些有趣的游乐设施吗?

A: 肯定的你对令人兴奋的游乐设施感兴趣吗?

B: 嗯...有点。

B: 哦，我不能尝试那个。这会让我感到很害怕。那其他人呢?

A: 在那里你不能错过的一件事是“跨越重庆”。这一定是那里最有意义的项目。你可以坐在一张特殊的椅子上，戴上VR眼镜。而重庆上的大部分著名景点都会出现在你面前。

B: 太棒了。我等不及要试一试了。

A: 顺便说一下，那里的食物很好吃。你最好拿点足够多的钱。

B: 谢谢你告诉我这么多，我这个周末要去那里

A: 希望你在那里玩得开心。

### 1-5: BAFGD

1. B

【本题解析】根据上文 “But I haven't been there before.(但我以前没去过那里)” 可知，我没去过那里，应该是想了解一下那里的情况，所以B选项 “你能给我介绍一些有趣的游乐设施吗?” 符合语境。综上所述，该题选择B。

2. A

【本题解析】根据上文 “Oh, I can't try that.(哦，我不能尝试那个)” 可知，空格处应该说不能尝试的原因，所以A选项 “这会让我感到很害怕。” 符合语境。综上所述，该题选择A。

3. F

【本题解析】上文 “One thing you can’t miss there is Leaping over Chongqing.(在那里你不能错过的一件事是“跨越重庆”)” 提到了“跨越重庆”这个活动，选项F中project是关键词，指代“跨越重庆”这个活动，所以F项“这一定是那里最有意义的项目。”符合题意。综上所述，该题选择F。

4. G

【本题解析】上文 “That’s amazing.(太棒了)” 表达了作者赞美之情，所以G选项 “我等不及要试一试了。” 承接上文，符合语境。综上所述，该题选择G。

5. D

【本题解析】下文 “you’d better take enough money (你最好带足够的钱)” 提到了要多带钱，所以 D 选项 “顺便说一下，那里的食物很好吃。” 能引起下文，即食物好吃所以花钱会多。综上所述，该题选择 D。

### Task 3

A: I’m very happy to be your guide in Hainan these days. Are you satisfied with my service?

B:   1   I had a great time here.

A: Happy to hear that. What do you think of the people here?

B:   2   The drivers will stop and wait while people cross the road.

A: Yes, we follow the traffic rules well. How about the city?

B: Oh, it’s beautiful and clean.   3   It’s lovely.

A: Thanks very much. What else can I do for you?

B: Well, I want some popular local snacks for my family.   4  

A: Yes, it’s over there, next to the bank.

B:   5   Thanks a lot!

A: No problem. Welcome to visit our city again!

A. Where can I buy them?

B. OK, I will go now.

C. Yes, you did a great job!

D. They are friendly and polite.

E. The rubbish is sorted into different types.

F. How did you get it?

G. Is there a shop near here?

### 【全文翻译】

A: 我很高兴能成为你在海南的导游。你对我的服务感到满意吗?

B: 是的，你做得很好！我在这里玩得很开心。

A: 很高兴听到这个消息。你觉得这里的人怎么样？

B: 他们很友好、有礼貌。当人们过马路时，司机们会停车等待。

A: 是的，我们很好遵守交通规则。这个城市怎么样？

B: 哦，它又漂亮又干净。垃圾被分成不同的种类。这很不错。

A: 非常感谢。我还能为你做些什么呢？

B: 嗯，我想给我的家人吃一些很受欢迎的当地小吃。这附近有商店吗？

A: 是的，它就在那边，就在银行的旁边。

B: 好的，我现在就去。非常感谢！

A: 没问题。欢迎再次来到我们的城市！

### 1-5: CDEGB

#### 1. C

【本题解析】空前说 “Are you satisfied with my service?(您对我的服务满意吗?)”，因此空格处应该对A的服务做出评价，由空后 “I had a great time here(我在这里过得很愉快)”可知，B肯定觉得A干得很不错，C选项 “Yes, you did a great job!(是的，你做得很好!)” 是对A的高度评价，因此符合语境。综上所述，该题选择C。

#### 2. D

【本题解析】空前问 “What do you think of the people here?(你觉得这里的人怎么样?)”，空格处应该是对这里的人的一种评价，D选项 “They are friendly and polite.(他们很友好、有礼貌。)” 是对人的评价。综上所述，该题选择D。

#### 3. E

【本题解析】空前问 “How about the city?(城市怎么样?)”，空格处应该是对城市的评价，E选项 “The rubbish is sorted into different types.(垃圾被分成不同的种类。)” 是对城市的评价，因此符合语境。综上所述，该题选择E。

#### 4. G

【本题解析】空前 “Well, I want some popular local snacks for my family.(嗯，我想给我的家人买些当地流行的小吃。)” 表明B想买小吃，那肯定要问在哪里买，空后说 “Yes, it's over there, next to the bank.(是的，就在那边，银行旁边。)” 说明附近就有卖小吃的店，因此空格处是问附近有卖小吃的商店吗，G选项 “Is there a shop near here?(这附近有商店吗?)” 问的是附近是否有店。综上所述，该题选择G。

#### 5. B

【本题解析】空后 “Thanks a lot!(非常感谢!)” 是B在道谢，空格处B应该说自己要去买东西了，B选项 “OK, I will go now.(好的，我现在就去。)” 说明B现在就去买。综上所述，该题选择B。

### Task 4

A: There are many clubs in our school. \_\_1\_\_

B: I went to the English Club with my friend Tom.

A: When did you meet?

B: \_\_2\_\_

A: \_\_3\_\_

B: We met in Room 304.

A: What did you do at the club?

B: \_\_4\_\_

A: Did you like the club?

B: \_\_5\_\_

A. We learnt some English poems.

B. Which club did you go last week?

C. It's nothing serious.

D. We met on Friday afternoon.

E. Yes, I did. It is very interesting.

F. Where did you meet?

G. I don't think so.

### 【全文翻译】

A: 我们学校有很多俱乐部。你上周去了哪个俱乐部?

B: 我和我的朋友汤姆一起去了英国俱乐部。

A: 你们什么时候聚会的?

B: 我们在星期五下午聚会。

A: 你们在哪里聚会的?

B: 我们在 304 号房间见面了。

A: 你在俱乐部做了什么?

B: 我们学了一些英语诗。

A: 你喜欢这个俱乐部吗?

B: 是的, 我喜欢。它非常有趣。

### 1-5: BDFAE

1. B

【本题解析】根据上文 “There are many clubs in our school. (我们学校有很多俱乐部)” 可知, 学校里有许多俱乐部。根据下文 “I went to the English Club with my friend Tom. (我和我的朋友汤姆去了英语俱乐部。)” 可知, 他们去了英语俱乐部, 故知前面问的是: 你上周去了哪个俱乐部? 综上所述, 该题选择B。

2. D

【本题解析】根据上文 “When did you meet? (你们什么时候聚会的?)” 可知, 问俱乐部聚会的

时间，故知回答的是：我们在星期五下午聚会。综上所述，该题选择D。

3. F

【本题解析】根据下文 “We met in Room 304. (我们在304房间聚会。)” 可知，回答的是俱乐部聚会的地点，故知前面问的是：你们在哪里聚会的？综上所述，该题选择F。

4. A

【本题解析】根据上文 “What did you do at the club? (你们在俱乐部干了什么?)” 可知，问俱乐部里都干什么，故知回答的是：我们学了一些英语诗。综上所述，该题选择A。

5. E

【本题解析】根据上文 “Did you like the club? (你喜欢那个俱乐部吗?)” 可知，问是否喜欢英语俱乐部，故知回答的是：是的，我喜欢。它非常有趣。综上所述，该题选择 E。

## Task 5

Katie: How was the welcome party for foreign students last night?

John: Great! I made some new friends. \_\_1\_\_

Katie: What?

John: I met a Japanese boy called Sato, and as soon as I held out my hand, he bowed.

Katie: That's how people in Japan are expected to greet each other. \_\_2\_\_

John: I didn't know that. \_\_3\_\_

Katie: I remember when I first met Marie last year, I did the same thing. I held out my hand and to my surprise, she kissed me on both sides of my face!

John: \_\_4\_\_

Katie: Very funny.

Katie: Later I found out French people are supposed to kiss when they see each other.

John: \_\_5\_\_

A. It's impolite if you don't bow.

B. But a funny thing happened.

C. I wouldn't mind that!

D. Oh, I see.

E. So I just stood there with my hand out, he bowed.

### 【全文翻译】

凯蒂：昨晚对外国学生举办的欢迎晚会怎么样？

约翰：太好了！我交了一些新朋友。但是有趣的事情发生了。

凯蒂：什么事情？

约翰：我遇到了一个叫佐藤的日本男孩，我一伸出手，他就鞠了一躬。

凯蒂：这就是日本人应该互相问候的方式。不鞠躬是不礼貌的。

约翰：那我并不知道。所以我只是站在那里，伸出手，他鞠了一躬。

凯蒂：我记得去年我第一次见到玛丽的时候，我也做了同样的事情。我伸出手来，令我吃惊的是，她吻了我两边的脸！

约翰：我不介意！

凯蒂：很有趣。

凯蒂：后来我发现法国人见面时应该接吻。

约翰：哦，我明白了。

### 1-5: BAECD

#### 1. B

【本题解析】根据后文Katie的疑问“What? (什么?)”可知，设空句应是讲到了令人感兴趣的话题。选项B “But a funny thing happened. (但是有趣的事情发生了)” 提到的“funny thing”可引起人的兴趣，且“But”与前文构成转折，用在文章使得前后衔接紧密，符合分析。综上所述，该题选择B。

#### 2. A

【本题解析】根据前文 “That’s how people in Japan are expected to greet each other. (这是日本人互相问候的方式。)” 提到了人们在日本应该“入乡随俗”，见面鞠躬，由此可推知，设空句应进一步强调“入乡随俗”的重要性。选项A “It’s impolite if you don’t bow. (不鞠躬是不礼貌的。)” 讲到不这样做就是不礼貌的表现，强调了重要性。综上所述，该题选择A。

#### 3. E

【本题解析】根据前文 “I didn’t know that. (我不知道。)” 可知，John当时并不知道，因此可推知，设空句应讲述当时他在不知道的情况下所作出的行为和对方的行为。选项E “So I just stood there with my hand out, he bowed. (所以我只是站在那里，伸出手，他鞠了一躬。)” 是对当时双方行为的描述，符合分析。综上所述，该题选择E。

#### 4. C

【本题解析】根据前文 “I held out my hand and to my surprise, she kissed me on both sides of my face! (我伸出我的手，令我惊讶的是，她吻了我的脸的两侧!))” 可知，Katie描述了自己第一次见到Marie的“惊讶场面”，由此可推知，John应对此作出评价或反应。选项C “I wouldn’t mind that! (我不介意!))” 可为感受评价的话语，符合分析。综上所述，该题选择C。

#### 5. D

【本题解析】根据前文 “Later I found out French people are supposed to kiss when they see each other. (后来我发现法国人见面时应该亲吻。)” 可知，Katie讲述了法国人见面的打招呼方式，这是一个常识，因此可推知，John对此的回应为“原来如此”。选项D “Oh, I see. (哦，我明白了。)” 符合分析。综上所述，该题选择D。

### Task 6

A: Hi, I’m here for the job interview. My name is David Jones.



B: Hello, Mr. Jones. I'm Bob Anderson. \_\_1\_\_

A: Nice to meet you too, Mr. Anderson.

B: Please have a seat.

A: \_\_2\_\_

B: Ok, let's start. \_\_3\_\_

A: Oh, I think I'm good at communicating with people.

B: Good! \_\_4\_\_

A: I like children. I'm very patient.

B: \_\_5\_\_ Being patient is very important, ok, let's move on to the next question...

A. Great!

B. Thank you.

C. See you later.

D. Nice to meet you.

E. How about children?

F. Why do you want this job?

G. Where did you find this position?

### 【全文翻译】

A: 你好，我是来参加工作面试的。我的名字是大卫·琼斯。

B: 你好，琼斯先生。我是鲍勃·安德森。见到你我很高兴

A: 也很高兴见到你，安德森先生。

B: 请您坐下来。

A: 谢谢你。

B: 好吧，我们开始吧。你为什么想要这份工作？

A: 哦，我觉得我很擅长和人交流。

B: 好的。孩子们呢？

A: 我喜欢孩子。我很有耐心。

B: 很好。有耐心是非常重要的，好吧，让我们继续讨论下一个问题。

### 1-5: DBFEA

1. D

【本题解析】根据下一句答语“Nice to meet you too.(见到你我也很高兴。)”可知，上一句应该是“Nice to meet you.(见到你我很高兴)”。综上所述，该题选择D。

2. B

【本题解析】根据上一句“Please have a seat.(请坐。)”可知，对方应该表示感谢，即“Thank you.(谢谢你。)”合乎语境。综上所述，该题选择B。



3. F

【本题解析】根据下一句 “I think I’m good at communicating with people.(我觉得我很擅长与人交流)” 可知，它可以回答对方的问题 “Why do you want this job?(你为什么想要这份工作?)”。综上所述，该题选择F。

4. E

【本题解析】根据下文 “I like children. I’m very patient.(我喜欢小孩子。我很有耐心。)”可知，它可以回答对方的问题 “How about children?(孩子们呢?)”。综上所述，该题选择E。

5. A

【本题解析】根据空格后 “Being patient is very important, ok, let’s move on to the next question...(耐心很重要，好吧，让我们继续下一个问题。)” 可知，该说话者给了对方很好的评价，即 Great(很好)。综上所述，该题选择 A。

## 第七章 选句填空

## Task 1

Making money isn't just for adults. Kids can do it, too. Making money gives you more than money. 1 By working to make your own money, you'll learn how to succeed in the world. This includes dealing with money, understanding and getting along with other people. 2

Collect soft drink bottles. You can sell the collected bottles and use the money to buy a new basketball. 3

Make greeting cards. If you are good at drawing, try making special cards. You can sell your cards to make money.

4 You may have some books that you have read but you don't want to keep. Then you can sell them to make money.

Win a scholarship (奖学金). If you get good grades at school, you can get some money as prize. 5

- A. Sell old books.
- B. Borrow old books.
- C. It's also a learning process.
- D. However, you are polluting the environment.
- E. It's easy to make money if you try the following ways.
- F. This encourages kids to work harder to get better grades.
- G. At the same time, you are keeping the environment clean.

## 【全文翻译】

赚钱不仅仅是成年人的专利。孩子们也可以做到。赚钱给你的不仅仅是钱。这也是一个学习的过程。通过努力赚钱，您将学习如何在世界上取得成功。这包括处理金钱、理解和与他人相处。如果您尝试以下方式，很容易赚钱。

收集软饮料瓶。你可以卖掉收集到的瓶子，用这笔钱买一个新篮球。同时，您也在保持环境清洁。

制作贺卡。如果您擅长绘画，请尝试制作特殊卡片。你可以卖掉你的卡来赚钱。

卖旧书。你可能有一些读过但不想保留的书。然后你可以卖掉它们来赚钱。

获得奖学金。如果你在学校取得好成绩，你可以得到一些钱作为奖励。这鼓励孩子们更加努力地学习以获得更好的成绩。

## 1-5: CEGAF

1. C

【本题解析】根据上文“Making money gives you more than money.”和下文“By working to

make your own money; you'll learn how to succeed in the world. 可知，挣钱也是一个学习的过程。由此可知，C 项 “It's also a learning process.” 能够承上启下，符合语境。综上所述，该题选择 C。

2. E

【本题解析】根据下文 “Collect soft drink bottles.(收集软饮料瓶)”；“Make greeting cards. (制作贺卡)”；“Win a scholarship. (获得奖学金)” 可知，这里提到的都是赚钱的方法。由此可知，E 项 “It's easy to make money if you try the following ways.” 能够引起下文，符合语境。综上所述，该题选择 E。

3. G

【本题解析】根据上文 “Collect soft drink bottles. You can sell the collected bottles and use the money to buy a new basketball.” 可知，收集塑料饮料瓶其实也是在帮助保护环境，不让塑料制品随意流入到自然环境中。由此可知，G 项 “At the same time, you are keeping the environment clean.” 能够承接上文。综上所述，该题选择 G。

4. A

【本题解析】根据下文 “You may have some books that you have read but you don't want to keep. Then you can sell the to make money.” 可知，卖掉旧书也是一种赚钱的方法。由此可知，A 项 “Sell old books.(卖旧书)” 适合作本文主题句，符合语境。综上所述，该题选择 A。

5. F

【本题解析】根据上文 “Win a scholarship. If you get good grades at school, you can get some money as prize.” 可知，此处表示鼓励孩子们更加努力地工作以获得更好的成绩。由此可知，F 项 “This encourages kids to work harder to get better grades.” 能够承接上文，符合语境。综上所述，该题选择 F。

## Task 2

### Being Responsible Outside of Class

#### Manage your time wisely.

Managing your time will greatly help you become a better and more-productive student. Time-management skills are highly valued by teachers. \_\_1\_\_  
\_\_2\_\_

Every teacher designs tests and exams differently. If your teacher hasn't specified (详细说明) how he or she arranges tests and exams and which materials will be covered, you'll need to ask your teacher outside of class. That way you'll be able to fully prepare for the tests more efficiently (有效率地).

#### Get help if your grades fall behind.

Whether you miss an important class, have trouble with certain concepts, or are dealing with a stressful family emergency, there's a chance that your grades might fall at some point. \_\_3\_\_  
Remember that you don't have to feel dissatisfied with grades if you're actively absorbed in your

studies.

\_\_4\_\_

If you fail to finish your homework, turn in a paper on time, or show up to your task on time, it's no one's fault but your own. \_\_5\_\_ Accepting responsibility is a major mark of maturity (成熟), in part because taking your responsibility can help you stay focused and decide what to do in the future.

- A. Try to stay balanced.
- B. You shouldn't excuse for your fault.
- C. Study for tests and exams ahead of time.
- D. Take responsibility for your words and actions.
- E. If this happens, it's important to get help at once.
- F. You don't have to write out every word your teacher says.
- G. They can help ensure that you prepare well for tests and exams.

### 【全文翻译】

#### 对你的课外负责

**明智地管理你的时间。**

管理你的时间将极大地帮助你成为一个更好、更有效率的学生。时间管理技能受到教师的高度重视。他们可以帮助你为考试做好充分准备。

**提前准备考试。**

每个老师都以不同的方式设计测试和考试。如果你的老师没有详细说明他或她如何安排测试和考试，以及将涵盖哪些材料，你需要在课外询问你的老师。这样，你将能够更有效地为测试有效地做好准备。

**如果你的成绩落后，请寻求帮助。**

无论你是错过了一门重要的课程，对某些概念有疑问，还是正在处理压力大的家庭紧急情况，你的成绩都有可能在某个时候下降。如果发生这种情况，请务必立即寻求帮助。请记住，如果你积极地专注于学习，你不必对成绩感到不满。

**对自己的言行负责。**

如果你没有完成作业，没有按时上交论文，或者没有按时完成任务，这不是别人的错，而是你自己的错。你不应该为你的过错找借口。承担责任是成熟的主要标志，部分原因是承担责任可以帮助你保持专注并决定将来该做什么。

### 1-5: GCEDB

1. G

【本题解析】根据前文“管理好你的时间会极大地帮助你成为一个更好、更有效率的学生。老

师们非常重视时间管理技能”可知，此处说明时间管理技能的重要性。结合选项 G 项“它们可以帮助你为考试做好准备”可知，选项和上文构成因果关系，上下文语意连贯。综上所述，该题选择 G。

## 2. C

【本题解析】设空处概括本段内容，为本段小标题，设空处与上下段的首句句式保持一致，应是祈使句。根据下一段内容可知，如果你的老师没有说明他或她如何安排考试和哪些材料将被涵盖，你需要在课外问你的老师，为考试做准备的具体做法，故设空处应为提前为考试做准备。结合选项 C 项可知，选项可以概括本段并且作本段小标题。综上所述，该题选择 C。

## 3. E

【本题解析】根据上文可知，说明成绩都有可能在某个时候下降的情况，如果你积极投入学习，你不必对成绩感到不满。结合选项 E 项 “If this happens, it’s important to get help at once. 如果发生这种情况，立即寻求帮助是很重要的。”可知，选项和上文内容紧密连接，为对上文内容否认且语意递进，该句中的 this 指的就是上文提到的这种情况，同时引起下文，上下文语意连贯。综上所述，该题选择 E。

## 4. D

【本题解析】由该题为段落小标题可知，为总结该段内容，且需要跟其他小标题保持一致，用动词原形开头。根据下文内容可知，本段讲的是承担自己的责任。综上所述，该题选择 D。

## 5. B

【本题解析】前文 “If you fail to finish your homework, turn in a paper on time, or show up to your task on time, it’s no one’s fault but your own. 如果你没能按时完成作业，交论文，或者按时完成任务，这不是别人的错，而是你自己的错。”可知，此处说明要勇于承担自己的错误。结合选项 B 项可知，选项和上文内容紧密连接，为对上文内容的语意递进，上下文语意连贯。综上所述，该题选择 B。

## Task 3

We have all heard that if you talk to yourself, you are crazy. 1 According to research, talking to yourself in a positive way is actually very healthy for your mind.

My first exposure to positive self-talk was reading *The Little Engine That Could*. Do you remember that book from your childhood? While trying to make it up a big hill, the little engine keeps saying to himself, “I think I can, I think I can.” And of course, he makes it. 2

Positive self-talk is one of the most valuable tools you can use to keep yourself physically and mentally balanced. Many Olympic and professional athletes use it every time they practice or compete.

3 My own personal favorite is “I’m okay”. Back when I was in the movie business, I used to work with the stunt (特技) team. I was told that one of their simple but effective secrets was to stay loose and talk to their body. I had the chance to try it out one day. My apartment was on the second floor of a duplex (复式公寓), and one rainy day I slipped on the top step and started falling

over. Then I just kept telling myself, “I’m okay.” \_\_4\_\_ There were only a few scratches (擦伤) on my legs. I believe that it was the simple positive self-talk that helped keep me from being seriously injured.

Positive self-talk can also help you calm down from anxiety and feel less sad. There was a period of time when I felt upset. Every morning, I woke up and said to myself, “Hi, Barton. You’re going to have a good day today.” \_\_5\_\_ When I did it throughout the day, fewer things would bother me, and I became friendlier to myself.

- A. In fact, that’s not always the case.
- B. Much to my surprise, I was just fine.
- C. It’s a valuable lesson for us to learn and remember.
- D. Instead, there are several different types of self-talk.
- E. You know, I was programming my brain to feel good.
- F. When it comes to positive self-talk, the simpler, the better.
- G. That was an opportunity for me to try something challenging.

### 【全文翻译】

我们都听说过，如果你自言自语，你就疯了。事实上，情况并非总是如此。根据研究，以积极的方式与自己交谈实际上对你的大脑非常健康。

我第一次接触积极的自我对话是阅读《小火车头做到了》。你还记得你小时候的那本书吗？在试图爬上一座大山时，小火车头不停地对自己说：“我想我可以，我想我可以。”当然，他做到了。这对我们来说是一个宝贵的课，值得我们学习和记住。

积极的自我对话是你可以用来保持身心平衡的最有价值的工具之一。许多奥运和职业运动员每次练习或比赛时都会使用它。

说到积极的自我对话，越简单越好。我个人最喜欢的是“我没事”。回到我从事电影行业的时候，我曾经和特技团队合作。有人告诉我，他们简单而有效的秘诀之一就是保持放松，与自己的身体交谈。有一天我有机会尝试一下。我的公寓在复式公寓的二楼，有一天下雨天，我在顶层台阶上滑倒，开始摔倒。然后我就不停地告诉自己，“我没事。”令我惊讶的是，我很好。我的腿上只有几处擦伤。直到今天，我仍然相信，正是这种简单的积极自我对话帮助我避免了严重的伤害。

积极的自我对话也可以帮助你从焦虑中冷静下来，减少悲伤。有一段时间，我感到心烦意乱。每天早上，我醒来都会对自己说：“嗨，巴顿。你今天会过得很愉快。”你知道，我正在对我的大脑进行编程，让我感觉良好。当我一整天都这样做时，困扰我的事情就更少了，我对自己变得更友好了。

### 1-5: ACFBE

1. A

【本题解析】前文提到“我们都听说过，如果你自言自语，你就疯了。”及空后“According to research, talking to yourself in appositive way is actually very healthy you're your mind. 根据研究，以积极的方式自言自语实际上对你的大脑非常健康”可知，说明以健康的方式进行自言自语是对自身有帮助的，由此判断该空所填内容与前一句构成转折关系，A 符合文意，与上文构成转折关系。综上所述，该题选择 A。

2. C

【本题解析】根据本段中作者讲述的《勇敢的小火车头》这本书的内容可知，小火车头通过自我鼓励成功爬上了大山，这使作者颇受启发。因此，作者认为这是值得我们学习和记住的宝贵经验。C 项总结了该段内容，符合文意。综上所述，该题选择 C。

3. F

【本题解析】根据空后“My own personal favorite is I'm okay.”可知，作者认为人们在进行积极的自我对话时，表达越简单越好。F 项“When it comes to positive self-talk, the simpler, the better.”提到积极的自我对话就是越简单越好，与作者提到的自我对话“我很好”相符，F 项符合文意。综上所述，该题选择 F。

4. B

【本题解析】根据空后“There were only a few scratches on my legs. I believe to this day that it was the simple positive self-talk that helped keep me from being seriously injured.”可知，作者简单的积极自我对话让自己避免了更严重的伤害。B 项符合文意，起到承上启下的作用。综上所述，该题选择 B。

5. E

【本题解析】由空前一句可知，作者之所以这么做，是在潜意识地让自己变得积极起来，其实是在向大脑发出指令要让自己感觉很棒。E 项“You know, I was programming my brain to feel good.”提到了作者让自己的大脑习惯积极的做法。符合文意。综上所述，该题选择 E。

## Task 4

There are plenty of ways that you can practice English all by yourself!

Speak in front of a mirror. 1 Pronouncing words correctly has a lot to do with getting your mouth in the right shape. By speaking in front of a mirror, you can see what your mouth and face are doing and correct what's wrong.

2 This gives you a chance to practice reading and speaking. There are plenty of words in English that are spelled differently than they sound. Reading aloud is a different kind of speaking practice. It can help you better understand how words are written in English.

Describe your actions. Say what you're doing or thinking aloud in English. As you go about your day, imagine you're a character in a book. 3 Don't worry about getting everything exactly correct grammatically—just work on expressing yourself and describing actions. For example, you might say, “I'm getting ready to go to work. I see clouds in the sky. 4 I'm looking forward to playing soccer later.”



Record yourself speaking and play it back. Read a passage in a book aloud, then listen to yourself speaking. 5 Most smartphones have recording apps. It can be awkward to listen to your recorded voice, but it'll help you recognize problems with your pronunciation.

- A. Read aloud to yourself.
- B. I hope that it won't rain today.
- C. Any kind of voice recorder will work for this.
- D. Then tell your "reader" about your every movement.
- E. When you get one sentence right, move on to the next.
- F. Watch the shape of your mouth and your facial expressions.
- G. It can take you some time to get through even the shortest video like this.

### 【全文翻译】

有很多方法可以自己练习英语!

在镜子前说话。注意你的嘴巴形状和面部表情。正确发音与使嘴巴形状正确有很大关系。通过在镜子前说话，你可以看到你的嘴巴和脸在做什么，并纠正错误。

大声朗读给自己听。这让你有机会练习阅读和口语。英语中有很多单词的拼写与发音不同。大声朗读是一种不同的口语练习。它可以帮助你更好地理解单词在英语中的书写方式。

描述你的行为。用英语大声说出你在做什么或想什么。当你度过你的一天时，想象你是一本书中的一个角色。然后告诉你的“读者”你的一举一动。不要担心在语法上完全正确——只需努力表达自己和描述动作即可。例如，你可能会说：“我正准备去上班。我看到天空中的云彩。我希望今天不会下雨。我期待着以后踢足球。”

录制自己的讲话并回放。大声朗读书中的一段话，然后听自己说话。任何类型的录音机都可以用于此。大多数智能手机都有录音应用程序。听你录制的声音可能会很尴尬，但它会帮助你识别你的发音问题。

### 1-5: FADBC

#### 1. F

【本题解析】小题前文“Speak in front of a mirror. 对着镜子说话”建议对镜练习说英语，后文“Pronouncing words correctly has...what's wrong”解释发音与嘴型的关系，以及这样练习的好处，因此空处可能会提醒注意镜子中自己的嘴型和脸。F项“Watch the shape of your mouth and your facial expressions. 注意你的嘴型和面部表情”符合语境。承前启后，其中的 mouth 和后文的 mouth 是同词复现，facial 和后文的 face 呼应。综上所述，该题选择 F。

#### 2. A

【本题解析】空处位于段首，是段落主旨句，需统领段落内容，且需和其他段落首句同样使用祈使句的形式。根据后文“This gives you a chance to practice reading and speaking.”和“Reading aloud is a different kind of speaking practice.”可知，本段的建议与朗读有关。综上所述，



该题选择 A。

3. D

【本题解析】前文 “Describe your actions. Say what you’re doing or thinking aloud in English. As you go about your day, imagine you’re a character in a book.” 建议用英语描述一天的行动，想象自己是书中人物，因此空处会和人物的做法有关。D 项 “Then tell your ‘Reader’ about your every movement” 符合语境，承接前文，其中的 reader 和前文的 character 呼应。综上所述，该题选择 D。

4. B

【本题解析】前文 “I’m getting ready to go to work. I see clouds in the sky.” 描述观察到的天气；后文 “I’m looking forward to playing soccer later.” 介绍踢足球的计划，因此空处会表达期待好天气。B 项 “hope that it won’t rain today. 我希望今天不要下雨” 符合语境，承前启后，其中的 rain 和前文的 clouds 呼应。综上所述，该题选择 B。

5. C

【本题解析】前文 “Read a passage in a book aloud, then listen to yourself speaking.” 建议回听自己的朗读；后文 “Most smartphones have recording apps.” 提到录音应用软件，因此空处和录音工具有关。C 项符合语境。其中的 this 指前文的 listen to yourself speaking; recorder 和后文的 recording 呼应。综上所述，该题选择 C。

## Task 5

When we say “break a leg”, we don’t actually want people to break their legs. So, why do we say this interesting phrase in the first place? Have you ever stopped to think about the common phrases we use in everyday conversation? People say things like “knock on wood” and “spill the beans” all the time, along with another common idiom “break a leg”.   1   Read on to get the fascinating details.

### Its meaning

  2   It’s typically said to actors before they go on stage for a performance, particularly on opening night. It’s not limited to performers, though.   3  

Here are some examples of how to use it in a sentence:

a) “I can’t wait to see you perform tonight—break a leg!”

b) “I hear you have a big presentation at work tomorrow—break a leg.”

### Its origin

  4   Performers believed saying “good luck” would actually bring bad luck on stage, so they’d tell one another to “break a leg” instead.   5   Instead of breaking a leg, the performer would put on a perfect performance. It’s believed to have originated in the American theatre scene in the early 20th century. Some believe it was adapted from the German saying “Hals-und Beinbruch,” which means “neck and leg break”. That phrase may also come from the Hebrew blessing “Hatzlakha U-brakha”, which means “success and blessing”.

Now you know the interesting history behind this common idiom. If you're explaining it to someone else, break a leg!

- A. You can say this phrase to anyone.
- B. That way, the opposite would happen.
- C. Have you ever said "break a leg" before?
- D. The phrase means that someone needs help.
- E. "Break a leg" is a phrase that means "good luck".
- F. The phrase is believed to be rooted in the theatre community.
- G. Why exactly do we say it and where did the phrase even come from?

### 【全文翻译】

当我们说“打断一条腿”时，我们实际上并不希望人们打断他们的腿。那么，为什么我们首先要说这个有趣的短语呢？你有没有停下来想想我们在日常对话中使用的常用短语？人们总是说“敲木头”和“洒豆子”之类的话，还有另一个常见的成语“打断一条腿”。我们究竟为什么这么说，这句话是从哪里来的？请继续阅读，了解引人入胜的细节。

### 它的含义

“打断一条腿”是一个短语，意思是“祝你好运”。这通常是在演员上台表演之前对他们说的，尤其是在开幕之夜。不过，这并不局限于表演者。你可以对任何人说这句话。

以下是如何在句子中使用它的一些示例：

“我迫不及待地想看你今晚的表演——打断一条腿！”

“我听说你明天上班要做一个大演讲——打断一条腿。”

### 它的起源

人们认为这句话起源于戏剧界。表演者认为说“好运”实际上会给舞台上带来厄运，所以他们会告诉对方“打断一条腿”。这样，情况就会相反。表演者不会摔断腿，而是会上演完美的表演。它被认为起源于 20 世纪初的美国戏剧界。一些人认为它改编自德国谚语“Hals-und Beinbruch”，意思是“脖子和腿断”。这句话也可能来自希伯来语祝福“Hatzlakha U-brakha”，意思是“成功和祝福”。

现在你知道这个常见成语背后的有趣历史了。如果你要向别人解释，就“打断一条腿”！

### 1-5: GEAFB

#### 1. G

【本题解析】根据后文“Read on to get the fascinating details (请继续阅读，了解精彩的细节)”可知，设空处提出疑问，由后文来解答。G 项“Why exactly do we say it and where did the phrase even come from”符合语意和文章结构。综上所述，该题选择 G。

#### 2. E

【本题解析】E 项“Break a leg” is a phrase that means “good luck” 中的 means 与段落小标题 Its

meaning 中的 meaning 呼应。综上所述，该题选择 E。

3. A

【本题解析】根据前文 “It’s not limited to performers, though.” 可知，A 项 “你可以对任何人说这个习语” 在语意上承接上文。综上所述，该题选择 A。

4. F

【本题解析】根据段落小标题 “Its origin” 可知，本段讲述这一习语的起源，F 项 The phrase is believed to be rooted in the theatre community. 中的 be rooted in 表示 “根植于，起源于”，与小标题呼应。综上所述，该题选择 F。

5. B

【本题解析】根据后文 “Instead of breaking a leg, the performer would put on a perfect performance.” 可知，这一习语表达的是反语，B 项中 opposite 与 Instead of 对应。综上所述，该题选择 B。

## Task 6

It is never too late to develop great study habits. However, starting making some changes is hard. Even if you want to do well enough in school and improve your grades, you’re probably having trouble getting started in the first place! \_\_1\_\_

Plan your time carefully. Make a list of your weekly tasks. Make a schedule of your time. Then decide on good, regular time for studying. \_\_2\_\_ But it will make you more aware of how you spend your time.

Find a good place to study. Choose one place for your study area. It may be a desk or a chair at home or in the school library, but it should be comfortable and quiet. When you begin to work, you should be able to concentrate on the subject.

Skim before you read. \_\_3\_\_ As you preview the material, you get some idea of the passage and how it is organized.

\_\_4\_\_ Listening to what the teacher says in class means less work later. Taking notes helps you remember what the teacher says.

Develop a good attitude to tests. The purpose of a test is to show what you have learned about a subject. \_\_5\_\_ Tests provide grades, but they also let you know that you need to spend more time studying.

There are other skills that might help you with your study. Share with your classmates some of the skills you have found to be helpful.

A. Study regularly.

B. Make good use of your time in class.

C. There are several ways that can help you.

D. Develop a positive attitude by setting realistic goals.

- E. This weekly schedule may not solve all of your problems.
- F. The world won't end if you don't pass a test, so don't worry too much about a test.
- G. This means looking over a passage quickly before you begin to read it more carefully.

### 【全文翻译】

养成良好的学习习惯永远不会太晚。但是，开始进行一些更改是很困难的。即使你想在学校做得足够好并提高你的成绩，你也可能一开始就遇到困难！有几种方法可以帮助你。

仔细计划你的时间。列出你的每周任务。制定你的时间安排。然后决定一个好的、有规律的学习时间。这个每周的时间表可能无法解决你所有的问题，但它会让你更加了解你是如何度过你的时间的。

找个好地方学习。为您的学习区域选择一个地方。它可能是家里或学校图书馆里的一张桌子或一把椅子，但它应该舒适和安静。当你开始工作时，你应该能够专注于这个主题。

阅读前先略读。这意味着在你开始更仔细地阅读之前，快速浏览这篇文章。当你预览材料时，你会对这篇文章及其组织方式有所了解。

好好利用课堂上的时间。听老师在课堂上说的话意味着以后的工作量更少。做笔记可以帮助你记住老师说的话。

培养良好的考试态度。测试的目的是展示您对某个主题的了解。如果你没有通过考试，世界不会结束，所以不要太担心考试。考试提供成绩，但它们也让你知道你需要花更多的时间学习。

还有其他技能可能会对您的学习有所帮助。与你的同学分享一些你认为有帮助的技能吧。

### 1-5: CEGBF

#### 1. C

【本题解析】根据前文可知，想要提高成绩是困难的，后文各段首句给出了具体方法让你形成良好的学习习惯，第一空承上启下，只要通过正确方法养成良好习惯，就能提高成绩，即以下是具体方法。C项“有几种方法可以帮助你”符合句意。综上所述，该题选择C。

#### 2. E

【本题解析】根据上文“Make a list of your weekly tasks. (把你每周的任务列出来)”，后文“but it will make you more aware of how you spend your time. (但它会让你更清楚地意识到自己是如何利用时间的)”讲这样做的好处，可知空白处要承接上文又要与后文是转折关系，所以应该填的是周计划存在的缺点，E项符合句意。综上所述，该题选择E。

#### 3. G

【本题解析】G项“这意味着在你开始更仔细地阅读一篇文章之前，要快速地看一遍”承接上文“Skim before you read. (阅读前略读)”讲如何进行阅读前略读的方法。综上所述，该题选择G。

#### 4. B

【本题解析】根据后文“Listening to what the teacher says in class means less work later. (在课堂上

上听老师讲课意味着以后少做功课)”可知本段说明利用好课堂时间的重要性。根据其他段落首句特征可知，此处用祈使句，B 项符合句意。综上所述，该题选择 B。

5. F

【本题解析】根据上文 “Develop a good attitude to tests. (培养对考试的良好态度)” 以及上文 “The purpose of a test is to show what you have learned about a subject. (考试的目的是显示你对某门学科的学习情况)”，可知空白处说明对考试应有的正确态度，即不要太担心考试。F 项符合句意。综上所述，该题选择 F。

## 第八章 选词填空

## Task 1

Many people are fond of Chinese cuisine (烹饪). In China, cooking is \_\_1\_\_ not only as a piece of craftsmanship, but also as a work of art. Chinese cuisine \_\_2\_\_ well is both tasty and good-looking. The cooking skills and dish ingredients (原料) vary greatly in different regions of China, \_\_3\_\_ good Chinese cuisine always shares something in common, that is, the color, smell, taste and nutrition. As food is vital for one's health, a chef, \_\_4\_\_ has a gift for cooking, is always trying to make a balance among grains, meats and vegetables. That's why Chinese cuisine is tasty and healthy.

The art of Chinese cooking extends far beyond the simple need to \_\_5\_\_ people's stomach. Careful \_\_6\_\_ is given to the appearance and smell of a dish as well as its flavor. The color of a dish has to be \_\_7\_\_ pleasing, and the balance of colors is kept \_\_8\_\_ mind during its preparation.

The Chinese cuisine is based on five basic tastes. They are sour, sweet, bitter, hot and salty. The cooking should avoid all \_\_9\_\_ smells, as well as those strong ones which might overrule the rest. Chinese cooking art basically \_\_10\_\_ four aspects: the selection of ingredients, cutting and decoration, heat control, and cooking techniques.

- |                  |             |             |               |
|------------------|-------------|-------------|---------------|
| A. unpleasant    | B. and      | C. regarded | D. visually   |
| E. as            | F. prepared | G. recent   | H. reflection |
| I. consideration | J. who      | K. but      | L. in         |
| M. includes      | N. satisfy  | O. down     |               |

## 【全文翻译】

许多人喜欢中国菜。在中国，烹饪不仅被视为一种工艺，而且被视为一种艺术作品。中国菜做得好，既好吃又好看。中国不同地区的烹饪技巧和食材差异很大，但好的中国菜总是有一些共同点，即色、香、味和营养。由于食物对人的健康至关重要，一个有烹饪天赋的厨师总是试图在谷物、肉类和蔬菜之间取得平衡。这就是中国菜美味又健康的原因。

中国烹饪的艺术远远超出了满足人们胃的简单需求。细心的考虑一道菜的外观和气味以及它的味道。一道菜的颜色必须让人赏心悦目，在制作过程中要注意颜色的平衡。

中国菜以五种基本口味为基础。它们有酸、甜、苦、辣和咸。烹饪时应避免所有难闻的气味，以及那些可能会压倒其他气味的强烈气味。中国烹饪艺术基本上包括四个方面：食材的选择、切割和装饰、热量的控制和烹饪技术。

## 1-5: CFKJN

## 1. C

【本题解析】本题考查**时态语态**。句意：在中国，烹饪不仅被视为一种技艺，而且被视为一

种艺术。表示“被认为”，所以用被动语态，描述现状，所以用一般现在时态，注意为动词过去分词。综上所述，该题选择 C。

2. F

【本题解析】本题考查**过去分词**。句意：准备好的中国菜既好吃又好看。prepare 和它所修饰的词之间是被动关系，所以用过去分词作后置定语。综上所述，该题选择 F。

3. K

【本题解析】本题考查**连词**。句意：在中国不同的地区，烹饪技巧和食材有很大的不同，然而，好的中国菜总是有一些共同点。前后是转折关系，前面为逗号，所以用连词 but 连接。综上所述，该题选择 K。

4. J

【本题解析】本题考查**非限制性定语从句**。句意：由于食物对人的健康至关重要，厨师有烹饪的天赋，所以他总是试图在谷物、肉类和蔬菜之间取得平衡。先行词为人，在非限制性定语从句中作主语。综上所述，该题选择 J。

5. N

【本题解析】本题考查**不定式**。句意：中国烹饪的艺术远远超出了满足人们胃的简单需要。need 后跟不定式作后置定语。综上所述，该题选择 N。

#### 6-10: IDLAM

6. I

【本题解析】本题考查**名词的数**。句意：一道菜的外观、气味和味道都要仔细考虑。作主语，所以用名词，表示抽象概念，为不可数名词。综上所述，该题选择 I。

7. D

【本题解析】本题考查**副词**。句意：一道菜的颜色必须在视觉上令人愉悦，在烹调过程中要注意颜色的平衡。修饰形容词，所以用副词。综上所述，该题选择 D。

8. L

【本题解析】本题考查**固定搭配**。句意：一道菜的颜色必须在视觉上令人愉悦，在烹调过程中要注意颜色的平衡。keep sth. in mind 牢记，为固定搭配。综上所述，该题选择 L。

9. A

【本题解析】本题考查**形容词**。句意：烹饪时应避免所有令人不快的气味，以及那些可能会压倒其他气味的强烈气味。作定语修饰名词，所以用形容词，表示“令人不愉悦的”。综上所述，该题选择 A。

10. M

【本题解析】本题考查**主谓一致**。句意：中国烹饪艺术基本上包括四个方面：选料、切花装饰、控温和烹饪技巧。主语为不可数名词，所以谓语用第三人称单数形式。综上所述，该题选择 M。



## Task 2

How did you feel on the last day of the term? Perhaps you were excited for an upcoming holiday, or \_\_1\_\_ because morning lie-ins were now possible. Whatever you felt, you probably weren't bored. As the weeks roll on, though, boredom has a way of catching you up. As \_\_2\_\_ as this might feel, it can actually be good for you to be bored.

What happens when you are bored?

When you feel bored, your brain is \_\_3\_\_ struggling to find something to activate its nerves. If it can't find \_\_4\_\_, for example, by watching television, your mind will look inwards. That's when you daydream or you find your mind "\_\_\_5\_\_\_". Scientists have found that daydreaming gives your brain the space to solve problems. It can also stir imagination, ideas and creativity.

Is boredom good for you?

Sandi Mann, who wrote a book called *The Science of Boredom*, believes that everyone should accept boredom \_\_6\_\_. According to her research, "People who are bored are more creative." Mann also says that accepting boredom means you're less likely to become bored, "because the more new and exciting things we experience, the more we want, so we become less accepting of the boring \_\_\_7\_\_\_."

What if boredom makes you restless?

Learning how to accept and \_\_8\_\_ to boredom is important. Many people find boredom to be an uncomfortable feeling. That's OK—with \_\_9\_\_, you can learn to "sit with" that feeling and to use it to find fun and meaningful activities to do. There's also a difference between feeling bored from time to time and feeling indifferent or uninterested in things over a long period. If that happens, talk to a \_\_10\_\_ adult who will be able to help you.

- |             |                |            |              |
|-------------|----------------|------------|--------------|
| A. staff    | B. frustrating | C. stuff   | D. wandering |
| E. grateful | F. scared      | G. readily | H. reality   |
| I. clarify  | J. stimulation | K. trusted | L. practice  |
| M. respond  | N. simply      | O. salary  |              |

## 【全文翻译】

这学期的最后一天你感觉如何？也许你对即将到来的假期感到兴奋，或者感激，因为现在早上可以睡懒觉了。不管你感觉如何，你可能并不觉得无聊。然而，随着时间的流逝，无聊总有办法追上你。尽管这可能会让你感到沮丧，但无聊实际上对你有好处。

当你无聊的时候会发生什么？

当你感到无聊时，你的大脑会很容易地努力寻找一些东西来激活它的神经。如果它找不到刺激，比如看电视，你的大脑就会向内看。这时你会做白日梦，或者你会发现自己的思想在“游荡”。科学家发现，做白日梦能给大脑解决问题的空间。它还可以激发想象力、想法和创造力。



无聊对你有好处吗？

桑迪·曼恩写了一本名为《无聊的科学》的书，他认为每个人都应该简单地接受无聊。根据她的研究，“无聊的人更有创造力。”曼恩还表示，接受无聊意味着你不太可能感到无聊，“因为我们经历的新鲜和令人兴奋的事情越多，我们就越想要，所以我们就越不容易接受无聊的事情。”

如果无聊让你焦躁不安怎么办？

学习如何接受和应对无聊是很重要的。许多人觉得无聊是一种不舒服的感觉。没关系，多加练习，你可以学会“坐着”那种感觉，并利用它来寻找有趣和有意义的活动。偶尔感到无聊和长期感到冷漠或不感兴趣也是有区别的。如果发生这种情况，找一个值得信赖的成年人谈谈，他会帮助你的。

### 1-5: EBGJD

#### 1. E

【本题解析】本题考查**形容词**。句意：也许你会因为即将到来的假期感到兴奋，或者因为早上睡懒觉变得可能了而感激。分析句子可知，空格处为形容词，和前面的 excited 并列做表语，grateful “感激的”为形容词，符合句意。综上所述，该题选择 E。

#### 2. B

【本题解析】本题考查**形容词**。句意：虽然这感觉有点让人沮丧，但无聊对你来说还是有好处的。分析句子可知，空格处为 feel 后面的表语，修饰主语 this 所指代的前面的句子 “As the weeks roll on, though, boredom has a way of catching you up”, frustrating “令人沮丧的”为形容词，符合句意。综上所述，该题选择 B。

#### 3. G

【本题解析】本题考查**副词**。句意：当你感到无聊的时候，你的大脑乐意去努力寻找某种东西来激活它的神经。分析句子可知，空格处为副词，修饰动词 struggling, readily “乐意地，欣然地”为副词，符合句意。综上所述，该题选择 G。

#### 4. J

【本题解析】本题考查**名词**。句意：如果它不能找到刺激，比如，通过看电视，你的思想就会内视。分析句子可知，空格处为及物动词 find 的宾语，所以应该是名词，根据上文 “struggling to find something to activate its nerves” 可知，stimulation “刺激，启发”为名词，符合句意。综上所述，该题选择 J。

#### 5. D

【本题解析】本题考查**非谓语动词**。句意：那就是当你做白日梦或者你发现你的大脑“游荡”的时候。分析句子可知，空格处为及物动词 find 的宾补成分，对宾语 your mind 进行补充说明，表示正在进行的动作，wandering “游荡；漫游；漫步”为动词的现在分词形式，可以表示动作正在进行，符合句意。综上所述，该题选择 D。

### 6-10: NCMLK

6. N

【本题解析】本题考查**副词**。句意：Sandi Mann 写了一本书叫做《无聊的科学》他认为每个人都确实应该接受无聊。分析句子可知，空格处为副词，修饰动词 accept, simply “确实” 为副词，符合句意。综上所述，该题选择 N。

7. C

【本题解析】本题考查**名词**。句意：因为我们经历的新鲜刺激的事情越多，我们想要的就越多，所以我们越不能接受无聊的东西。分析句子可知，空格处为名词，被前面的形容词 boring 修饰，stuff “东西” 为名词，符合句意。综上所述，该题选择 C。

8. M

【本题解析】本题考查**动词**。句意：学习如何接受并回应无聊是很重要的。分析句子可知，空格处为动词，和前面的动词 accept 并列，respond “做出回应” 为动词，符合句意。综上所述，该题选择 M。

9. L

【本题解析】本题考查**名词**。句意：那没关系——多加练习，你可以学会与那种感觉“坐在一起”，并利用它找到乐趣和有意义的活动来做。分析句子可知，空格处为介词 with 后面的宾语，所以填名词，practice “练习” 为名词，符合句意。综上所述，该题选择 L。

10. K

【本题解析】本题考查**形容词**。句意：如果这发生了，和一个能够帮助你的可信赖的成年人说说。分析句子可知，空格处为形容词，做定语，修饰后面的名词 adult, trusted “可信赖的” 为形容词，符合句意。综上所述，该题选择 K。

### Task 3

There are many benefits of singing in a choir. They range from the social, having the opportunity to \_\_1\_\_ new friends, to the physical benefits of learning to breathe \_\_2\_\_. Research has also shown that young people \_\_3\_\_ sing in choirs do better in their studies and have \_\_4\_\_ tendency to be healthier.

But the first question you should ask \_\_5\_\_ if you are considering joining a choir is “can you sing in tune?” It might seem obvious, but unless you can, there is little point in \_\_6\_\_ out a choir because you’ll only get rejected. Every choir you apply to join is going to interview you. Don’t worry if you can not read music; that can be taught later.

If you are \_\_7\_\_, you’ll find choir practices to be hard work, but great fun, because they’re social events as much \_\_8\_\_ music training. You will \_\_9\_\_ to read music and how to sing with confidence. Your voice and technique will develop, probably quite quickly with proper \_\_10\_\_, and you may just end up wondering why you didn’t do this years ago.

A. disapproved

B. make

C. nation

D. accepted

E. a

F. properly

G. yourself

H. the

I. who

J. learn

K. what

L. instruction

M. category

N. as

O. seeking

## 【全文翻译】

在合唱团唱歌有很多好处。它们的范围从社交，有机会结交新朋友，到学习正确呼吸的身体益处。研究还表明，参加合唱团的年轻人在学习上表现更好，而且往往更健康。

但如果你考虑加入合唱团，你应该问自己的第一个问题是“你能唱歌合拍吗？”这似乎是显而易见的，但除非你能做到，否则找合唱团没有什么意义，因为你只会被拒绝。你申请的每个合唱团都会面试你。如果你看不懂音乐，不要担心；这可以以后再教。

如果你被录取了，你会发现合唱团的练习很辛苦，但很有趣，因为它们和音乐训练一样是社交活动。你将学会读谱和如何自信地唱歌。在适当的指导下，你的声音和技巧可能会很快得到发展，你可能会想知道为什么你几年前没有这样做。

## 1-5: BFIEG

1. B

【本题解析】本题考查**非谓语作定语**。主干 They range from...to...他们包含了……，空格作有机会的定语。综上所述，该题选择 B。

2. F

【本题解析】本题考查**副词**。properly 合适地，修饰 breathe，作 breathe 的状语，句意：学会正确呼吸。综上所述，该题选择 F。

3. I

【本题解析】本题考查**定语从句**。主干 Research has also shown that, that 引导宾语从句，该从句中主干 young people do better in...这里 sing 作从句谓语，从句缺主语，先行词指人，用 who。综上所述，该题选择 I。

4. E

【本题解析】本题考查**冠词**。空格后 tendency 趋势，可数名词。可数名词要有限定词，这里第一次提到，不用指定，所以填冠词 a。综上所述，该题选择 E。

5. G

【本题解析】本题考查**反身代词**。主语是 you，谓语 should ask，主语宾语同一个人，用反身代词。整篇文章是在对读者说的，也就是“你”，反身代词用单数。综上所述，该题选择 G。

## 6-10: ODNJL

6. O

【本题解析】本题考查**介词**。空格前介词，介词后跟动名词。句意：这似乎很明显，但除非你能，否则找一个唱诗班没什么意义。综上所述，该题选择 O。

7. D

【本题解析】本题考查**时态和语态**。空格作谓语，后面 you will 提示可知这里空格用一般现在

时，结合所给词 accept 接受，根据上一段 Every choir you apply to join is going to interview you. Don't worry if you can not read music; that can be taught later. 你申请加入的每一个合唱团都会面试你。如果你看不懂音乐，别担心，以后可以教。综上所述，该题选择 D。

8. N

【本题解析】本题考查**同级比较**。没有提示词，通常填虚词。结合句意：社交活动和音乐练习是一样多的。as much as 和……一样多。综上所述，该题选择 N。

9. J

【本题解析】本题考查**动词**。根据前文 if you are accepted...如果你被接受，接着阐述后面带来的好处，这里句意：你将学懂音乐，学会自信地唱歌。再因横线前是 will，情态动词，其后跟动词原形，learn 符合句意。综上所述，该题选择 J。

10. L

【本题解析】本题考查**名词**。空格前 proper 正确的……，说明此处填名词。结合句意：通过适当的指导，你的声音和技术可能会很快发展。综上所述，该题选择 L。

#### Task 4

China has once again showed its ability to change the world with its “four great new \_\_1\_\_”—high-speed rail, electronic payment, shared bicycle, and online shopping.

China's new-generation high-speed train, the Fuxing Hao, is now one of the \_\_2\_\_ trains in the world, which can travel at a speed of 350 km/h. Besides high-speed rail, China has \_\_3\_\_ people's lives in many other innovative ways over the last decade.

Bike sharing, for example, is not new itself. But China has made \_\_4\_\_ much more convenient and popular both in China \_\_5\_\_ overseas. The leading Chinese bike-sharing companies Mobike and Ofo are now operating in foreign countries such as Singapore and Britain.

And back in China, when riding a shared bike, you can stop to \_\_6\_\_ and eat whatever you want \_\_7\_\_ with a tap on your phone. You could easily pay with your smartphone by \_\_8\_\_ the seller's QR code. Cashless payment has grown into a \_\_9\_\_ for Chinese people—even a pancake seller is using Alipay.

As for Alipay, it was designed to serve the online shopping at first, \_\_10\_\_ is now the most ways to make purchases in China. You can buy anything you need without leaving your homes.

- |               |             |            |           |
|---------------|-------------|------------|-----------|
| A. inventions | B. negative | C. it      | D. choose |
| E. social     | F. improved | G. fastest | H. buy    |
| I. and        | J. which    | K. choice  | L. one    |
| M. scanning   | N. simply   | O. why     |           |

#### 【全文翻译】

中国凭借其“新四大发明”——高铁、电子支付、共享单车和网上购物，再次展示了其

改变世界的能力。

中国新一代高速列车“复兴号”现在是世界上最快的列车之一，时速可达 350 公里/小时。除了高铁，中国在过去十年里还以许多其他创新的方式改善了人们的生活。

例如，共享单车本身并不新鲜。但中国已经使它在中国和海外变得更加方便和流行。中国领先的共享单车公司摩拜单车和 Ofo 目前在新加坡和英国等海外国家开展业务。

而在中国，当你骑着共享单车时，只要轻按一下手机，你就可以停下来买东西、吃东西。你可以用智能手机扫描卖家的二维码轻松付款。无现金支付已经成为中国人的一种选择——就连卖煎饼的人也在使用支付宝。

至于支付宝，它最初是为网上购物而设计的，现在网上购物是中国最常见的购物方式。你不出家门就能买到任何你需要的东西。

### 1-5: AGFCI

1. A

【本题解析】本题考查**名词**。前面有 four great new 修饰，应用名词的复数形式。综上所述，该题选择 A。

2. G

【本题解析】本题考查**形容词的最高级**。根据后面的比较范围 in the world 可知，这里应用最高级形式。综上所述，该题选择 G。

3. F

【本题解析】本题考查**动词的时态和主谓一致**。over the last decade 表示“在过去十年”，常和现在完成时连用；又因主语是 China，故用 has improved。综上所述，该题选择 F。

4. C

【本题解析】本题考查**代词**。这里 it 指代前面的 Bike sharing，充当动词 made 的宾语。综上所述，该题选择 C。

5. I

【本题解析】本题考查**连词**。both...and...为固定搭配，表示“两者都……”。综上所述，该题选择 I。

### 6-10: HNMKJ

6. H

【本题解析】本题考查**非谓语动词**。stop to do sth. 表示“停下来去做另一件事”，这里表示停下共享单车去买东西吃，故用不定式充当宾语。stop doing sth. 表示“停止做某事”。综上所述，该题选择 H。

7. N

【本题解析】本题考查**副词**。分析句子结构可知，空处修饰 with 介词短语，故用所给词的副词形式。综上所述，该题选择 N。

8. M

【本题解析】本题考查**非谓语动词**。空处作介词 by 的宾语，故用动名词形式。综上所述，该题选择 M。

9. K

【本题解析】本题考查**名词**。冠词 a 后面应用所给动词的名词形式。综上所述，该题选择 K。

10. J

【本题解析】本题考查**定语从句**。空处引导非限制性定语从句，且在从句中作主语，修饰先行词 online shopping。综上所述，该题选择 J。

## Task 5

The Budj Bim Cultural Landscape has long been regarded as a wonder of ancient engineering. The water system in Australia was \_\_1\_\_ more than 6,000 years ago—long before even the Egyptian pyramids took shape.

Ancient inhabitants of the region made the system of channels and dams as an \_\_2\_\_ complex trap for the eels (鳗鱼) that locals depended on for food. Budj Bim was recognized as \_\_3\_\_ World Heritage site today, but few suspected the system ran so far and so deep. In fact, it took a disaster for Budj Bim to \_\_4\_\_ itself in all its former glory. Bushfires, \_\_5\_\_ by record temperatures and lasting drought, have burned away the thick leaves covering the water system, \_\_6\_\_ the full scale of Budj Bim to emerge from the flames.

The Egyptian pyramids were made with materials that were plentiful nearby, and \_\_7\_\_ was Budj Bim. It was made with the area's most ready resource: volcanic rock. That building block came from the lava of a now-inactive volcano, \_\_8\_\_ the ancient people used to redirect waters from Lake Condah—waters heavy with eels.

Now the Aboriginals still call parts of the area home, and their population has \_\_9\_\_ dramatically since Europeans arrived on the continent. But their \_\_10\_\_ stand the test of time—even if it took a tragedy to reveal them. It's an important acknowledgement of the work their ancestors have done.

- |                    |             |             |             |
|--------------------|-------------|-------------|-------------|
| A. extraordinarily | B. which    | C. reveal   | D. a        |
| E. sparked         | F. tendency | G. so       | H. fix      |
| I. enhanced        | J. built    | K. name     | L. allowing |
| M. achievements    | N. process  | O. declined |             |

### 【全文翻译】

布吉比姆文化景观一直被认为是古代工程的奇迹。澳大利亚的水系建于 6000 多年前，甚至比埃及金字塔还早。

该地区的古代居民建造了沟渠和水坝系统，作为一个极其复杂的陷阱，用来捕捉当地人赖以生存的鳗鱼。如今，布吉比姆被认定为世界遗产，但很少有人怀疑这个体系运行得如此



之远、如此之深。事实上，Budj Bim 在经历了一场灾难之后，才恢复了昔日的辉煌。创纪录的气温和持续的干旱引发了森林大火，烧毁了覆盖在水系上的厚厚的树叶，使布吉比姆的整个规模从火焰中显现出来。

埃及金字塔是用附近丰富的材料建造的，布吉比姆也是如此。它是用该地区最现成的资源——火山岩制成的。那块建筑来自一座现在不活跃的火山的熔岩，古人曾用它来重新引导康达湖的水——那里有大量的鳗鱼。

现在，土著居民仍然把这一地区的部分地区称为家园，自欧洲人到达这片大陆以来，他们的人口急剧减少。但他们的成就经受住了时间的考验——即使是在一场悲剧中才显露出来。这是对他们祖先所做的工作的重要认可。

### 1-5: JADCE

#### 1. J

【本题解析】本题考查**动词时态语态**。句中主语与谓语动词构成被动关系，且根据后文 6,000 years ago 可知应用一般过去时，主语为 The water system，谓语动词用单数。综上所述，该题选择 J。

#### 2. A

【本题解析】本题考查**副词**。修饰后文形容词 complex 应用副词 extraordinarily，表示“极其”。综上所述，该题选择 A。

#### 3. D

【本题解析】本题考查**冠词**。site 为可数名词，此处表示泛指应用不定冠词，且 World 为辅音音素开头的单词。综上所述，该题选择 D。

#### 4. C

【本题解析】本题考查**非谓语动词**。句意：事实上，Budj Bim 在经历了一场灾难之后，才展现出它昔日的辉煌。分析句子结构可知 reveal 在句子应用非谓语动词形式，且此处为句型 it takes/took sth. for sb. to do sth. 表示“做某事让某人付出了……”，后跟不定式。综上所述，该题选择 C。

#### 5. E

【本题解析】本题考查**非谓语动词**。分析句子结构可知 spark 在句中应用非谓语动词形式，与逻辑主语 Bushfires 构成被动关系，故用过去分词。综上所述，该题选择 E。

### 6-10: LGBOM

#### 6. L

【本题解析】本题考查**非谓语动词**。分析句子结构可知 allow 在句中应用非谓语动词形式，且表示自然而然的结果应用现在分词。综上所述，该题选择 L。

#### 7. G

【本题解析】本题考查**副词**。句意：埃及金字塔是用附近丰富的材料建造的，Budj Bim 也是如此。此处为表示前句所述（肯定）情况也适用于另一主语，应用结构：So+系动词（助动词或情

态动词) + 另一主语。综上所述, 该题选择 G。

8. B

【本题解析】本题考查**定语从句**。此处为非限定性定语从句修饰先行词 building block, 且从句中缺少宾语, 故用关系代词 which 引导。综上所述, 该题选择 B。

9. O

【本题解析】本题考查**动词时态**。根据后文 since Europeans arrived on the continent. 可知应用现在完成时 have done, 主语为 population, 助动词应用 has。综上所述, 该题选择 O。

10. M

【本题解析】本题考查**名词的数**。achievement 为可数名词, 且根据后文 stand 为一般现在时, 用的动词原形, 可知应填复数形式。综上所述, 该题选择 M。

## Task 6

World sleep day falls on March 16. This year's theme is about sleep and women.

More women suffer from insomnia (失眠) than men, but only 4% of them go to a doctor to get help. A Beijing newspaper \_\_1\_\_ last month. A study by \_\_2\_\_ international organization in the paper said that women \_\_3\_\_ 30 to 60 sleep six hours and 41 minutes a day \_\_4\_\_ average.

Young people have also suffered from a lack of sleep. Statistics from a Chinese medical research center show that in \_\_5\_\_ like Beijing and Shanghai, 40% of young people suffer from insomnia. And 80% suffer from great tiredness due to poor quality sleep.

Experts blame heavy \_\_6\_\_ and competition at work for poor \_\_7\_\_ habits. The long term effects can be unhappiness, anxiety and depression, \_\_8\_\_ in turn lead to chronic illnesses (慢性病), \_\_9\_\_ in women.

There are, however, a couple of tricks for getting a good sleep, such as maintaining an optimistic attitude, keeping a regular, \_\_10\_\_ routine or finding some time for sports. Also, you can develop healthy habits such as keeping the bathroom clean and avoiding tea, coffee or wine before sleeping.

A. especially

B. which

C. on

D. but

E. daily

F. aged

G. in

H. sleeping

I. an

J. unpopular

K. reported

L. creation

M. pressure

N. cities

O. maximum

### 【全文翻译】

每年的3月16日是世界睡眠日。今年的主题是关于睡眠和女性。

患有失眠症的女性比男性多, 但其中只有4%的人去看医生寻求帮助。北京一家报纸上个月报道说。某国际组织的一项研究表明, 30岁至60岁的女性平均每天睡眠6小时41分钟。

年轻人也饱受睡眠不足之苦。中国医学研究中心的数据显示, 在北京和上海等城市, 40%



的年轻人患有失眠症。80%的人由于睡眠质量差而感到非常疲劳。

专家将不良的睡眠习惯归咎于巨大的工作压力和竞争。长期影响可能是不快乐、焦虑和抑郁，进而导致慢性疾病，尤其是对女性而言。

然而，要想睡个好觉，还是有一些诀窍的，比如保持乐观的态度，保持规律的日常生活，或者找点时间做运动。此外，你可以养成健康的习惯，比如保持浴室清洁，睡前不喝茶、咖啡或葡萄酒。

### 1-5: KIFCN

#### 1. K

【本题解析】本题考查**动词的时态**。句意：北京一家报纸上个月报道了此事。根据“last month”可知句子用一般过去时态。综上所述，该题选择 K。

#### 2. I

【本题解析】本题考查**非谓语动词**。句意：在这家北京的报纸上一个国际组织进行的一项研究表明，30 岁至 60 岁的女性平均每天睡 6 小时 41 分钟。此处 international 以元音音素开头，表示“一”小时用不定冠词 an。综上所述，该题选择 I。

#### 3. F

【本题解析】本题考查**形容词**。句意：在这家北京的报纸上，一个国际组织进行的一项研究表明，30 岁至 60 岁的女性平均每天睡 6 小时 41 分钟。此处 aged “……岁的”。综上所述，该题选择 F。

#### 4. C

【本题解析】本题考查**介词**。句意：在这家北京的报纸上，一个国际组织进行的一项研究表明，30 岁至 60 岁的女性平均每天睡 6 小时 41 分钟。固定词组：on average “平均”。综上所述，该题选择 C。

#### 5. N

【本题解析】本题考查**名词**。句意：中国医学研究中心的数据显示，在北京、上海等城市，40% 的年轻人患有失眠症。根据“like Beijing and Shanghai”可知此处 city 用复数形式。综上所述，该题选择 N。

### 6-10: MHBAE

#### 6. M

【本题解析】本题考查**名词**。句意：专家将睡眠习惯不佳归咎于工作中的巨大压力和竞争。此处是形容词修饰名词。综上所述，该题选择 M。

#### 7. H

【本题解析】本题考查**非谓语动词**。句意：专家将睡眠习惯不佳归咎于工作中的巨大压力和竞争。此处是动名词作定语 sleeping habits “睡眠习惯”。综上所述，该题选择 H。

#### 8. B

【本题解析】本题考查**定语从句**。句意：长期的影响可能是不快乐、焦虑和抑郁，这些反过来

又会导致慢性疾病，尤其是女性。此处“unhappiness, anxiety and depression”是先行词，指物，在后面的非限制性定语从句作主语。综上所述，该题选择 B。

9. A

【本题解析】本题考查**副词**。句意：长期的影响可能是不快乐、焦虑和抑郁，这些反过来又会导致慢性疾病，尤其是女性。此处用副词修饰 in women。综上所述，该题选择 A。

10. E

【本题解析】本题考查**形容词**。句意：然而，要想睡个好觉有几个诀窍，比如保持乐观的态度，保持有规律的日常作息，或者找点时间做运动。此处是形容词修饰名词。综上所述，该题选择 E。

## 第九章 句子写作

## Task 1

## 1. 结果手段句型: By+doing sth., 主语+can do sth.

中文解释: 通过做……, 主语能……

例句: By working hard, students can get good grades.

仿写: ①通过使用可回收材料, 我们能够保护环境。

By using recyclable materials, we can protect the environment.

仿写: ②通过锻炼身体, 我们能够保持健康。

By taking exercise, we can keep healthy.

## 2. 歌颂新事物句型一: 主语+enable sb. to do sth.

中文解释: 主语使某人能……

例句: E-learning enables students to have classes online.

仿写: ①阅读使人们能体验别人的人生。

Reading enables people to experience the lives of others.

仿写: ②线上支付能够使人们不带现金出门。

Online payment enables people to go out without cash.

## 3. 歌颂新事物句型二: 主语+make it possible for sb. to do sth.

中文解释: 对某人来说, 主语使得做某事是可能的。

例句: E-learning makes it possible for students to have classes online.

仿写: ①对我们来说, 阅读使我们能体验别人的人生是可能的。

Reading makes it possible for us to experience the lives of others.

仿写: ②对我们来说, 线上支付使我们不带现金出门是可能的。

Online payment makes it possible for us to go out without cash.

## Task 2

## 1. 应该句型一: 主语+ought to do sth.

中文解释: 主语应该……

例句: We ought to do small things first.

仿写: ①他们应该为他们的错误道歉。

They ought to apologize for their mistakes.

仿写: ②每个人都应该每天锻炼以保持健康。

Everyone ought to exercise every day to keep healthy.

## 2. 应该句型二: 主语+be supposed to do sth.

中文解释: 主语应该……

例句: Everyone is supposed to deal with the problem.

仿写: ①父母应该给予孩子更多的自由。

Parents are supposed to give their children more freedom.

仿写：②每个人都应该竭尽所能保护环境。

Everyone is supposed to try his best to protect the environment.

### 3. 背道而驰句型：Instead of doing sth., 主语+ought to sth.

中文解释：主语应该做……，而不是做……

例句：Instead of going by car, we ought to walk to work.

仿写：①我们应该终身学习，而不是为了考试而学习。

Instead of studying for exams, we ought to study for life.

仿写：②在大学，我们应该积极参加各项活动而不是碌碌无为。

In college, we ought to take an active part in various activities instead of doing nothing.

## Task 3

### 1. 重视句型一：主语+attach great importance to sth.

中文解释：主语非常重视……

例句：We are supposed to attach great importance to English learning.

仿写：①我们应该重视环境保护。

We are supposed to attach great importance to environmental protection.

仿写：②父母应该重视对孩子的教育。

Parents are supposed to attach importance to the education of their children.

### 2. 重视句型二：主语+put emphasis on sth.

中文解释：主语重视/强调……

例句：The teacher put emphasis on the importance of the Internet.

仿写：①政府可能更重视经济的快速增长。

The government may put more emphasis on rapid economic growth.

仿写：②学校应该更重视学生的心理健康。

Schools should put more emphasis on students' mental health.

### 3. 习惯句型：主语+be used/accustomed to doing sth.

中文解释：主语习惯……

例句：We ought to be used to learning for a lifetime.

仿写：①人们总习惯活在虚拟世界里。

People are always used to living in a virtual world.

仿写：②更多的人习惯住在城里。

More people are used to living in the city.

## Task 4

### 1. 有影响句型一：主语+have a great/tremendous influence/impact on sth.

中文解释：主语对……有巨大的影响

例句: A good lifestyle have a great influence on our health.

仿写: ①互联网对人们的生活有着巨大的影响。

The Internet has a great influence on people's life.

仿写: ②抖音对年轻人的思想有着巨大的影响。

Tiktok has a tremendous influence on the minds of young people.

## 2. 有影响句型二: 主语+do good/harm to sth.

中文解释: 主语对……有好处/有害

例句: Smoking does harm to our health.

仿写: ①长时间玩手机对我们的眼睛有害。

Playing mobile phones for a long time does harm to our eyes.

仿写: ②多练题对我们的学习有好处。

Practicing more does good to our study.

## 3. 义无反顾句型: Nothing can prevent sb. from doing sth.

中文解释: 没有什么能够阻止某人做某事

例句: Nothing can prevent me from loving you.

仿写: ①没有什么能阻止我们学好英语。

Nothing can prevent us from learning English well.

仿写: ②没有什么能阻止中国发展。

Nothing can prevent China from developing.

## Task 5

### 1. 花时间句型: It takes sb. some time to do sth.

中文解释: 做某事花费某人……时间

例句: It takes me some time to finish the homework.

仿写: ①一个毕业生至少花费几年的时间创业。

It takes a graduate at least a few years to start a business.

仿写: ②中国花费了数十年才取得如今的成就。

It took China decades to get where it is today.

### 2. 重要性句型一: 主语+play a/an important/vital role in sth.

中文解释: 主语在……扮演着重要的角色

例句: Cell phones play an important role in our daily life.

仿写: ①社团活动在大学生活中扮演着重要角色。

Club activities play an important role in college life.

仿写: ②学校在教育学生努力工作的价值方面起着重要作用。

Schools play an important role in teaching students about the value of working hard.

### 3. 重要性句型二: There is no way of doing sth. without sth.

中文解释: 没有……就无法做……

例句: There is no way of living without air.

仿写: ①没有阅读能力, 人们就无法获取信息。

There is no way of gaining new information without reading ability.

仿写: ②没有做好小事, 就无法取得大成就。

There is no way of making big achievements without doing small things.

## Task 6

### 1. 不必要句型: **There is no need for sb. to do sth.**

中文解释: 某人不需要做某事

例句: There is no need for you to get up early tomorrow.

仿写: ①由于网络带来的方便, 很多学生认为不需要上学了。

Because of the convenience brought the Internet, many students believe that there is no need for them to attend school.

仿写: ②由于移动支付的普及, 很多人认为出门不需要带现金了。

Because of the popularity of mobile payment, many people think that there is no need to carry cash when they go out.

### 2. 无用句型: **It's no good/use doing sth.**

中文解释: 做……是没用的

例句: It's no use regretting.

仿写: ①跟这么愚蠢的人争论是没用的。

It's no use arguing with such a stupid man.

仿写: ②抱怨是没有用的。

It's no good complaining.

### 3. 毋庸置疑句型: **There is no denying that+从句**

中文解释: 毋庸置疑的是……

例句: There is no denying that we must be careful about the Internet.

仿写: ①毋庸置疑的是我们应该过一种低碳的生活。

There is no denying that we should lead a low-carbon life.

仿写: ②毋庸置疑的是节省能源是项重要的议题。

There is no denying that saving energy is an important issue.

## 阶段二

### 第一章 语法

#### 第一节 词性

##### 一、分类

1. 实词：具有实际意义，能独立承担句子成分的词性，包括名词、动词、代词、数词、形容词和副词。
2. 虚词：没有实在意义，不能独立承担句子成分的词性，包括冠词、介词、连词和感叹词。

##### 二、词性用法

###### (一) 词性一览表

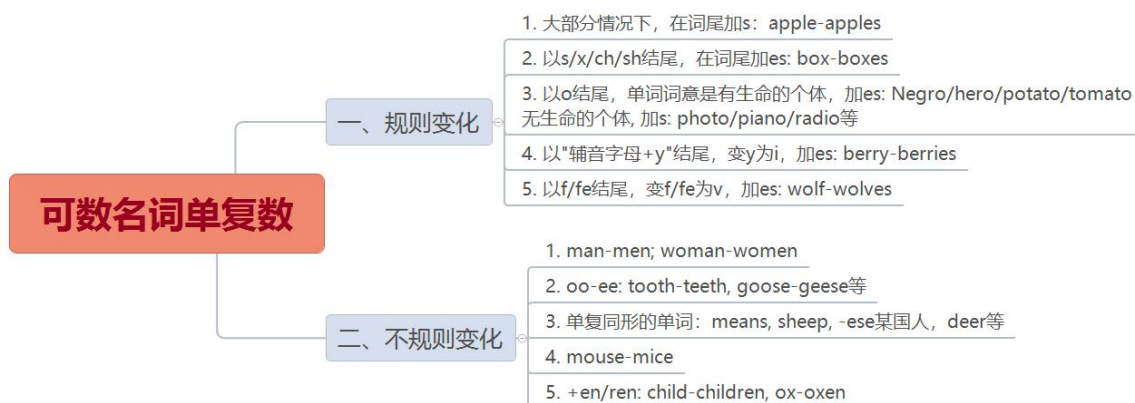
词性	英语名称	作用	例词
名词	noun(n.)	表示人或事物的名称	Julie 朱莉 pen 钢笔
动词	verb(v.)	表示人或事物的行为动作或状态	move 移动 keep 保持(状态)
代词	pronoun(pron.)	代替名词或名词短语，避免该名词或名词短语在句中重复出现	he 他 they 他们
数词	numeral(num.)	表示数量或顺序	ten 十 tenth 第十
形容词	adjective(adj.)	用来修饰名词、代词，表示其的特点、性质	adorable 可爱的 bright 明亮的
副词	adverb(adv.)	用来修饰动词、形容词、副词或句子，表示动作的特性方式等、形容词副词的程度或表明说话者的态度等	quickly 快速地 extremely 极其 unluckily 不幸地
冠词	article(art.)	用在名词前，帮助说明名词所指的人或事物	a/an/the
介词	preposition(prepos.)	用在名词、代词等前面，说明名词、代词与句中其他成分之间的关系	under 在……下面 except 除了
连词	conjunction(conj.)	连接单词与单词、短语与短语、句子与句子，表示两者之间的某种关系，如并列关系、转折关系等	and 和 but 但是 although 虽然
感叹词	interjection(interj.)	表示说话时的感情或语气	yeah 太棒了

###### (二) 词性具体用法

###### 1. 名词 (n.)

专有名词	人名、地名、国家名、组织名等	Linda the United States	不可数名词
普通名词	个体名词	apple; boy; balloon...	可数名词
	集合名词	class; family; government...	
	抽象名词	information; news; pleasure...	不可数名词
	物质名词	water; money; coffee...	

## (1) 可数名词单复数变化规则



## (2) 名词的所有格

表示名词 A 和 B 之间的所属关系，即“A 的 B”概念。

A 是有生命的名词、 或 A 是国家、城市、 时间、距离等	1. A 是单数，用 A's B	the boy's hair
	2. A 为 s/es 结尾的复数名词，用 ' B	three minutes' walk
	3. A 的复数不是加 s/es，用 A's B	Children's Day
A 是无生命的名词	用 (the) B of (the) A	the value of time



## 小练笔

## 一、写出下列名词的复数形式。

place placespolicy policiesknife kniveschild childrenphoto photosmeans meanspoliceman policemenmatch matcheshero heroes

## 二、翻译下列表达。

生命的意义 (meaning)

the meaning of life

半小时的自行车骑行 (距离)

30 minutes' ride

教师的办公室

the teachers' office

教育的影响 (influence)

the influence of education

## 2. 动词 (v.)



分为实义动词、助动词、情态动词和系动词。

(1) 实义动词：有实实在在意义的动词，分为及物动词 (vt.)和不及物动词 (vi.)。

- ① 及物动词+宾语
- ② 不及物动词单独使用，或不及物动词+介词+宾语



判断下列句子中的动词是 vt. 还是 vi.。

1. He **drank** a lot of tea. (vt.)
2. He **flushed**. (vi.)
3. They **live** in Chongqing. (vi.)
4. I **appreciate** your help. (vt.)

(2) 助动词：无实际意义的动词，帮助谓语动词构成各种时态、被动语态、否定句式、疑问句式和帮助强调谓语动词。

- ① 帮助构成时态：do/does/did+动词原形  
will/would+动词原形  
have/has/had+动词过去分词(done)  
be+动词现在分词(doing)



1. 下一周他们将要去参观博物馆。(visit)  
They will visit the museum next week.
2. 我们正在与 Prof. Li 讨论这个实验的结果。(discuss)  
We are discussing the result of the experiment with Prof. Li.
3. Tom 已经为这次旅行制定了详细的计划。(make)  
Tom has made a detailed plan for the journey.

- ② 帮助构成被动语态：be+done  
He was criticized by the teacher. 他被老师批评了。



1. 我们昨天在课上被点名了。(call)  
Our names were called in class yesterday.
2. 由于下雪天气，图书馆关闭了。(close)

The library are closed due to snowy weather.

- ③ 帮助构成否定句：在 be/情/助后加 not；若句中无 be/情/助，则在谓语前加 don't/doesn't/did。

I can swim. —————→ I can not swim.



小练笔

否定句

1. He attended the lecture yesterday. —————→ He didn't attend the lecture yesterday.
2. My parents work in a big company. —————→ My parents don't work in a big company.
3. Tom is in charge of the project. —————→ Tom isn't in charge of the project.
4. Attention should be paid to the problem. —————→ Attention shouldn't be paid to the problem.

- ④ 帮助构成疑问句：一般疑问句，将 be/情/助提至句首；若句中无 be/情/助，则在句首加 Do/Does/Did。特殊疑问句：特殊疑问词+be/情/助+主语+其他？

They will finish the work before Friday. —————→ Will they finish the work before Friday?



小练笔

一般疑问句

1. He is from the UK. —————→ Is he from the UK?
2. They must correct the mistake. —————→ Must they correct the mistake?
3. She will come here today. —————→ Will she come here today?
4. Tina finished the work last week. —————→ Did Tina finish the work yesterday?

- ⑤ 帮助强调谓语动词：do/does/did+谓语动词原形

He realized his mistake. —————→ He did realize his mistake.



小练笔

强调谓语

1. We appreciate your coming. —————→ We do appreciate your coming.
2. She called you last night. —————→ She did call you last night.

- (3) 情态动词：本身有一定的词义，表示说话人的看法态度或主观设想等。不能单独使用，必须和动词原形共同构成句子谓语。情态动词没有人称单复数的变化。  
常见的情态动词：w/s/m/c would/will 将, should/shall 应该, might/may 可能, could/can 能够,

must 必须; need 需要; ought to 应该; dare 敢等。



## 小练笔

1. 我们必须在天亮前出发。(set off)

We must set off before daybreak.

2. 他不应该酒后驾车。(drive)

He shouldn't drive after drinking.

- (4) 系动词：又称联系动词，把表语和主语联系在一起，构成主系表句子结构，说明主语的状态、性质、特征、内容等情况。

“状态”系：be 动词 am/is/are/was/were

“保持”系：stay, remain, keep 等

“变化”系：become, turn, get, go, grow 等

“终止”系：prove 证明, turn out 结果是

“感官”系：look 看起来, sound 听起来, smell 闻起来, taste 尝起来, feel 感觉

“表像”系：look, seem, appear 好像, 似乎



## 小练笔

1. 他看起来是个好人。(seem)

He seems a nice man.

2. 天气变冷了。(get)

It is getting colder.

3. 这个对手对他来说太强了。(opponent; prove)

The opponent proves too strong for him.

3. 代词 (pron.)

分为人称代词、物主代词、反身代词、不定代词、指示代词、相互代词、疑问代词和关系代词八类。在词性部分，主要掌握人称代词、物主代词、反身代词、不定代词的用法即可。

数	人称		人称代词		物主代词		反身代词
			主格 (作主语)	宾格 (作宾语)	形容词性 物主代词	名词性 物主代词	
单数	第一人称	我	I	me	my	mine	myself
	第二人称	你	you	you	your	yours	yourself
	第三人称	他	he	him	his	his	himself
		她	she	her	her	hers	herself
		它	it	it	its	its	itself
复数	第一人称	我们	we	us	our	ours	ourselves
	第二人称	你们	you	you	your	yours	yourselves
	第三人称	他们；她们； 它们；	they	them	their	theirs	themselves

(1) 人称代词：即第一、二、三人称代词，主格即在句子中作主语，常位于句首；宾格即在句子中作宾语，常位于动词、介词之后。

1. Linda is a teacher. She goes to school by bus every day.

Linda 是一名老师。她每天坐公交去学校。

2. Do you know where Tim is? I have something to tell him.

你知道 Tim 在哪吗？我有事情要告诉他。

(2) 物主代词：表示物体与物主的所属关系，即“某人的”概念。形容词性物主代词+名词=名词性物主代词。

1. I can't find my English textbook. Can I borrow yours(= your English textbook)?

我找不到我的英语书了。我能借你的吗？

2. This is Judy's pen. Where is mine(= my pen)?

这是 Judy 的钢笔。我的呢？

(3) 反身代词：表示“某人自己”，常位于主语后或句末表强调；或是做动词、介词的宾语，反身代词与主语形成互指关系，应在人称、单复数上保持一致。

1. She herself is a great engineer.

她本人是一位伟大的工程师。(表强调)

2. I did it by myself.

我靠自己完成了这个事情。(做介宾)

3. Prof. Li has been devoting himself to scientific research for decades.

李教授几十年来一致投身于科研。(做动宾)

- (4) 不定代词: 表示不指明代替任何特定名词, 常表示不确定的人、物或量。常见如: some, any, many, much, few, little, both, either, neither, all, none, someone, something, nobody 等。

1. I didn't bring any money on me then. (some/any)
2. May I ask you some questions? (some/any)
3. There are too many mistakes in your exercises. (many/much)
4. How much water do you need? (many/much)

① 区分 both, either, neither, all, none

1. The old man has three sons, but none of them often visits him. He feels lonely all the time.
2. The twin sisters look alike. Both of them enjoy e-sports.
3. —Can I call you on Saturday or Sunday?  
—Yes. Either is OK. I am free the whole weekend.

② 区分 it, one, that

1. I have a cat. It is black and white.
2. If you are buying today's newspaper, could you take one for me, please?
3. The house price in Beijing is higher than that in Chengdu.

③ 区分 other, the other, others, another

1. As for this topic, some people may support it, but others(= other people) may be against it.
2. There were two books on the desk. But now only one is here. Where is the other?
3. I don't like this pair of shoes. Can you show another?

4. 数词 (num.)

分为基数词和序数词。

基数词: 表示数量的词, 如 one, two, three, ten, hundred 等。

序数词: 表示顺序的词, 如 first, second, third, fifth, thirtieth 等。

(1) 数词 hundred, thousand, million 等的用法

① 表示“具体数量”时, 没有复数形式。

five hundred 500                      three thousand 3000

② 与 of 构成短语时, 用复数形式。

hundreds of 成百上千的……      thousands of 成千上万的……

millions of 数百万的……

## (2) 分数的表达

“子基母序”：分子用基数词，分母用序数词

in/out of 分子基数词+in/out of+分母基数词

three fifths/three in five/three out of five 五分之三

one third/one in three/one out of three 三分之一

## 5. 形容词(adj.)

## (1) 修饰名词时，常放在名词前。

beautiful flowers 漂亮的花朵      a clever boy 一个聪明的男孩

## (2) 修饰复合不定代词时，放在其后面。

something strange 奇怪的某些事情

## (3) 某些 a-开头的表语类形容词或-able/-ible 结尾的形容词，修饰名词时常放在名词后面。

people alive 活着的人们      resources available 可用的资源

## (4) 形容词可放在系动词之后，作其表语，表明主语的性质、特征等。

1. She sometimes is careless. 她偶尔很粗心。

2. The computer system is so difficult. 这套电脑系统太难了。

## (5) the+形容词，可表示一类人或一类事物。

1. The wounded should be treated right now. 伤者应该立即得到治疗。(wounded)

2. It has widened the gap between the rich and the poor. 这加大了贫富差距。

## 6. 副词 (adv.)

修饰动词、形容词、副词或句子。

## (1) 修饰动词，表示动作的特性、方式等。

She replied quickly. 她很快就回复了。

They complained bitterly. 他们气愤地抱怨。

## (2) 修饰形容词、副词，对其程度加以修饰。

He was rather disappointed at the result. 他对结果相当失望。

We are very happy. 我们非常高兴。

## (3) 修饰句子，表示说话者的态度。

Actually, they are not married. 事实上，他们并没结婚。



小练笔

1. He can solve the problem easily. (easy) 他可以轻易地解决这个问题。

2. The elderly should be looked after carefully. (careful) 老人应该被精心地照料。

3. Luckily, he passed the exam.(lucky) 幸运地是，他通过了考试。
4. He did a very good job in the competition. 他在比赛中表现得非常出色。

## 7. 冠词 (art.)

用在名词前，分为定冠词 the、不定冠词 a/an、零冠词 (即名词前不用冠词) 三类。

### (1) 定冠词 the，表示特定的指代某一个或某一群对象。

#### ① 指谈话双方都知道的人或物。

Do you know the boy? 你认识那个男孩吗? (谈话双方都明确知道是哪一位男孩)

#### ② 上文提及过的人或物，在下文再次出现时，前面用 the，表示特指。

I have a cat. The cat is white. 我有一只猫。这只猫是白色的。(the cat 特指我的这只猫)

#### ③ 用于最高级前、序数词前、方位词前。

Tom is the most intelligent student in the class. Tom 是班上最聪明的学生。

Hangzhou is in the east of China. 杭州位于中国的东部。

This is the third try. 这是第三次尝试了。

#### ④ 用于世界上独一无二的事物前，如 the sun, the moon, the earth, the world 等

Over seventy percent of the earth is covered with water. 地球超过 70%被水覆盖。

#### ⑤ 用于江、河、湖、海、洋、群山等名称前。

The Yangtze River is the longest river in China. 长江是中国第一长河。

#### ⑥ 用在形容词前，可表示一类人或一类事物。用于姓氏的复数前，表示一家人。

Have patience with the unknown. 对未知的事物多点耐心。

The Smiths are having dinner at the table. Smith 一家人正在餐桌前吃晚饭。

#### ⑦ 用在西洋乐器名词之前。

She is good at playing the violin. 她擅长小提琴。

### (2) 不定冠词 a/an，表示泛指，即不明确的指代某一个人或物。

#### ① a 用于辅音音素发音的单词前；an 用于元音音素发音的单词前。

a elephant

a uniform

a honest man

a European country

#### ② 泛指某一类人或事物，可译为“任一，每一”。

A lion is a dangerous animal. 狮子是猛兽。(a lion 泛指“狮子”这一种类)

#### ③ 表示“一”数量概念，意同 one。

I have a cat. It is cute. 我有一只猫。它很可爱。(a cat 表示数量“一只”)

### (3) 零冠词：即名词前不使用冠词。

#### ① 在不可数名词、专有名词、复数名词前不用冠词。

Ice cream is my favorite. 冰淇淋是我的最爱。

China is a developing country. 中国是发展中国家。

- ② 季节、月份、星期、节假日的名词前不用冠词。

Flowers bloom in spring. 花儿在春天绽放。

We will have a meeting on Friday. 周五我们有个会议。

- ③ 三餐、球类、棋类运动及学科名词前不用冠词。

Did you have breakfast? 你吃过早餐了吗?

Can you play chess? 你会下象棋吗?

- ④ 称呼语、头衔、职务等名词前不用冠词。

President Bush is due to visit the country next month. 布什总统下个月访问该国。



小练笔

- The doctor advises me to eat \_\_\_\_\_ apple a day. (B)  
A. a                                  B. an                                  C. the                                  D. /
- Do you often play \_\_\_\_\_ soccer with your friend? (C)  
—No, I don't like sports. I often play \_\_\_\_\_ piano in my free time.  
A. a; the                                  B. the; /                                  C. /; the                                  D. the; the
- \_\_\_\_\_ Greens are preparing for the coming Thanksgiving Day. (D)  
A. /                                  B. A                                  C. An                                  D. The
- \_\_\_\_\_ man is my math teacher. He is \_\_\_\_\_ strict teacher. (C)  
A. A; a                                  B. A; the                                  C. The; a                                  D. The; the
- \_\_\_\_\_ President Trump will have dinner with \_\_\_\_\_ president of the company. (C)  
A. /; a                                  B. The; the                                  C. /; the                                  D. A; a

## 8. 介词 (prep.)

通常放在名词或代词前面，表示该名词或代词与句中其他成分之间的关系。需要掌握几类基本介词的词义及用法。

### (1) 时间介词: in, on, at

- ① in+大时间，用于年、季节、月份、周或构成固定表达

in 2018                                  in winter                                  in the morning/afternoon/evening

- ② on+某一天/某一天的早中晚/某一个早中晚

on Sept. 2                                  on the evening of Friday                                  on a rainy morning

- ③ at+时间点

at 8:30 a.m.                                  at noon/night/dawn/dusk

### (2) 地点介词: in, at

- ① in+大地点，用于世界、国家、州、省、市、县等。

There are 56 ethnic groups in China. 中国有 56 个民族。



- ② at+具体的地点，用于车站、门口等。

Let's meet at the school gate. 我们在校门口见吧。

- (3) 方式介词: by 凭借, with 用, in 用, through 通过

- ① by+交通工具/行为动作。

He got there by bus. 他坐公交去的。

You can improve your spoken English only by practicing. 只有通过练习你才能提升口语。

- ② with+具体的工具，常指人手可持握操作的工具。

He cut the apple with a knife. 他用刀切苹果。

- ③ in+语言/材料/颜色/声音等

Say it in English. 用英语说吧。

She wrote in ink. 她用钢笔写的。

- ④ through+某人/方式/媒介，其后常跟名词。

I got the job through him. 通过他我得到了这个工作。

You can only achieve success through hard work. 只有通过努力才能成功。

We communicate through the Internet. 我们通过互联网交流。

You must write with a pencil.  
(with pencil 表示拿在手里的工具)  
You must write in pencil.  
(in pencil 表示呈现在纸上的材料)



小练笔

1. He was born on a cold winter morning.  
他出生在一个寒冷的冬日早晨。
2. He lives in a big city.  
他住在大城市里。
3. We can spread information through social media.  
我们可以通过社交媒体传播信息。
4. He suggested that we go there by train.  
他建议我们坐火车去那边。
5. She expressed her anger by shouting loud at her mother.  
她通过朝她妈妈大吼表达愤怒。

#### 9. 连词 (conj.)

在句子中起连接作用，连接单词、短语或句子。可分为并列连词和从属连词。并列连词连接单词、短语或句子；从属连词用来连接各种从句，如名从、状从。

##### (1) 并列连词

- ① 并列关系: and 和; as well as 和, 也; not only...but also...不仅……而且……; either...or...要么……要么……; neither...nor...既不……也不……; not...but...不是……而是……
- ② 转折关系: but 但是; yet 但是; while 然而
- ③ 并列关系: or 或者, 否则; otherwise 否则

## ④ 因果关系: for 因为; so 所以, 因此

I can speak English and French. (连接单词 English 和 French)

You can either give up or try your best. 你要么就放弃, 要么尽全力。(并列短语 give up 和 try your best)

I was late this morning, for I got up late. 我今早迟到了, 因为我起晚了。(并列句子)

## (2) 从属连词: 如 that, what, when, why, how, where, if, although, so that 等。

He told me that he would call me. 他告诉我会给我打电话。(that 引导宾语从句)

Although it rains hard, he still goes out. 虽然雨下得大, 他还是出去了。(although 引导让步状语从句)

## 10. 感叹词 (interj.)

表示说话时的感情或语气。

Ah, so many questions, so little time. 啊, 这么多问题, 这么短的时间。

## 第二节 句子成分

英语句子的组成成分叫作句子成分，分为八大成分，即主语、谓语、宾语、定语、状语、补语、表语和同位语。一个完整的英语句子，至少由两部分组成——主语和谓语。所以八大成分中，主要成分是主语、谓语，次要成分为宾语、定语、状语、补语、表语和同位语。

### 一、主语

主语是句子所要叙述的人或物，是句子的主体，通常位于句首。可以充当主语的是名词、代词、数词、不定式、动名词或句子。

1. Chinese is a difficult language.  
中文是一门很难的语言。
2. They are playing on the playground.  
他们正在操场上玩耍。
3. Eight is my lucky number.  
8 是我的幸运数字。
4. To see is to believe.  
眼见为实。
5. Doing more exercises can help us improve our English.  
多做练习题可以帮助我们提升英语。
6. What he wants from his parents is their love.  
他想要的是父母的爱。
- ❖ 当不定式、动名词或句子作主语时，有时为了平衡句式，会用“it”作形式主语，将真正的主语后置。“it”作形式主语时，其没有实质意义。
7. To protect the earth is our shared responsibility.  
保护地球是我们共同的责任。  
It is our shared responsibility to protect the earth. (it 作形式主语，真正的主语后置)
8. That we should make a plan ahead of time is necessary.  
我们提前做计划，是很有必要的。  
It is necessary that we should make a plan ahead of time.



小练笔

找出句中的主语并翻译句子。

1. We should take it seriously.  
we 我们应该严肃对待这个事情。
2. The old man refused their help.  
the old man 老人拒绝了他们的帮助。

3. To love is to give.  
to love 爱是给予。
4. Collecting all kinds of stamps is my hobby.  
collecting all kinds of stamps 收集各类邮票是我的爱好。
5. When we will set off is not clear yet.  
when we will set off 我们何时出发还不清楚。
6. It is unbelievable that he has won the match.  
that he has won the match 难以置信他赢了比赛。
7. It is our duty to help the poor and the vulnerable.  
to help the poor and the vulnerable 帮助贫困人群和弱势群体是我们的责任。

## 二、谓语

谓语说明主语做什么、是什么、是怎么样的。谓语只能由动词充当，一个句子中有且只有一个谓语动词(没有连词的情况下)。

谓语的构成	①实义动词(原形、三单、过去式)	He <u>makes</u> a mistake.
	②助动词+动词	They <u>will fly</u> to Tianjin next week.
	③情态动词+动词原形	We <u>should respect</u> everyone around us.
	④系动词+表语	Leaves <u>turn yellow</u> in autumn.



小练笔

找出句中的谓语并翻译句子。

1. The students are watching a movie in class.  
are watching 学生们正在课上观看电影。
2. I can look after my little sister well.  
can look after 我可以照顾好我的妹妹。
3. He is available this weekend.  
is available 他这周末有空。
4. The cloth feels soft.  
feels soft 布料很软。
5. We found him at last.  
found 最终我们找到了他。
6. The machine was invented in the 1920s.  
was invented 这个机器发明于 20 世纪 20 年代。

7. We have learned English for 10 years.

have learned 我们已经学了 10 年英语。

### 三、宾语

宾语是动作的对象或动作的承受者，可以充当宾语的是名词、代词、数词、不定式、动名词或句子。宾语分为动宾、介宾、双宾、it 作形式宾语。

- (1) 动宾：在及物动词之后，作及物动词的宾语。

I enjoyed the meal. 我喜欢这顿饭。

We want to find out the truth. 我们想要找出事实。

- (2) 介宾：在介词之后，作介词的宾语。

He seems interested in the topic. 他似乎对这个话题感兴趣。

Are you curious about him? 你对他好奇吗？

- (3) 双宾 {
- ① 双宾动词+sb.(间接宾语)+sth.(直接宾语) He offered me some useful information.
  - ② 双宾动词+sth.(直接宾语)+to/for+sb.(间接宾语) He offered some useful information to me.

常见双宾动词：give 给予, offer 提供, tell 告诉, lend 借, show 展示, teach 教, bring 带来, buy 买, sing 唱, make 制作等。

- (4) it 作形式宾语：it 不具有实质意义，用于复合结构中(动词+宾语+宾补)，将真正的宾语后置。常用于此结构的动词：think/consider/believe/suppose(认为)/make(使,让)/find/feel(觉得)+it(形宾)+adj./n.(宾补)+真正宾语(不定式/句子)

We think it impossible to finish the work in two hours. (it 作形宾, 真正宾语后置)

我们认为两个小时内完成工作不可能。

Taking good notes makes it easier to understand and remember it.

做好笔记使得理解记忆更加简单。



小练笔

判断划线部分的句子成分。

1. I met my best friend on the street last night.

谓语; 宾语

2. He generously lent me 1000 yuan.

间接宾语; 直接宾语

3. We are amazed at the beauty of the island.

主语；宾语

4. He considered it a pity to miss the party.

谓语；形式宾语；真正宾语

5. Mrs.Li teaches us chemistry.

直接宾语

6. Mom bought a pair of shoes for me.

谓语；直接宾语

7. We suppose it an honor to be invited here.

形式宾语；真正宾语

#### 四、定语

定语是修饰或限定名词、代词的句子成分，在中文中常译为“……的”。可以充当定语的有形容词、数词、名词、量词、动名词、名词所有格's、介词短语、不定式、分词及其短语、形容词短语或从句。

定语按照位置，分为前置定语(放在名词前)和后置定语(放在名词/代词后)。一般情况下，单个单词作定语，常作前置定语；短语或句子作定语，常作后置定语。

❖ 在英译汉中，注意后置定语的翻译调序，译为“……的”+其修饰的名词/代词。

1. The kind man offered us a hand. (形容词修饰 man，前置定语)

这位善良的男士帮助我们。

2. The nightingale's singing can make the rose bloom. (名词所有格's 限定 singing，前置定语)

夜莺的歌声能使玫瑰绽放。

3. The man standing over there looks suspicious. (分词短语限定 man，后置定语，翻译调序)

站在那里的那个男人看起来可疑。

4. The picture reminds me of the happy times spent with my family. (分词短语限定 times，后置定语，翻译调序)

这张照片使我想起和家人共度的快乐时光。

5. The man who is waving at us is my uncle. (句子作定语限定 man，后置定语，翻译调序)

朝我们挥手的男人是我叔叔。

❖ 特殊的后置定语：

- (1) 形容词修饰限定复合不定代词(something, anyone, nothing 等)时，作后置定语。

I have something urgent to say.

我有紧急的事情要说。

- (2) 某些以 a-开头的表语形容词、-able/-ible 结尾的形容词，修饰限定名词时，常作后置定语。

People alive still remember the dead.

活着的人们仍纪念着死去的人。



小练笔

找出句中的定语并翻译句子。

1. She is a natural musician.  
natural 她是天生的音乐家。
2. Everyone in the room kept silent.  
in the room 房间里的每个人都保持沉默。
3. Do you know the man who is talking to Ms.Wang?  
who is talking to Ms.Wang 你认识那个正在和王老师聊天的男人吗?
4. Look at the man dressed in blue.  
dressed in blue 快看那个穿蓝色衣服的人。
5. I read a magazine article about a museum.  
about a museum 我读了一本关于一家博物馆的杂志。
6. A group of people sitting in the hall stared at us.  
sitting in the hall 坐在大厅的一群人盯着我们看。
7. The professor who is giving a speech now is from a top university.  
who is giving a speech now 正在做演讲的教授来自一所顶尖大学。

## 五、状语

状语修饰动词、句子、形容词、副词，表示动作发生的时间、地点、原因、目的、结果、方式、伴随、条件、让步、或程度等。可以充当状语的是副词、介词短语、不定式、分词短语、句子等。

❖ 伴随状语：伴随着谓语而同时进行的行为动作或存在的状态。

The math teacher entered the classroom, a book in his hand. (该状态伴随句子谓语同步存在)  
数学老师进了教室，手里拿着一本书。

❖ 让步状语：中文中，译为“虽然”、“尽管”、“即使”、“无论……”的内容。

Although he is 67, he stills works in a university.  
虽然他已经 67 岁了，他仍然在大学工作。

1. I work in Anhui. (介词短语作地点状语)  
我在安徽工作。
2. He speaks English slowly. (副词作方式状语)  
他慢慢地讲英语。
3. I pushed her toward the door, saying goodbye to the family. (现在分词短语作伴随状语)  
我推着她朝门走去，跟这一家人说再见。

4. As your son grows, you also age. (句子作时间状语)  
随着你的儿子长大，你也老去。
5. To achieve our dream, we have to struggle. (不定式作目的状语)  
为了实现我们的梦想，我们必须奋斗。
6. In spite of some difficulties, they still managed to persuade him. (介词短语作让步状语)  
尽管有一些困难，他们仍然成功说服了他。



## 小练笔

判断划线部分的句子成分并翻译句子。

1. To keep healthy, we need regular exercise.  
目的状语 为了保持健康，我们需要规律的锻炼。
2. I can complete the task before he comes.  
谓语；时间状语 在他来之前，我可以完成任务。
3. Although he wasn't sure, he stuck to it.  
让步状语 虽然他不确定，但他还是坚持。
4. SpongeBob is popular because he attracts a lot of viewers.  
原因状语 海绵宝宝很受欢迎，因为他吸引了很多观众。
5. When I was 17, I got my driver's license.  
时间状语；宾语 当我 17 岁的时候，我拿到了驾照。
6. He smiled, shaking his head.  
伴随状语 他笑着，摇了摇头。
7. He made money all by his own efforts.  
方式状语 他全靠自己的努力挣钱。

## 六、补语

补语对句子主语或宾语的行为、状态、特征等进行补充说明，是为了让句子意义表达完整而加上的一个部分，分为主语补足语和宾语补足语。

1. We entered the museum, excited. (形容词作主补，补充说明主语的状态)  
我们进了博物馆，很激动。
2. My father doesn't allow me to drive. (不定式作宾补，补充说明宾语的行为)  
我爸爸不允许我开车。
3. I saw him playing near the river. (现在分词作宾补，补充说明宾语的行为)  
我看见他在河边玩。
4. He found the movie exciting. (形容词作宾补，补充说明宾语的特征)  
他觉得这部电影很令人激动。





小练笔

判断划线部分是主补还是宾补。

1. I told him to review the notes.

宾补

2. Finally, he was found dead.

主补

3. We call her Ice Queen.

宾补

4. I was asked to clean the house.

主补

5. They painted the wall creamy white.

宾补

### 七、表语

表语是跟在系动词之后的成分，用于说明主语的性质、特征、内容等。可以充当表语的有名词、数词、形容词、介词短语、不定式、动名词或句子等。

1. She looks gorgeous. (形容词放在系动词之后，作表语)

她很漂亮。

2. My dream is to become a poet. (不定式放在系动词之后，作表语)

我的梦想是成为一名诗人。



小练笔

划出句中的表语。

1. It turns out nice again.

2. To understand the logic of the theory is essential.

3. Spring comes. It gets warmer.

4. This kind of food tastes delicious.

5. He looked worried just now.

### 八、同位语

两个指同一人或同一事物的句子成分放在同等位置时，后者对前者进行解释说明，后者是前者的同位语。

1. My best friend Anne is from the UK. (Anne 和 my best friend 指的同一人)

我最好的朋友 Anne 来自英国。

2. The seasons—spring, summer, autumn and winter—make a cycle. (春夏秋冬和 seasons 指的一个事物)  
四季—春、夏、秋、冬—形成循环。
  3. I have heard the rumor that they are married. (that they are married 就是 rumor, 解释说明 rumor 的内容)  
我听到谣言，他们结婚了。
- ❖ 同位语除了说明对象的全部内容，也可说明其部分内容。  
We like sports, such as running and playing basketball. (说明“喜欢的运动”的其中一部分)  
我们喜欢运动，比如跑步和打篮球。



小练笔

划出句中的同位语。

1. Mr. Smith, our new teacher, is very strict.
2. I heard the news that our team won.
3. She likes many kinds of fruit, such as apples, grapes and peaches.
4. My friend, a successful businessman, is now traveling in Europe.
5. He made a promise that he would be on time.

### 第三节 句子结构及句子种类

#### 一、句子结构

根据英语的句子结构，句子可分为简单句、并列句和主从复合句。

(1) 简单句：只有一套主谓结构(或含有并列谓语)的句子。

简单句的分类	①主语+谓语(SV)	He cried.
	②主语+谓语+宾语(SVO)	We organized a party.
	③主语+谓语+双宾(SVOO)	He told us the truth. / He told the truth to us.
	④主语+谓语+宾语+宾补(SVOC)	He made us laugh.
	⑤主语+系动词+表语(SVP)	She feels better now.



小练笔

单项选择。

- The business is risky. 该简单句的结构是\_\_\_\_? (C)  
A. SV                      B. SVO                      C. SVP                      D. SVOO
- We planted some trees and flowers. 该简单句的结构是\_\_\_\_? (B)  
A. SV                      B. SVO                      C. SVP                      D. SVOC
- You may succeed. 该简单句的结构是\_\_\_\_? (A)  
A. SV                      B. SVO                      C. SVP                      D. SVOO
- He didn't buy me a nice present. 该简单句的结构是\_\_\_\_? (B)  
A. SVO                      B. SVOO                      C. SVP                      D. SVOC
- He saw a group of children playing in the snow. 该简单句的结构是\_\_\_\_? (A)  
A. SVOC                      B. SVP                      C. SVOO                      D. SVO

(2) 并列句：由并列连词连接的两个及以上的简单句。

① 并列关系的连词：and 和; not only...but also 不仅……而且; neither...nor...既不……也不

It is not only a wall, but it is also a tourist resort.

这不仅是一座城墙，也是一个旅游胜地。

② 转折关系的连词：but 但是; while 然而; yet 但是

We quarrel sometimes, but we learn a lot from each other.

我们偶尔吵架，但是也从对方那里学到了很多。

- ③ 选择关系的连词：or 或者;否则; either...or...要么……要么

Either you leave, or I leave.

要么你走，要么我走。

- ④ 因果关系的连词：for 因为; so 所以

I know the place well, so I can be your guide.

我很了解这个地方，所以我可以当你的导游。

- (3) 主从复合句：由一个主句和一个(或以上)从句组成，用来连接从句的连词是从属连词。从句附属于主句，作主句的某个成分，按照从句所作的成分，可划分为主语从句、宾语从句、表语从句、同位语从句(合称名词性从句)、定语从句(形容词性从句)、和状语从句(副词性从句)。

常见的从属连词：that, what(ever), who(ever), whom(ever), when(ever), where(ver), how(ever), if, whether, although, because, why 等。

- ❖ 从句的划分：从从属连词开始，划至其后的第二个谓语前；若其后没有第二个谓语，则划至标点符号位置。

- ❖ 从句的分类判定：将从句看作整体，根据其位置及在主句中所作的成分而定。

What he wants is money.

主语从句

I know when the meeting will begin.

宾语从句

My question is what is the most important.

表语从句

I heard the news that she would go abroad soon.

同位语从句

The book that he is holding in his hand now is written by Mo Yan.

定语从句

When I was 11, I could play the piano very well.

时间状语从句



小练笔

勾画出从句的位置，并判断从句的类型。

- |   |               |
|---|---------------|
| 1. Everyone knows the truth <u>that the earth is round</u> .                | <u>同位语从句</u>  |
| 2. I don't know <u>who did it</u> .   | <u>宾语从句</u>   |
| 3. <u>Whether it is worth trying</u> is still a question.                   | <u>主语从句</u>   |
| 4. His suggestion is <u>that we give up the plan</u> .                      | <u>表语从句</u>   |
| 5. Lisa is a teacher <u>who cares about her students</u> .                  | <u>定语从句</u>   |
| 6. They believe <u>that computers will take the place of human beings</u> . | <u>宾语从句</u>   |
| 7. <u>If it rains tomorrow</u> , I will stay in the room.                   | <u>条件状语从句</u> |
| 8. I couldn't see her expression, <u>because she turned around</u> .        | <u>原因状语从句</u> |

## 二、句子种类

句子按照种类可分为陈述句、疑问句（一般疑问句、特殊疑问句、反义疑问句等）、祈使句、感叹句、there be 句型等。

## (1) 陈述句

陈述事实或说话者的观点看法的句子，使用陈述语序，即主语在前，谓语在后。分为肯定句和否定句。

We are watching TV at home. (肯定句)

We are not watching TV at home. (否定句)

❖ 句子变为否定句的方法参照《第一节 词性》助动词的用法



将下列句子改为否定句。

- They went to the cinema last night.  
They didn't go to the cinema last night.
- She is performing on the stage now.  
She isn't performing on the stage now.
- His brother can play the violin.  
His brother can't play the violin.

## (2) 疑问句

疑问句是用来提问的句子。分为一般疑问句、特殊疑问句、反义疑问句等。

① 一般疑问句，又称是非疑问句，常用 Yes/No 来问答。

Can you speak French? No, I can't.

② 特殊疑问句，由特殊疑问词发起的问题，如 what、who、where、when、why、how 等。

What are you looking for? I am looking for a box.

❖ 句子变为疑问句的方法参照《第一节 词性》助动词的用法



翻译下列句子。

- 你们明天要去购物吗?  
Will you go shopping tomorrow?
- 昨天他去上学了吗?

Did he go to school yesterday?

3. 昨天你在哪里找到了他?

Where did you find him yesterday?

③ 反义疑问句，又称附加疑问句，即在陈述句后加上一个简短的问句，对陈述句的内容提出相反的疑问。

附加疑问句的构成：be/情/助(肯定形式/否定形式)+人称代词主格(I/we/you/he/she/it/they)

附加疑问句的肯否：前肯后否，前否后肯

You are late today, aren't you?

Lily can't draw, can she?



单项选择。

- Linda ate nothing this morning, \_\_\_\_\_? (C)  
A. didn't she      B. was she      C. did she      D. wasn't she
- Linda will go to Wuhan next week, \_\_\_\_\_? (B)  
A. will she      B. won't she      C. does she      D. doesn't she
- Shanghai is a beautiful city, \_\_\_\_\_? (C)  
A. is it      B. is Shanghai      C. isn't it      D. isn't Shanghai
- I have never seen you before, \_\_\_\_\_? (A)  
A. have I      B. haven't I      C. do I      D. don't I

### (3) 祈使句

祈使句用于表达命令、请求、劝告、警告、禁止等，通常省略主语 You，用动词原形/Don't+动词原形开头。

Open the window.

Don't play near the river.

### (4) 感叹句

感叹句是用来表达喜怒哀乐等强烈情感的句式。常由 what 和 how 引导。

- ① what 用作定语，修饰名词，句式如下：

What+a/an+adj.+可数名词单数 (+主谓)!

What+adj.+可数名词复数/不可数名词 (+主谓)!

What a lovely girl she is!

What nice weather it is!

- ② how 用作状语，修饰形容词或副词，句式如下：

How+adj./adv. (+主谓)!

How fast he runs!

(5) there be 句型

there be 句型又称存在句，表示“某处有某人/某物”的概念。存在句的谓语除了是 be 动词外，也可以是其他表示存在的动词，如 stand、lie、exist、remain、lie 等。

There stands a tower at the top of the mountain.

There are some eggs in the basket.

❖ there be 句型的谓语不能是 have。



小练笔

翻译下列句子。

1. 多么漂亮的一条裙子呀。

What a beautiful dress (it is)!

2. 冰箱里有一些牛奶。(fridge)

There is some milk in the fridge.

3. 不要触碰这些设备。(equipment)

Don't touch these equipment.

4. 他昨天没有上体育课。

He didn't attend P.E. class yesterday.

5. 他并不值得信任，不是吗？

He isn't trustworthy, is he?

## 第四节 时态语态

### 一、时态

定义：谓语动词在不同时间下呈现的不同状态。（以 do 代指谓语动词）

时态	一般式 (do)	进行式 (be doing)	完成式 (have done)	完成进行式 (have been doing)
现在	do/does	am/is/are doing	have/has done	have/has been doing
过去	did	was/were doing	<u>had done</u>	had been doing
将来	will do	<u>will be doing</u>	will have done	will have been doing
过去将来	would do	would be doing	would have done	would have been doing

注：其否定形式在第一个 be/情/助后加 not，若为实义动词，则借助助动词 do/does/did，在其后加 not。

#### （一）一般现在时

1. 定义：表示现在经常性或反复发生的动作或存在的状态。
2. 谓语动词的形式：谓语是 be 动词，用 am/is/are；谓语是实义动词，用 do(动词复数)/does(动词三单)。

#### 动词第三人称单数

1. 大部分动词，直接在词尾加s like-likes

2. 以s/x/ch/sh/o结尾的动词，在词尾加es go-goes

3. 以辅音字母+y结尾的动词，变y为i，再加es carry-carries

#### 3. 用法：

- (1) 与 often, always, usually, sometimes, every day, once a week 等时间状语连用；

Tom often gets up at 6:00 in the morning. (get)

My friends often invite me to the farm. (invite)

- (2) 表示客观事实、真理、习俗谚语用一般现在时；

Knowledge is power. (be)

The earth moves around the sun. (move)

- (3) 主将从现：在时间或条件状语从句中，谈论将来有可能发生的事情时，主句用将来时 (will do)，从句用现在时表将来 (do/does 或 have/has done)；

时间状语从句的引导词：when, as soon as, after, before, until 等

条件状语从句的引导词：if, unless, as/so long as 等

If he comes back tomorrow, I will tell him the exciting news. (come; tell)

He will go to see his grandparents when he is free next week. (go; be)

- (4) the+比较级(+n.)+主谓……, the+比较级(+n.)+主谓……。 “越……就越……”



- ❖ 该句型常考查其对称句式，即“the+比较级”位于句首。
- ❖ 该句型谈论将来时，也可用“主将从现”原则，前句为从句，后句为主句。

The more you eat, the fatter you will get.

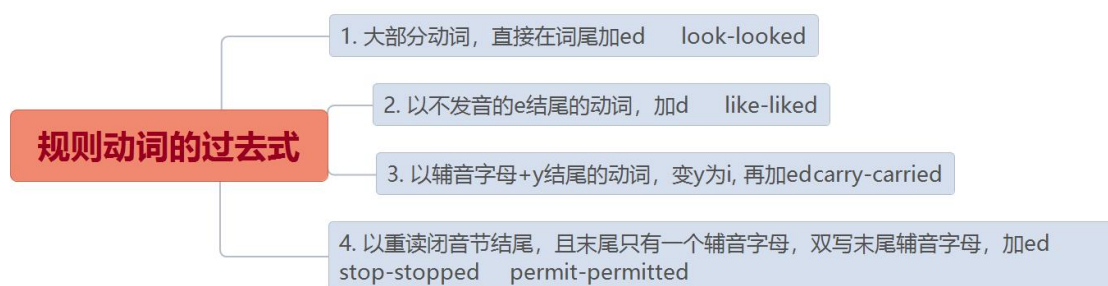
你吃得越多，就越胖。

The longer the war lasts, the more the people there will suffer. (last; suffer)

战争持续得越久，那里的人们就会遭受更多苦难。

## (二) 一般过去时

1. 定义：表示过去发生的动作或情况。
2. 谓语动词的形式：谓语是 be 动词，用 was/were；谓语是实义动词，用 did(动词过去式)。



- ❖ 不规则动词的过去式及过去分词见《升本词汇 3500》附录表

### 3. 用法:

- (1) 与 yesterday, last+时间(如 last week), 时间+ago(如 three days ago), just now 等表示过去的时间状语连用。

I was late for school yesterday. (be)

He lent me some money a week ago. (lend)

### (2) used 的用法:

used to do sth. 过去常……

used to be done 过去常常被……

be/get used to doing. 习惯做某事

be used to do sth. 被用来做……

我过去常常被嘲笑。(laugh at)

I used to be laughed at.

他现在习惯在晚饭后散一会儿步。

He is used to having a walk after super.

在一些地区，竹子被用来建造房屋。

In some areas, bamboo is used to build houses.

我们以前夏天常泛舟湖上。

We used to go sailing on the lake in summer.

**(三) 一般将来时**

1. 定义：表示将来发生的动作，事情或存在的状态。
2. 谓语动词的形式：will do(主语是第一人称 I/we 时，也可用 shall do)
3. 用法：
  - (1) 与 next week, tomorrow, in the future, in/within+时间, soon 等表示将来的时间状语连用。  
 There will be a sports meeting next week. (be)  
 They will hold a party to celebrate their 25<sup>th</sup> wedding anniversary tomorrow. (hold)
  - (2) 可以代替 will do 的近义表达方式：
    - =am/is/are going to do.
    - =am/is/are to do.
    - = am/is/are about to do.
    - =am/is/are on the point of doing.
- ❖ 位移动词如 come, go, leave, arrive, start, begin 等，常用进行式(be doing)表将来。  
 Hurry up. The guests are coming.
- ❖ 若表述列车、飞机、地铁等按照时刻表运行，常用一般现在时表将来。  
 Hurry up. The train leaves at 9:00.

**(四) 过去将来时**

1. 定义：表示过去某个时候看来即将发生的动作或存在的状态。
2. 谓语动词的形式：would do
3. 用法：常用在主句是一般过去时态的宾语从句中  
 He told me that he would move to New Zealand next year. (move)  
 The teacher announced that we would have the final exam at the end of this month. (have)
4. 可以代替 would do 的近义表达方式：
  - =was/were going to do.
  - =was/were to do.
  - =was/were about to do.
  - =was/were on the point of doing.



小练笔

**一般时态综合练习**

1. We often \_\_\_\_\_ on the playground. (A)  
 A. play                      B. plays                      C. playing                      D. will play
2. He told me that light \_\_\_\_\_ faster than sound. (B)  
 A. travel                      B. travels                      C. travelling                      D. traveled
3. The more practice you \_\_\_\_\_, the more progress you \_\_\_\_\_. (C)  
 A. do; make                      B. does; makes

- ### (五) 进行时

- ```
graph LR; A[动词的ing] --- B[1. 大部分动词，直接在词尾加ing]; A --- C[2. 以不发音的e结尾的动词，去e加ing]; A --- D[3. 以重读闭音节结尾，且末尾只有一个辅音字母，双写末尾辅音字母，加ing]; A --- E[4. 少量以ie结尾的动词，变ie为y，再加ing];
```

动词的ing

  - 1. 大部分动词，直接在词尾加ing      play-playing
  - 2. 以不发音的e结尾的动词，去e加ing      take-taking
  - 3. 以重读闭音节结尾，且末尾只有一个辅音字母，双写末尾辅音字母，加ing  
stop-stopping    permit-permitting
  - 4. 少量以ie结尾的动词，变ie为y，再加ing    lie-lying die-dying

- We will be enjoying sunshine on the beach at this time tomorrow. (enjoy)



1) 定义：在过去某一时间之前就已经完成的动作，即“过去的过去”。

2) 谓语动词的形式：had done

Before he came back, I had prepared supper. (prepare)

When I arrived, the police had taken him away. So I didn't see him there. (take)

(3) 将来完成时

1) 定义：在将来某一时间之前就已经完成的动作，表示“将已经……”的概念。

2) 谓语动词的形式：will have done

By the end of next year, I will have saved enough money for a house. (save)

截止明年年底，我将已经存了足够的钱买房子。

❖ 与完成时态连用的时间状语、句型：

(1) 与完成时态连用的时间状语

① 现在完成时常与 so far, never, recently, lately, before 等不明确时间状语连用。

② 现在完成时常与 since 连用：

a) since+过去的时间点；句子用现在完成时

b) since+从句 (从句一般过去时；主句用现在完成时)

③ 现在完成时常与“in/over/during the past/last 时间段”连用。

④ for+时间段：表持续一段时间，通常和完成时连用。

⑤ “四大金刚”的用法：

|                       |   |                                           |
|-----------------------|---|-------------------------------------------|
| by/up to/till/until + | { | 现在的时间(now)，该句用现在完成时                       |
|                       |   | 过去的时间(如 yesterday, last month 等)，该句用过去完成时 |
|                       |   | 将来的时间(如 next month 等)，该句用将来完成时            |

1. So far this year we \_\_\_\_\_ a fall in house prices by between 5 and 10 percent. (D)

A. saw

B. see

C. had seen

D. have seen

2. Up to now, the program \_\_\_\_\_ thousands of children who would otherwise have died. (D)

A. would save

B. saves

C. had saved

D. has saved

3. In the past few years, great changes \_\_\_\_\_ in my hometown. (A)

A. have taken place

B. had taken place

C. took place

D. are taking place

## (2) 与完成时态连用的句型

## ① 一见钟情情的用法:

Hardly+had+主语+done+...+when+主语+谓语 (did)...

Scarcely+had+主语+done+...when+主语+谓语 (did)...

No sooner+had+主语+done+...than+主语+谓语 (did)...

## 1. Hardly \_\_\_\_\_ home when he \_\_\_\_\_ a loud cry. (B)

A. has he arrived; heard

B. had he arrived; heard

C. he had arrived; heard

D. he has arrived; heard

## 2. No sooner \_\_\_\_\_ the news \_\_\_\_\_ they rushed onto the street. (B)

A. have they heard; when

B. had they heard; than

C. they have heard; when

D. they had heard; than

## ② by the time 的用法 “到……时候”:

by the time+从句 (从句用 一般过去时), 主句用 过去完成时。by the time+从句 (从句用 一般现在时表将来), 主句用 将来完成时。

## 1. By the time she arrived, he \_\_\_\_\_ all the cleaning work. (C)

A. has finished

B. finished

C. had finished

D. finishes

## 2. By the time you graduate from the college, you \_\_\_\_\_ the expertise for your job. (B)

A. will gain

B. will have gained

C. gain

D. gained

③ 主语+am/is/are+the+形容词最高级/序数词+n.+that 从句 (从句用 现在完成时)主语+was/were+the+形容词最高级/序数词+n.+that 从句 (从句用 过去完成时)1. *Harry Potter* is the most interesting novel that I have read. (read)2. That was the first time that I had visited (visit) the Great Wall.

## ❖ 完成时与完成进行时的区别

① 完成时: 强调到截止时间动作已经完成, 常译为“已经”。② 完成进行时: 强调到截止时间动作未完成, 且还将持续下去, 常译为“一直”。

例:

1. He has prepared supper. Let's enjoy it. (prepare)2. He has been preparing the meal for 2 hours, but he still needs some time to get it ready.  
(prepare)

小练笔

完成时态综合练习。

1. I \_\_\_\_\_ an application to the club, so I'm waiting for the reply. (C)  
A. am writing                  B. write                  C. have written                  D. was writing
2. I \_\_\_\_\_ a chance to write them into a report so far. (B)  
A. didn't have                  B. haven't had                  C. hadn't had                  D. won't have
3. The number of smokers \_\_\_\_\_ since January 2012. (D)  
A. are dropping                  B. is dropping                  C. have dropped                  D. has dropped
4. I hate moving. We \_\_\_\_\_ four moves during the past three years. (D)  
A. have                  B. will have                  C. are having                  D. have had
5. China's high-speed railways \_\_\_\_\_ from 9,000 to 25,000 kilometers in the past few years. (B)  
A. are growing                  B. have grown                  C. will grow                  D. had grown
6. He \_\_\_\_\_ great changes since he took over the position. (C)  
A. will make                  B. had made                  C. has made                  D. made
7. —Did you catch the first bus this morning?  
—No. It \_\_\_\_\_ the stop before I got there. (D)  
A. leaves                  B. left                  C. has left                  D. had left
8. No sooner \_\_\_\_\_ the plane \_\_\_\_\_ he began to work. (B)  
A. he had got off; when                  B. had he got off; than  
C. did he get off; than                  D. he got off; when
9. She \_\_\_\_\_ an essay during the past 20 minutes. How excellent she is! (C)  
A. finished                  B. finishes  
C. has finished                  D. has been finishing
10. She \_\_\_\_\_ on the essay for 20 minutes, but she has only written about 100 words. (B)  
A. has worked                  B. has been working  
C. worked                  D. will have worked

## 二、语态

(一) 定义：指的是主语与谓语动词之间的关系，主语是动作的发出者即为 主动语态，主语是动作的承受者即为 被动语态。

(二) 形式：被动语态的基本构成形式为“be+及物动词的过去分词”。以 make 为例：

| 时态 | 一般式<br>(be made)   | 进行式<br>(be being made) | 完成式<br>(have been made) |
|----|--------------------|------------------------|-------------------------|
| 现在 | am/is are made     | am/is/are being made   | has/have been made      |
| 过去 | was/were made      | was/were being made    | had been made           |
| 将来 | shall/will be made | will be being made     | will have been made     |

特别提示：被动语态的否定式是在其构成形式中的第一个 be/情/助后加 not，或用简略形式：isn't, aren't, wasn't, weren't, hasn't, haven't, won't.

句子主动语态变为被动语态

- ①宾语变为主语
- ②谓语由主动态变为对应时态下的被动语态
- ③由 by+主语引出被动语态谓语动作的发出者(可省略)

将下列句子变为被动语态:

1. I cleaned the room yesterday.  
The room was cleaned by me yesterday.
2. She has handed in her paper.  
Her paper has been handed in by her
3. The teacher is criticizing the naughty boy.  
The naughty boy is being criticized by the teacher.
4. We will hold a sports meeting next week.  
A sports meeting will be held by us next week.

### (三) 特殊用法:

1. 无被动的动词或词组，如：happen, take place, occur, break out, belong to, consist of, remain 等。
2. 当句子主语为名词且指物时，在 need, want, require, deserve 的后面，可用 to be done/doing 主动表被动；be worth 后用 doing 主动表被动。
3. 某些动词，当表示物体特性时，不用被动语态，如 write, feel, sell, wash 等。
4. 常用被动句型

It be said/reported/estimated+that 从句. 据说/报道/估计……



被动语态综合练习。

- I went to the cinema to watch the film *Nightmare*. I think it's worth \_\_\_\_\_. (C)  
A. watch  
B. to watch  
C. watching  
D. to watching
- The essay \_\_\_\_\_ five paragraphs and each covers a unique theme. (A)  
A. consists of  
B. consisted of  
C. is consisted of  
D. will be consisted of
- I came home but found that nothing \_\_\_\_\_ in the fridge. (B)  
A. remains  
B. remained  
C. is remained  
D. was remained



4. This kind of cloth \_\_\_\_\_ easily. (A)  
A. washes  
B. is washed  
C. has washed  
D. had been washed
5. Books written by Mo Yan \_\_\_\_\_ well. And they \_\_\_\_\_ out yesterday. (A)  
A. sell; were sold  
B. sold; sold  
C. are sold; were sold  
D. sell; are sold
6. If ice \_\_\_\_\_, it melts(融化). (C)  
A. heat  
B. heated  
C. is heated  
D. will be heated
7. Pearls and shells \_\_\_\_\_ as money in ancient times. (C)  
A. used  
B. use  
C. were used  
D. were being used
8. These papers \_\_\_\_\_ to the headmaster next Monday. (B)  
A. will be handing  
B. will be handed  
C. will hand  
D. is handed
9. I didn't receive your call at 10 p.m. last night, because my phone \_\_\_\_\_ then at the shop. (C)  
A. is repaired  
B. was repaired  
C. was being repaired  
D. repaired
10. Before I arrived at her home, the house \_\_\_\_\_ well enough for a party. (C)  
A. has been decorated  
B. was decorated  
C. had been decorated  
D. will have been decorated

## 第五节 虚拟语气

### 一、定义

表示与事实不相符的假设，或不太可能实现的事；此外也可表达说话人的主观愿望、建议等。

### 二、具体内容：

#### (一) if 引导的非真实条件句

##### 1. 主从句虚拟时间一致：

|        | if 从句谓语                        | 主句谓语                     |
|--------|--------------------------------|--------------------------|
| 对过去的虚拟 | <u>had done</u>                | <u>w/s/m/c have done</u> |
| 对现在的虚拟 | <u>did</u> (be 用 <u>were</u> ) | <u>w/s/m/c do</u>        |
| 对将来的虚拟 | <u>should do</u>               |                          |
|        | <u>were to do</u>              |                          |
|        | <u>did</u> (be 用 <u>were</u> ) |                          |

1. 如果我昨天没生病，我就会参加讲座。(be; attend)

If I hadn't been ill yesterday, I would attend the lecture.

2. 如果我是 Mary，我会利用这个机会。(be; take)

If I were Mary, I would take advantage of this opportunity.

3. 如果明天他来，我就告诉他事实。(come; tell)

If he should come/were to come/came tomorrow, I would tell him the truth.

4. 如果你昨天多穿点衣服，你昨天就不会感冒。(wear; catch)

If you had worn more clothes yesterday, you wouldn't have caught a cold.

5. 如果待会儿他迟到了，老师就会惩罚他。(arrive; punish)

If he should arrive/were to arrive/arrived late, the teacher would punish him.

##### 2. 混合虚拟（即主从句虚拟时间不一致）：

做题方法：主随主变，从随从变

1. If he \_\_\_\_\_ his legs yesterday, he \_\_\_\_\_ with us now. (A)

A. hadn't hurt; would go

B. hadn't hurt; would have gone

C. didn't hurt; would go

D. didn't hurt; would have gone

2. If I \_\_\_\_\_ you, I \_\_\_\_\_ with him last night. (C)

A. am; went

B. were; would go

C. were; would have gone

D. was; would have gone

##### 3. 虚拟倒装（重难点）：

在 if 所引导的非真实条件句中，可以把从句中的 were/should/had 提到从句的主语前，同时去掉 if，其他不变。即：Were/Should/Had+主语+剩余谓语……。

- \_\_\_\_\_ she a man, she might be elected president. (B)  
A. If were                      B. Were                      C. Be                      D. Is
- \_\_\_\_\_ no gravity, there would be no air around the earth. (B)  
A. There were                      B. Were there                      C. There was                      D. Was there



综合练习。

- The party was great. But \_\_\_\_\_ so many people, I would have enjoyed it more. (B)  
A. if there were not                      B. if there hadn't been  
C. were there not                      D. hadn't there been
- If he were not so busy yesterday, he \_\_\_\_\_ to the meeting. (D)  
A. came                      B. will come  
C. would come                      D. would have come
- \_\_\_\_\_ their help, we wouldn't have succeeded. (B)  
A. Hadn't been for                      B. Had it not been for  
C. It hadn't been for                      D. Had not it been for
- What a pity! Had he arrived earlier, he \_\_\_\_\_ the performance. (A)  
A. wouldn't have missed                      B. wouldn't miss  
C. hasn't missed                      D. hadn't missed
- Had you followed the doctor's advice, you \_\_\_\_\_ better now. (B)  
A. would have felt                      B. would feel  
C. will feel                      D. are feeling

## (二) 从句谓语用 (should) do 表虚拟的情况:

主动: (should) do

被动: (should) be done

否定: (should) not do/(should) not be done

- 1) **四类词:** 表示决定、命令、建议、要求的词 (名词、动词或形容词) 所引导的名词性从句中

决定: decide

命令: order, command

建议: urge (urgent), advise (advice/advisable), suggest (suggestion), propose (proposal), recommend

要求: demand, desire, insist, require, request, ask

- He demands that he (should) know everything about the accident. (know)
- The prisoner insists that he is innocent and that he (should) be set free right now. (be; set)



- 好老师教育四川分校·英语教研组  
第 169 页 / 共 280 页

## 第六节 三大从句

### 一、定语从句

(一) 定义：在复合句中，修饰某一名词或代词的从句，称为定语从句，也叫形容词性从句。

(二) 结构三要素：定语从句，先行词，关系词

1. 先行词：被定语从句修饰限定的部分
2. 关系词：引导定语从句且替代先行词在从句中充当成分
  - (1) 关系代词：who, whom, that, whose, which, as
  - (2) 关系副词：when, where, why
3. 从句：从关系词开始到第二个谓语之前/标点符号截止

找出下列定语从句的三要素：

1. The boy who is playing basketball is from our class.

先行词：the boy

关系词：who

定语从句：who is playing basketball

2. Football is the game which is liked by most boys.

先行词：the game

关系词：which

定语从句：which is liked by most boys

3. Please find a room that is big enough for us to live in.

先行词：a room

关系词：that

定语从句：that is big enough for us to live in

(三) 分类与区别：

1. 限制性定语从句
2. 非限制性定语从句

| 区别    | 限定从    | 非限定从              |
|-------|--------|-------------------|
| 有无“,” | 无      | 有                 |
| 关系词   | 9个     | 9-2(不用 that, why) |
| 先行词   | 名词, 代词 | 名词, 代词, 整个主句      |

判断下列描述是否正确，正确标注 T，错误标注 F。

1. Laughter is the sun, that drives winter from human face. 从句中, that 用法正确。( F )
2. This is the present that he gave me for my birthday. 该句是非限制性定语从句。( F )
3. I, who am your best friend, will always support you. 该句是非限制性定语从句。( T )

(四) 关系代词的用法

1. 关系代词 who, whom, whose, which, that 的用法

| 从句缺成分<br>先行词 关系代词 | 主语         | 宾语            | 定语    |
|-------------------|------------|---------------|-------|
| 指人                | who/that   | whom/that/省略  | whose |
| 指物                | which/that | which/that/省略 | whose |

❖ 定语从句中，关系代词 whose+名词=the+n.+of whom/which; of whom/which+the+n.

1. He is not the man whom/that you can trust.
2. Do you know the girl who/that has won the first prize?
3. People who/that eat a balanced diet are healthier.
4. A dictionary is a book which/that gives the meaning of the words.
5. This is the book which/that/省略 the teacher mentioned yesterday.
6. Look at the building whose color is gray.

❖ 当先行词是以下情况，且在从句中作主宾语时，关系代词只用 that 不用 which 的情况：

- ① 当先行词是指物的不定代词，如 everything/nothing/all 等；
- ② 当先行词被序数词、最高级、the only、the very 等修饰；
- ③ 当先行词是并列结构，既有人又有物时；
- ④ 当主句是 there be 句型时。

1. Is there anything that/省略 you want to buy?
2. I still remember the people and their stories that/省略 I read on this book.
3. This was the first present that/省略 he gave me.
4. It is so far the best movie that/省略 I have ever seen.

## 2. 关系代词 as 的用法

### 1. as 的用法：

- (1) 在限制性定语从句中，as 作关系词既可指人，也可指物，在从句中作主语、宾语或表语。

一般用于：the same...as..., as...as..., such...as..., so...as...

- (2) 在非限定从句中，as 用于指代一句话，表示“正如……”；常用于以下搭配：

如：as is known to all, as is often the case, as we all know, as is said, as is reported/expected 等。

### 2. 当先行词是一句话时，as 和 which 在引导非限制性定语从句时的区别：

- (1) 位置：which 引导的从句只能位于主句的后面，as 引导的从句位置无限制；
- (2) 关系词充当从句主语时，从句谓语动词：as 后紧跟系动词，which 无限制。

1. \_\_\_\_\_ is known to us, correct ideas come from practice only. (C)

A. Which

B. That

C. As

D. Who

2. I have bought the same scarf \_\_\_\_\_ she wore yesterday. (C)

- A. which                      B. that                      C. as                      D. whom
3. \_\_\_\_\_ is reported, the earthquake has caused more than 300 deaths. (C)
- A. Which                      B. That                      C. As                      D. Who
4. He made the same mistake again, \_\_\_\_\_ annoyed his father. (A)
- A. which                      B. that                      C. as                      D. who

## (五) 关系副词的用法

| 先行词 \ 关系副词 | 从句缺成分         |                        |
|------------|---------------|------------------------|
|            | (时间、地点、原因) 状语 |                        |
| 时间类名词      | when          | when 可替换为“时间介词+which”  |
| 地点类名词      | where         | where 可替换为“地点介词+which” |
| the reason | why           | why 可替换为“for which”    |

- I'll never forget the days when=during which we worked together.
- This is the house where=in which Luxun once lived.
- Do you know the reason why=for which he left?
- Do you know the year when=in which our company was founded?
- This is the factory where=in which his father works.

❖ 当先行词是时间、地点、the reason 时，不能秒选 when、where、why，要分析先行词在从句中的成分而定。

- Harbin is the city which/that we want to visit.
- I'll never forget the days which/that/省略 we spent together in the countryside.
- Do you accept the reason which/that he gave us?



定语从句综合练习。

一、改正下列关系词。

- I prefer music who is soft and has great lyrics. which/that
- This is the very book which I am looking for. that
- The people which were under the ruins were rescued at last. who/that
- I like teachers who class are interesting and creative. whose
- This is the place that he once lived. where



## 二、单项选择题。

- \_\_\_\_\_ is known to all, too much stress can cause disease. (C)  
A. Which                      B. What                      C. As                      D. That
- They showed me the place \_\_\_\_\_ the accident took place. (C)  
A. there                      B. that                      C. where                      D. which
- Peter is the one \_\_\_\_\_ I want to see. (B)  
A. who                      B. whom                      C. whose                      D. which
- China is the country \_\_\_\_\_ I was born. (B)  
A. which                      B. where                      C. whom                      D. as
- The reason \_\_\_\_\_ she moved to New York was that she wanted to find a better job. (A)  
A. why                      B. which                      C. whom                      D. who

## 二、名词性从句

(一) 定义：名词性从句是在句子中起 名词 作用的句子。

(二) 分类：名词性从句分为 主语从句、宾语从句、表语从句和同位语从句。

(三) 从句的判定：

## 1. 主语从句

- (1) 从句+谓语……
- (2) It+谓语+……+从句 (it 做形式主语)

## 2. 宾语从句

- (1) 及物动词+从句
- (2) 介词+从句
- (3) 双宾动词+间接宾语(sb.)+从句
- (4) be+adj. (sure/glad/aware 等)+从句
- (5) think/consider/believe/suppose/make/find/feel+it+adj./n.(宾补)+从句

## 3. 表语从句

系动词+从句(表语从句)

## 4. 同位语从句

抽象名词+从句(同位语从句)

同位语从句通常位于抽象名词之后，解释说明该抽象名词的内容，常见的抽象名词有 advice, demand, doubt, fact, hope, idea, information, message, word (消息), news, order, problem, promise, question, request, suggestion, truth 等。

判定下列从句类型。

1. I am interested in what you talked about just now. 宾语从句
2. My doubt is whether he can do the job well. 表语从句
3. I have got the news that he was fired. 同位语从句
4. What has been mentioned on the meeting is quite important to us. 主语从句
5. It is important that humans work together to fight against the disease. 主语从句

#### (四) 从句的三要素

##### 1. 连接词

###### (1) 在从句中不充当成分的连接词

- ① that 本身 无实意，表明从句内容 确定。
- ② whether, if 均表示 “是否” 表明从句内容的 不确定性。  
注：名词性从句中，表示 “是否”，优先选择 whether。
- ③ as if/as though 均表示 “好像，似乎”

###### (2) 在从句中充当成分的连接词

| 连接代词            | 词义                        | 充当成分             |
|-----------------|---------------------------|------------------|
| what/whatever   | <u>(无论) 什么; ……的东西/事/话</u> | 主宾表              |
| who/whoever     | <u>(无论) 谁</u>             | 主/表              |
| whom/whomever   | 谁/无论谁                     | 宾                |
| which/whichever | 哪一个                       | 主宾表定             |
| whose           | 谁的                        | 定                |
| 连接副词            | 词义                        | 充当成分             |
| when/whenever   | 何时/无论何时                   | 时间状语             |
| where/wherever  | …的地方/无论……的地方              | 地点状语             |
| how             | <u>怎样; 多么……</u>           | <u>方式状语、程度状语</u> |
| why             | 为什么                       | 原因状语             |
| because         | 因为                        | 原因状语             |

1. The fact is \_\_\_\_\_ we don't know the person well. (B)  
A. what                      B. that                      C. whether                      D. who
2. He kept silent, so I don't know \_\_\_\_\_ he agreed or not. (C)  
A. what                      B. that                      C. whether                      D. which
3. Generally speaking, \_\_\_\_\_ we have seen is more believable than what we have been told. (A)  
A. what                      B. that                      C. which                      D. why
4. We haven't discussed \_\_\_\_\_ we are going to place our new furniture. (C)  
A. what                      B. which                      C. where                      D. why
5. I just wonder \_\_\_\_\_ is in charge of the company. (B)  
A. what                      B. who                      C. why                      D. when

6. The how-to book can be helpful to \_\_\_\_\_ wants to do the job. (B)

A. who                      B. whoever                      C. which                      D. what

### (3) 语序

名词性从句均使用 陈述 语序，即主语在前，谓语在后。

- ① 连接词(不作主语)+主语+谓语+其他  
② 连接词(作主语)+谓语+其他  
③ 感叹句语序: what+(a/an)+adj.+n.+主谓.../How+adj./adv.+主谓...

1. Jim, do you know \_\_\_\_\_? (D)

A. when will we set off                      B. where is the library  
C. how did she succeed                      D. what they have discussed

2. These workers know well \_\_\_\_\_. (C)

A. where can they find fresh water                      B. how can they operate the machine  
C. what may lead to mechanical breakdown                      D. when can they get a pay rise

3. You just can't imagine \_\_\_\_\_. (B)

A. what beautiful the park is                      B. how beautiful the park is  
C. what a beautiful is it                      D. how beautiful is the park

### 1) 时态

名词性从句的时态遵循 主现从需，主过从过，即主句是现在时态时，从句的时态可以根据句意需要选用相应时态；主句是过去时态时，从句也根据句意使用过去时态中的某一时态（一般过去时/过去进行时/过去将来时/过去完成时）。如果从句表述的内容是客观事实、习俗谚语，则始终使用 一般现在 时。

1. Do you know when our company \_\_\_\_\_? (B)

A. founded                      B. was founded                      C. is founded                      D. was founding

2. John told me in the morning that he \_\_\_\_\_ his old friend tomorrow afternoon. (C)

A. will visit                      B. visited                      C. would visit                      D. visits

3. We have learned that light \_\_\_\_\_ much faster than sound. (B)

A. travel                      B. travels                      C. is travelled                      D. traveled



小练笔

名词性从句综合练习。

1. I'm not sure \_\_\_\_\_ I can make a profit from the business. (B)

A. that                      B. whether                      C. what                      D. which

2. The job will be offered to \_\_\_\_\_ has a strong sense of duty. (D)

A. whom                      B. who                      C. whomever                      D. whoever

3. \_\_\_\_\_ doesn't matter whether you have rich experience. (B)

- A. What                      B. It                      C. Who                      D. That
4. The reason why he was absent was \_\_\_\_\_ he had an appointment with his dentist. (B)
- A. what                      B. that                      C. because                      D. why
5. \_\_\_\_\_ seems annoying is \_\_\_\_\_ these young people litter everywhere. (C)
- A. It; that                      B. What; what                      C. What; that                      D. That; what

### 三、状语从句

(一) 定义：在主从复合句中作状语的从句，即为状语从句。

(二) 分类：状语从句可分为时间、地点、原因、结果、目的、让步、条件、方式和比较状语从句。

(三) 各类状语从句的引导词：

- 时间状语从句：when, while, as, as soon as 一……就……, before, after, till/until 直到, since 自从, not...until... 直到……才……, the minute/second/moment 一……就…… 等。
- 地点状语从句：where ……的地方, wherever, anywhere, everywhere 等。
- 原因状语从句：because, since 既然, as 由于, now that 既然, in that 因为 等。
- 结果状语从句：so...that... 如此……以至于……, such...that... 如此……以至于…… 等。
- 目的状语从句：so that 以便, in case 以防, for fear that 唯恐, lest 唯恐, in order that 为了…… 等。
- 让步状语从句：although/though 虽然, 尽管, even if/even though 即使, as 虽然, while 尽管, no matter+疑问词/疑问词 ever 无论……等。
- 条件状语从句：if 如果, unless 除非, 如果不, as/so long as 只要等。
- 方式状语从句：as, as if, how, the way 等。
- 比较状语从句：as...as... 和……一样……, than 比……更……, the+比较级+主谓..., the+比较级+主谓... 越……就越……, A is to B what C is to D. A 之于 B 就像 C 之于 D 等。

(四) 状语从句的省略

状语从句的省略需同时具备以下两个条件：

- 主句和从句的主语一致，或从句主语为 it;
- 从句谓语含有 be 动词。

省略方式：省去从句的主语和谓语中的 be 动词

If you are tired, you can have a rest there.

省略：If tired, you can have a rest there.



状语从句综合练习。

1. I recognized you \_\_\_\_\_ I saw you at the airport. (A)
- A. the moment                      B. before                      C. if                      D. although

2. You will be successful in the interview \_\_\_\_\_ you have confidence. (C)  
A. than                      B. before                      C. if                      D. so that
3. You can't borrow books from the library \_\_\_\_\_ you have a student card. (C)  
A. if                      B. when                      C. unless                      D. in case
4. We have lost contact with him \_\_\_\_\_ he left last summer. (B)  
A. when                      B. since                      C. if                      D. while
5. The young man didn't realize the importance of independence \_\_\_\_\_ he went abroad. (C)  
A. if                      B. when                      C. until                      D. because
6. \_\_\_\_\_ you have got the chance, you might as well make full use of it. (A)  
A. Now that                      B. Before                      C. Although                      D. Till
7. The man raised his voice \_\_\_\_\_ everyone in the room could hear him. (A)  
A. so that                      B. because                      C. if                      D. when
8. \_\_\_\_\_ difficult the problem may be, we must solve it. (B)  
A. No matter what                      B. No matter how  
C. No matter when                      D. No matter where

## 第二章 语篇

### Passage 1

The easy way out isn't always easiest. I learned that lesson when I decided to treat Doug, my husband of one month, to a special meal. I glanced through my cookbook and chose a menu which include homemade bread. Knowing the bread would take time, I started on it as soon as Doug left for work. As I was not experienced in cooking, I thought if a dozen was good, two dozen would be better, so I doubled everything. As Doug loved oranges, I also opened a can of orange and poured it all into the bowl. Soon there was a sticky dough covered with ugly yellowish marks. Realizing I had been defeated, I put the dough in the rubbish bin outside so I wouldn't have to face Doug laughing at my work. I went on preparing the rest of the meal, and, when Doug got home, we sat down to Cornish chicken with rice.

He tried to enjoy the meal but seemed disturbed. Twice he got up and went outside, saying he thought he heard a noise. The third time he left, I went to the windows to see what he was doing. Looking out, I saw Doug standing about three feet from the rubbish bin, holding the lid up with a stick and looking into the container.

When I came out of the house, he dropped the stick and explained that there was something alive in our rubbish bin. Picking up the stick again, he held the lid up enough for me to see. I felt cold. But I stepped closer and looked harder. Without doubt it was my work. The hot sun had caused the dough to double in size and the fermenting yeast (酵母) made the surface shake and sigh as though it were breathing. I had to admit what the living thing was and why it was there. I don't know who was more embarrassed (尴尬) by the whole thing—Doug or me.

#### 【全文翻译】

一些看似容易的事情做起来并不那么简单。当我决定给我的新婚丈夫道格做一份特别的美餐时体会到了这一点。我查阅了食谱，并且选择了一道包含自制面包的菜。因为做面包需要时间，所以道格一出门上班，我就开始做了。因为我没有烹饪的经验，就认为如果一打材料正好的话，两打一定会更好，所以我把所有材料都加了一倍。因为道格喜欢吃橙子，我就打开了一罐橙子罐头全部倒进了碗里。不一会儿，碗里的面团就变黏了，上面还覆盖着黄色的东西。意识到失败了，我就把面团倒进了外面的垃圾箱里，这样我就不用被道格嘲笑了。后来我继续准备其他的晚餐，当道格回家时，我们就开始吃米饭和科尼希鸡。

他试图享受晚餐，但是总是被什么东西干扰。他两次走到门外，说他听到了什么声音。当他第三次离开的时候，我走到窗户旁边，看他在做什么。我看到窗外的他正站在离垃圾箱三英寸的地方，用棍子支着垃圾桶盖，朝里面望去。

我走出门外，他扔掉了棍子并说好像有一个活物在垃圾桶里。他再次拿起棍子支着垃圾桶盖让我看。我觉得很冷，但我还是凑近跟前仔细去看，毫无疑问那是我的杰作。太阳照射导致面团增大了一倍，酵母发酵时让面团的表面颤抖，就好像它在呼吸一样。我不得不承认

那个“活物”是什么，为什么会在那里。我不知道整件事情令谁更尴尬——是道格还是我。

### 一、Reading and comprehension 阅读理解题

1. The writer's purpose in writing this story is \_\_\_\_\_.

- A. to tell an interesting experience
- B. to show the easiest way out of a difficulty
- C. to describe the trouble facing a newly married woman
- D. to explain the difficulty of learning to cook from books

【本题答案】A

【本题解析】本题考查主旨题。A 选项意思为“讲一个有趣的经验”；B 选项意思为“展示解决困难最简单的方法”；C 选项意思为“描述一个新婚女人面临的问题”；D 选项意思为“解释根据食谱学习做饭的困难性”，根据文章可知，作者讲述了一个有趣的故事。综上所述，该题选择 A。

2. Why did the woman's attempt at making the bread turn out to be unsuccessful?

- A. The canned orange had gone bad.
- B. She didn't use the right kind of flour.
- C. The cookbook was hard to understand.
- D. She did not follow the directions closely.

【本题答案】D

【本题解析】本题考查细节题。根据第一段第五行 “I thought if a dozen was good, two dozen would be better” 可知，如果一打可以，那么两打会更好，因此所有的东西我都用了两倍的量，说明作者并没有遵照菜谱上的去做。综上所述，该题选择 A。

3. Why did the woman put the dough in the rubbish bin?

- A. She didn't see the use of keeping it.
- B. She meant to joke with her husband.
- C. She didn't want her husband to see it.
- D. She hoped it would soon dry in the sun.

【本题答案】C

【本题解析】本题考查细节题。根据第一段的倒数第二行 “I put the dough in the rubbish bin outside so I wouldn't have to face Doug laughing at my work” 可知，我不想让道格笑话我的成果，所以她不想让她的丈夫看到。综上所述，该题选择 C。

4. What made the dough in the bin look frightening?

- A. The rising and falling movement.
- B. The strange-looking marks.
- C. Its shape.
- D. Its size.

【本题答案】A

【本题解析】本题考查细节题。根据第三段第四行 “The hot sun had caused the dough to double in size and the fermenting yeast made the surface shake and sigh though it were breathing” 可知，太阳暴晒导致面团增大了一倍，酵母使得面团的表面震动，并且像呼吸一样。因此是面团的发酵引起了垃圾桶的晃动。综上所述，该题选择 A。

5. When Doug went out the third time, the woman looked out of the window because he was \_\_\_\_\_.  
A. surprised at his being interested in the bin      B. afraid that he would discover her secret  
C. unhappy that he didn't enjoy the meal      D. curious to know what disturbed him

【本题答案】D

【本题解析】本题考查**细节题**。根据第二段第二行 “The third time he left, I went to the windows to see what he was doing” 可知，当他第三次出去的时候，我看向窗外看他在做什么，所以作者是好意她丈夫的行为，因此 D 选项“想知道是什么打扰了她丈夫”符合文章意思。综上所述，该题选择 D。

## 二、New words and expressions 生词和短语

写出下列词汇的词性及中文意思。

- |                                               |                                             |
|-----------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------|
| 1. special /'speʃl/ <u>adj.</u> 特别的           | 8. container /kən'teɪnər/ <u>n.</u> 容器      |
| 2. enough /ɪ'nʌf/ <u>adj.</u> 足够的             | 9. pour /pɔːr/ <u>v.</u> 倾倒                 |
| 3. menu /'menjuː/ <u>n.</u> 菜单                | 10. double /'dʌbl/ <u>adj.</u> 两倍的          |
| 4. surface /'sɜːrfɪs/ <u>n.</u> 表面            | 11. sticky /'stɪki/ <u>adj.</u> 黏性的         |
| 5. include /ɪn'kluːd/ <u>v.</u> 包括; 包含        | 12. shake /ʃeɪk/ <u>v.</u> 抖动; 摇晃           |
| 6. admit /əd'mɪt/ <u>v.</u> 承认                | 13. stick /stɪk/ <u>n.</u> 棍子; <u>v.</u> 粘贴 |
| 7. experience /ɪk'spɪəriəns/ <u>n.</u> 经验; 经历 | 14. breath /breθ/ <u>n.</u> 呼吸              |

写出下列短语的中文意思



- |                      |                      |
|----------------------|----------------------|
| 1. glance through 浏览 | 5. as soon as 一……就…… |
| 2. come out of 来自    | 6. as though 好像，似乎   |
| 3. take time 需要时间    | 7. get up 起床         |
| 4. pick up 捡起        |                      |

### 三、Translation 翻译

1. I learned that lesson when I decided to treat Doug, my husband of one month, to a special meal.  
【本题答案】当我决定给我的新婚丈夫道格做一份特别的美餐时体会到了这一点。  
【本题解析】本题考查时间状语从句的翻译。先翻译从句，再翻译主句。“husband of one month”译为“新婚丈夫”。
2. Twice he got up and went outside, saying he thought he heard a noise.  
【本题答案】他两次走到门外，说他听到了什么声音。  
【本题解析】本题考查简单句的翻译。从左往右翻译即可。
3. I had to admit what the living thing was and why it was there.  
【本题答案】我不得不承认那个“活物”是什么，为什么会在那里。  
【本题解析】本题考查宾语从句的翻译。宾语从句没有特殊的翻译技巧，从左往右翻译即可。

### Passage 2

As she walked round the huge department store, Edith reflected how difficult it was to choose a suitable Christmas present for her father. She wished that he were as easy to please as her mother, who was always delighted with perfume.

Besides, shopping at this time of the year was a most disagreeable experience: people trod on your toes, poked you with their elbows and almost knocked you over in their haste to get to a bargain ahead of you.

Partly to have a rest, Edith paused in front of a counter where some attractive ties were on display. “They are real silk.” The assistant assured her, trying to tempt her. “Worth double the price.” But Edith knew from past experience that her choice of ties hardly ever pleased her father.

She moved on reluctantly and then quite by chance, stopped where a small crowd of men had gathered round a counter. She found some good quality pipes on sale—and the prices were very reasonable. Edith did not hesitate for long; although her father only smoked a pipe occasionally. She knew that this was a present which was bound to please him.

When she got home, with her small well-chosen present concealed in her handbag, her parents were already at the supper table. Her mother was in an especially cheerful mood. “Your father has at last decided to quit smoking”, she said to her daughter.

#### 【全文翻译】

当伊迪斯在杂货店逛了一圈之后，她才意识到给自己的父亲选择一件合适的圣诞礼物有

多么难。她多么希望父亲就和母亲一样地容易满足，只要送给她香水，她就会很高兴。

另外，在一年的这个时间购物是非常令人不快的：人群踩着你的脚，用胳膊肘戳你，人们急匆匆地去买减价商品时，几乎会把你撞倒。

也是为了休息一下吧，伊迪斯驻足于一个很具有吸引力的领带柜台前。“这些都是真丝的”，营业员向她担保，试图打动她“它的价值是标价的两倍呢！”但是以前的经验告诉伊迪斯，领带很难令她的父亲满意。

她很不情愿地走开，然后非常偶然地，停在了一个有一小堆男人聚集的柜台。她发现那儿在卖一些质量很不错的烟斗——价钱也非常合理。伊迪斯没有犹豫太久；尽管她父亲偶尔会用烟斗抽烟，但她知道那一定可以令父亲满意的礼物。

当她到家的时候，手袋里藏着她精心挑选的小礼品，父母已经在餐桌前等她了。她的妈妈带着特殊愉快的口吻，“你的父亲已经戒烟了”。她告诉她的女儿。

### 一、Reading and comprehension 阅读理解题

1. Edith's father \_\_\_\_\_.

A. did not like present

B. never got present

C. preferred ties

D. was difficult to choose a present for

【本题答案】D

【本题解析】本题考查**细节题**。原文第一段第二句话是讲，我给父亲挑选一个合适的圣诞节礼物有多么难，我多希望父亲能够像母亲一样那么容易满足。所以，最后一个选项，伊迪斯的父亲是很难为他选到礼物的人，符合题意。综上所述，该题选择 D。

2. The assistant spoke to Edith because she seemed \_\_\_\_\_.

A. Attractive

B. interested in ties

C. Tired

D. in need of comfort

【本题答案】B

【本题解析】本题考查**细节题**。“Edith paused in front of a counter where some attractive ties were on display”这句话中 attractive 意思是有吸引力的，表明 Edith 对领带是有兴趣的。综上所述，该题选择 B。

3. Edith stopped at the next counter \_\_\_\_\_.

A. purposely

B. suddenly

C. unwillingly

D. accidentally

【本题答案】D

【本题解析】本题考查**细节题**。由原文中第四段第一句 “She moved on reluctantly then quite by chance” 可知, by chance 的意思是偶然的，它的近义词是选项 D。综上所述，该题选择 D。

4. Edith's father smoked a pipe \_\_\_\_\_.

A. when he was obliged

B. on social occasions

C. from time to time

D. when he was delighted

【本题答案】C

【本题解析】本题考查**细节题**。原文中第四段提到 although her father only smoked a pipe occasionally, 其中 occasionally 表示偶尔地，它与选项中的 from time to time 意思相近，表示不时地。综上所述，该题选择 C。

5. Shopping was very disagreeable at that time of the year because \_\_\_\_\_.

- A. customers trod on each other's toes
- B. customers poked each other with their elbows
- C. customers knocked each other
- D. customers were doing their shopping in a great hurry

【本题答案】D

【本题解析】本题考查**推理题**。因为 A、B、C 三个选项的内容，都在讲此时此刻购物不愉快的种种表现，只有 D 选项说明了，造成购物不愉快的原因。因为人们都在急着购物买东西。综上所述，该题选择 D。

## 二、New words and expressions 生词和短语

写出下列词汇的词性及中文意思。

- |                                            |                                            |
|--------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------|
| 1. department /dɪ'pɑ:rtmənt/ <u>n.</u> 部门  | 8. reasonable /'ri:znəbl/ <u>adj.</u> 合理的  |
| 2. reluctant /rɪ'lʌktənt/ <u>adj.</u> 不情愿的 | 9. present /'preznt/ <u>n.</u> 礼物; 目前      |
| 3. reflect /rɪ'flekt/ <u>v.</u> 反映; 反射     | 10. hesitate /'hezɪteɪt/ <u>v.</u> 犹豫      |
| 4. assistant /ə'sɪstənt/ <u>n.</u> 助手      | 11. pause /pɔ:z/ <u>v.</u> 暂停              |
| 5. choose /tʃu:z/ <u>v.</u> 选择             | 12. supper /'sʌpər/ <u>n.</u> 晚餐           |
| 6. quality /'kwɑ:ləti/ <u>n.</u> 质量        | 13. tempt /tempt/ <u>v.</u> 引诱             |
| 7. suitable /'su:təbl/ <u>adj.</u> 合适的     | 14. especially /ɪ'speʃəli/ <u>adv.</u> 特别地 |

写出下列短语的中文意思

1. ahead of 在……前面；领先
2. by chance 偶然
3. in front of 在……前面
4. be bound to 必然；一定会
5. on display 展出
6. at last 至少

### 三、Translation 翻译

1. She wished that he were as easy to please as her mother, who was always delighted with perfume.

【本题答案】她多么希望父亲就和母亲一样地容易满足，只要送给她香水，她就会很高兴。

【本题解析】本题考查**宾语从句**和**非限定从**的翻译。宾语从句和非限定从没有特殊的翻译要求，从左往右翻译即可。“be delighted with”译为“对……高兴”。

2. But Edith knew from past experience that her choice of ties hardly ever pleased her father.

【本题答案】但是以前的经验告诉伊迪斯，她对领带的选择很难令她的父亲满意。

【本题解析】本题考查**宾语从句**的翻译。宾语从句没有特殊的翻译要求，从左往右翻译即可。

3. When she got home, with her small well-chosen present concealed in her handbag, her parents were already at the supper table.

【本题答案】当她到家的时候，手袋里藏着她精心挑选的小礼品，她的父母已经在餐桌前等她了。

【本题解析】本题考查**时间状语从句**的翻译。时间状语从句没有特殊的翻译要求，从左往右翻译即可。

### Passage 3

A black hole is created when a large star burns out. Like our sun, stars are unbelievably hot furnaces (熔炉) that burn their own matter as fuel. When most of the fuel is used up, the star begins to die.

The death of a star is not a quiet event. First there is a huge explosion. As its outer layer is blasted off into space, the dying star shines as brightly as a billion suns.

After the explosion gravity pulls in what's left of the star. As the outside of the star sinks toward the center, the star gets smaller and smaller. The material the star is made of becomes tightly packed together. The star is so dense that a teaspoon of matter from it weighs billions of pounds.

The more the star shrinks, the stronger the gravity inside it becomes. Soon the star is very tiny, and the gravity pulling it in is unbelievably strong. In fact, the gravity is so strong that it even pulls light into the star! Since all the light is pulled in, none can go out. The star becomes black when there is no light. Then a black hole is born!

That's what we know about black holes. What we don't know is this: What happens inside a black hole after the star has been squeezed into a tiny ball? Does it keep getting smaller and smaller forever? Such a possibility is hard to imagine.

But if the black hole doesn't keep shrinking, what happens to it? Some scientists think black

holes are like doorways to another world. They say that as the star disappears from our universe, it goes into another universe. In other words, a black hole in our universe could turn into a “white hole” in a different universe. As the black hole swallows light, the white hole shines brightly—somewhere else. But where? A different place, perhaps, or a different time—many years in the past or future.

Could you travel through a black hole? Right now, no. Nothing we know of could go into a black hole without being crushed. The black hole remains a mystery so far.

Black holes are mysteries—but that hasn’t stopped scientists from dreaming about them. One scientist suggested that in the future we might make use of the power of black holes. They would supply all of Earth’s energy needs, with plenty to spare. Another scientist wondered if a black hole could someday be used to swallow earthly waste—a sort of huge waste disposal (处理) in the sky!

### 【全文翻译】

当一颗大的恒星燃烧殆尽时，黑洞就会产生。正如我们所知道的太阳样，恒星也是一个令人难以相信的炽热的熔炉，以它们内部的物质为燃料燃烧。当大多数燃料消耗殆尽，恒星也开始消亡。

恒星的“死亡”并非平静。首先是巨大的爆炸。当其外层在空间爆炸时，濒临“死亡”的恒星发出的光芒犹如十亿个太阳那么明亮。爆炸的引力吸收了恒星所剩的物质后，其外部便朝中心沉陷，恒星就会越来越小。构成恒星的这些物质会紧密堆挤在一起。恒星的密度如此之大，以至于它自身一小勺的物质，也有十亿磅那么重。

恒星萎缩得越厉害，它内部的引力就越强。当恒星变小时，其内部引力则变得令人难以置信的强大。事实上，它的引力如此强大以至于连光也被吸了进去。既然连光都能被吸进去，就没有什么物质能逃脱它的引力。没有光的时候，恒星就变成了黑色，黑洞由此产生。

这就是我们所知道的黑洞的概况。我们所不知道的是：当恒星被挤压成一个小球时，黑洞里面究竟发生了什么？它能无限地越变越小吗？这些都难以想象。

但是如果黑洞不持续萎缩，会发生什么呢？一些科学家认为黑洞是通往其他世界的大门。他们解释说，当颗恒星从我们的宇宙中消失时，它便进入了另外一个宇宙。换言之，我们宇宙之中的黑洞在另外一个宇宙中可能变成了“白洞”当黑洞吞噬了光线，在某处白洞就会闪亮发光。但是那会是在哪里呢？也许是多年前的过去或者是在未来的一个什么地方。

你能穿越黑洞吗？现在还不行。我们知道没有什么物质能进入黑洞而不被压碎。因此目前，黑洞仍然是一个不解之谜。

黑洞虽然是一个谜，但不能阻止科学家探索的步伐。一位科学家认为，未来我们可以利用黑洞的能量。它们能提供地球所需的足够能量。另一位科学家则幻想，如果某天黑洞能用来吞噬地球的垃圾，那么黑洞就会成为天空中巨大的垃圾废物处理站！

### 一、Reading and comprehension 阅读理解题

1. When the star begins to die \_\_\_\_\_.

- A. there is no fuel left in it
- B. its outer layer goes into space first
- C. a huge explosion will happen
- D. it doesn't give off light any longer

【本题答案】C

【本题解析】本题考查**细节题**。根据第二段的前面两句“The death of a star is not a quiet event”和“First there is a huge explosion”，意思是恒星的消亡并不是一个安静的事件，首先会发生的是次巨大的爆炸。综上所述，该题选择C。

2. Which of the following doesn't help produce a black hole?

- A. The gravity inside the star is very strong.
- B. The light can't go out of the star.
- C. The star becomes smaller and smaller.
- D. The dying star shines very brightly.

【本题答案】D

【本题解析】本题考查**细节题**。根据原文第三段和第四段内容可知，A、B、C 三项均是促成黑洞形成的因素，只有D项的内容：恒星的发光，是黑洞形成以前的现象，符合题意。综上所述，该题选择D。

3. The black hole \_\_\_\_\_.

- A. continues becoming smaller and smaller all the time
- B. goes into another universe and becomes a white hole
- C. can pull in everything we know of in the world
- D. will appear at another place at a different time

【本题答案】C

【本题解析】本题考查**细节题**。根据倒数第二段“Nothing we know of could go into a black hole without being crushed”可知，我们知道，没有什么在进入黑洞后不会被压碎。综上所述，该题选择C。

4. For whom is the passage most likely written?

- A. Scientists.
- B. Primary school students.
- C. Researchers.
- D. General public.

【本题答案】D

【本题解析】本题考查**推理题**。从全文用词及语气方面看，这是一篇向大众介绍的科普文章，因此是为公众而作的。所以，选项D符合题意。综上所述，该题选择D。

5. What's the best title for this passage?

- A. A New Scientific Discovery: Black Holes
- B. How Do Black Holes Come into Being?
- C. What Are Black Holes?
- D. Travel Through A Black Hole

【本题答案】C

【本题解析】本题考查主旨题。题目的选择应具有高度的概括性、强烈的针对性及一定的醒目性。首先可排除A项，因为黑洞早已不再是新鲜的话题。B、D两项只是涉及了短文的两个方面。只有选项C符合题意。综上所述，该题选择C。

## 二、New words and expressions 生词和短语

写出下列词汇的词性及中文意思。

- |                                        |                                              |
|----------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------|
| 1. burn /bɜːrn/ <u>v.</u> 燃烧           | 8. possibility /ˌpɑːsəˈbɪləti/ <u>n.</u> 可能性 |
| 2. center /ˈsentər/ <u>n.</u> 中心       | 9. shine /ʃaɪn/ <u>v.</u> 闪耀                 |
| 3. matter /ˈmætər/ <u>n.</u> 物质；问题     | 10. remain /rɪˈmeɪn/ <u>v.</u> 留下            |
| 4. disappear /ˌdɪsəˈpiər/ <u>v.</u> 消失 | 11. event /ɪˈvent/ <u>n.</u> 事件              |
| 5. fuel /ˈfjuːəl/ <u>n.</u> 燃料         | 12. imagine /ɪˈmædʒɪn/ <u>v.</u> 想象          |
| 6. gravity /ˈɡrævəti/ <u>n.</u> 重力     | 13. sink /sɪŋk/ <u>v.</u> 坍塌；下沉              |
| 7. begin /brɪˈɡɪn/ <u>v.</u> 开始        | 14. universe /ˈjuːnɪvɜːrs/ <u>n.</u> 宇宙      |

写出下列短语的中文意思



1. burn out 燃尽
2. in other words 换言之
3. use up 耗尽
4. so far 目前为止
5. pull in 吸引
6. make use of 利用
7. be made of 由……制成

### 三、Translation 翻译

1. Like our sun, stars are unbelievably hot furnaces (熔炉) that burn their own matter as fuel.

【本题答案】正如我们的太阳一样，恒星也是一个令人难以相信的炽热的以它们内部的物质为燃料燃烧熔炉。

【本题解析】本题考查定语从句的翻译。定语从句翻译为“……的”，“fuel”译为“燃料”。

2. The star is so dense that a teaspoon of matter from it weighs billions of pounds.

【本题答案】恒星的密度如此之大，以至于它自身一小勺的物质，也有十亿磅那么重。

【本题解析】本题考查状语从句的翻译。状语从句没有特殊的翻译要求，从左往右翻译即可。“dense”译为“密集的”；“billion”译为“十亿”。

3. One scientist suggested that in the future we might make use of the power of black holes.

【本题答案】一位科学家认为，未来我们可以利用黑洞的能量。

【本题解析】本题考查宾语从句的翻译。状语从句没有特殊的翻译要求，从左往右翻译即可。

### Passage 4

One of the qualities that most people admire in others is the willingness to admit one's mistakes. It is extremely hard sometimes to say a simple thing like “I was wrong about that,” and it is even harder to say, “I was wrong, and you were right about that.”

I had an experience recently with someone admitting to me that he had made a mistake fifteen years ago. He told me he had been the manager of a certain grocery store in the neighborhood where I grew up, and he asked me if I remembered the egg cartons. Then he related an incident and I began to remember vaguely the incident he was describing.

I was about eight years old at the time, and I went into the store with my mother to do the weekly grocery shopping. On that particular day, I must have found my way to the dairy food department where the incident took place.

There must have been a special sale of eggs that day because there was an impressive display of eggs in dozen and half-dozen cartons. The cartons were stacked three or four feet high. I must have stopped in front of the display to admire the stacks. Just then a woman came by, pushing her grocery cart and knocked off the stacks of cartons. For some reason, I decided it was up to me to put the display back together, so I went to work.

The manager heard the noise and came rushing over to see what had happened. When he appeared, I was on my knees inspecting some of the cartons to see if any of the eggs were broken, but to him it looked as though I were the culprit. He severely reprimanded me and wanted me to pay



for the broken eggs. I protested my innocence and tried to explain , but it did no good. Even though I quickly forgot all about the incident, apparently the manager did not.

### 【全文翻译】

愿意承认自己的错误是大多数人所钦佩的品质。有时候说出简单的一句“我错了”极其艰难，然而说“我错了，你是对的”就更难了。

最近有个人告诉我，他在十五年前犯了一个错误。他说自己曾经是一家杂货店经理，那个店就在我家附近。他还问我是否记得装鸡蛋的箱子。然后他说起了一件事，我模模糊糊地想起了他所讲述的这件事情。

那时我大概 8 岁，我和妈妈一起走进杂货店开始了一周的购物。就在那天，在我们去往乳制品摊点的通道上，事情发生了。

那天肯定有个鸡蛋促销活动，因为我清楚地记得有一打或半打箱子的鸡蛋陈列着，箱子班放了大概有 3 或 4 英尺高。我一定是停了下来，信叹地注视着这堆箱子。就在这时，一个女士推着购物车过来，撞倒了箱子。不知什么原因，我觉得我应该把这些箱子重新摆好，于是我就干了起来。

杂货店经理听到了响声，跑出来看发生了什么事情。当他出现在我面前时，我正在跪着检查箱子，看看是否有鸡蛋破损。但是在他看来，我就是肇事者。他严厉地斥责我，并要求我赔偿所有破损的鸡蛋。我向他解释打碎鸡蛋的人并不是我，但徒劳无功。即便如此，我很快就忘了此事，而那个经理却一直记得。

## 一、Reading and comprehension 阅读理解题

1. How old was the author when he wrote this article?

- A. About 8.                      B. About 18.                      C. About 23.                      D. About 15.

【本题答案】C

【本题解析】本题考查**细节题**。根据第二段“I had an experience recently with someone admitting to me that he had made a mistake fifteen years ago”和第三段“I was about eight years old at the time”，可知当时作者八岁，这件事发生在十五年前，因此推知作者现在二十三岁。综上所述，该题选择 C。

2. Who was to blame for knocking off the stacks of cartons?

- A. The author.                      B. The manager.  
C. A woman.                      D. The author's mother.

【本题答案】C

【本题解析】本题考查**细节题**。根据第四段“Just then a woman came by pushing her grocery cart and knocked off the stacks of cartons”可知，当时一位女士推着购物车经过，把纸箱碰倒了。综上所述，该题选择 C。

3. Which of the following statements is NOT true?

- A. The woman who knocked off the stacks of cartons was seriously criticized by the manager.

- B. The author was severely criticized by the manager.  
C. A woman carelessly knocked off the stacks of cartons.  
D. It was the author who put the display back together.

【本题答案】A

【本题解析】本题考查**细节题**。原文最后一段，讲述了我被闻讯赶来的经理，不分青红皂白就严厉训斥一顿。而选项 A 讲述的是那位女士被经理训斥一顿。综上所述，该题选择 C。

4. Which of the following can serve as the best title for the passage?

- A. It's Harder to Admit One's Mistake  
B. I Was Once The Culprit  
C. I Remember An Incident  
D. A Case Of Mistaken Identity

【本题答案】A

【本题解析】本题考查**主旨题**。这篇短文讲述作者十五年前被商店，经理误解的事，十五年后经理向作者道歉。作者我们一个人为自己之前犯下的错而主动道歉是件不容易的事。综上所述，该题选择 A。

5. The tone of the article expresses the author's \_\_\_\_\_.

- A. admiration for the manager's willingness to admit mistakes  
B. anger to the manager for his wrong accusation  
C. indignation against the woman who knocked off the stacks of cartons  
D. regret for the mistake made in the store

【本题答案】A

【本题解析】本题考查**推理题**。根据原文第一段可知，作者写这篇文章，主要是想表达对当年杂货店经理肯承认自己错误的一种钦佩之情。综上所述，该题选择 A。

## 二、New words and expressions 生词和短语

写出下列词汇的词性及中文意思

- |                                           |                                            |
|-------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------|
| 1. admire /əd'maɪər/ <u>v.</u> 钦佩; 欣赏     | 8. innocence /'ɪnəsns/ <u>n.</u> 无辜        |
| 2. display /dɪ'spleɪ/ <u>v.</u> 展示        | 9. grocery /'ɡroʊsəri/ <u>n.</u> 杂货铺       |
| 3. willingness /'wɪlɪŋnɪs/ <u>n.</u> 意愿   | 10. remain /rɪ'meɪn/ <u>v.</u> 留下          |
| 4. decide /dɪ'saɪd/ <u>v.</u> 决定          | 11. neighborhood /'neɪbə,hʊd/ <u>n.</u> 邻居 |
| 5. extremely /ɪk'stri:mli/ <u>adv.</u> 及其 | 12. explain /ɪk'spleɪn/ <u>v.</u> 解释       |
| 6. severely /sɪ'vɪrli/ <u>adv.</u> 严重地    | 13. incident /'ɪnsɪdənt/ <u>n.</u> 事件      |
| 7. simple /'sɪmpl/ <u>adj.</u> 简单的        | 14. apparent /ə'pærənt/ <u>adj.</u> 明显的    |

写出下列短语的中文意思

1. grow up 长大
2. rush over 冲过去
3. come by 得到
4. as though 好像
5. knock off 撞倒
6. pay for 支付

### 三、Translation 翻译

1. One of the qualities that most people admire in others is the willingness to admit one's mistakes.

【本题答案】愿意承认自己的错误是大多数人所钦佩的品质。

【本题解析】本题考查定语从句的翻译。定语从句翻译为“……的”，“admire”译为“钦佩”。

2. On that particular day, I must have found my way to the dairy food department where the incident took place.

【本题答案】就在那天，我必须找到去往乳制品摊点的道路，在那里事情发生了。

【本题解析】本题考查定语从句的翻译。“particular”译为“特别的”；“department”译为“部门”。

3. Even though I quickly forgot all about the incident, apparently the manager did not.

【本题答案】即便如此，我很快就忘了此事，而那个经理却一直记得。

【本题解析】本题考查状语从句的翻译。状语从句没有特殊的翻译要求，从左往右翻译即可。

### Passage 5

There are three kinds of goals: short-term, medium-range and long-term goals. Short-range goals are those that usually deal with current activities, which we can apply on a daily basis. Such goals can be achieved in a week or less, or two weeks, or possible months, it should be remembered that just as a building is no stronger than its foundation, long-term goals cannot amount too much without the achievement of solid short-term goals. Upon completing our short-term goals, we should date the occasion and then add new short-term goals that will build on those that have been completed.

The intermediate goals build on the foundation of the short-range goals. They might deal with just one term of school or the entire school year, or they could even extend for several years. Any time you move a step at a time, you should never allow yourself to become discouraged or overwhelmed. You should be persistent. As you complete each step, you will enforce the belief in your ability to grow and succeed. And as your list of completion dates grow, your motivation and desire will increase.

Long-range goals may be related to our dreams of the future. They might cover five years or more. Life is not static. We should never allow a long-term goal to limit us or our course of action.

## 【全文翻译】

目标的划分有三种：短期、中期和长期。短期目标是指那些通常用来处理目前的基于天数计算的活动，这些目标可以在一周或者两周之内完成，也有可能是数月之内。需要记住的是，就像一栋楼房不会比地基更牢固一样，没有短期的目标，长期目标也不会实现。对于短期目标的完成，我们应该计划特定的时刻表，然后在完成这些目标的基础之上增加新的目标。

中期目标是基于短期目标之上的。中期目标可能是指一个学期或者整个学年的时间，也可能延长到几年。无论何时，每当你前进步的时候，你都不要让自己失望或者被压倒。每当你完成一步时，你应该加强对自己能力的信心，以及走向成功的信心。当你完成的计划逐步增加的时候，你的动力和欲望也会增加。

长期的目标则可能和你将来的梦想有关。他们可能涉及五年或者更长的时间。生活不是静态的，我们决不能让一个长期的目标限制我们自己以及我们行动的过程。

## 一、Reading and comprehension 阅读理解题

1. Our long-term goals mean a lot \_\_\_\_\_.

A. if we complete our short-range goals

B. if we cannot reach solid short-term goals

C. if we write down the dates

D. if we put forward some plans

【本题答案】A

【本题解析】本题考查**细节题**。由第一段第四句话“long term goals cannot amount to very much without the achievement of solid short-term goals”可知，没有坚固的短期目标的实现作基础，长期目标就没有意义。综上所述，该题选择 A。

2. New short-term goals are built upon \_\_\_\_\_.

A. two years

B. long-term goals

C. current activities

D. the goals that have been completed

【本题答案】D

【本题解析】本题考查**细节题**。由第一段结尾“Upon completing our short-term goals, we should date the occasion and then add new short-term goals that will build on those that have been completed”可知，新的短期目标要建立在已经完成的目标基础之上。综上所述，该题选择 D。

3. When we complete each step of our goals, \_\_\_\_\_.

A. we will win final success

B. we are overwhelmed

C. we will build up confidence of success

D. we should have strong desire for setting new goals

【本题答案】C

【本题解析】本题考查**细节题**。由第二段“As you complete each step, you will enforce the belief in your ability to grow and succeed”可知，当你完成了目标的每一步，你都要加强对自己能力和获得成功的信心。综上所述，该题选择 C。

4. Once our goals are drawn up, \_\_\_\_\_.

- A. we should stick to them until we complete them
- B. we may change our goals as we have new ideas and opportunities
- C. we had better wait for the exciting news of success
- D. we have made great decision

【本题答案】A

【本题解析】本题考查**细节题**。由第一段可知，一旦我们的目标确定下来，我们就应该坚持下去，直到目标实现。综上所述，该题选择A。

5. It is implied but NOT stated in the passage that \_\_\_\_.
- A. those who have long term goals will succeed
  - B. writing down the dates may discourage you
  - C. the goal is only a guide for us to reach our destination
  - D. everyone should have a goal

【本题答案】C

【本题解析】本题考查**推理题**。由全文可知 short-term goal、medium-range goal 和 long-term goal 的含义和作用各不相同，goal 只是人生奋斗的行动指南。综上所述，该题选择C。

## 二、New words and expressions 生词和短语

写出下列词汇的词性及中文意思。

- |                                      |                                       |
|--------------------------------------|---------------------------------------|
| 1. goal /gəʊl/ <u>n.</u> 目标          | 8. belief /bɪ'li:f/ <u>n.</u> 信仰      |
| 2. occasion /ə'keɪʒn/ <u>n.</u> 场合   | 9. achieve /ə'tʃi:v/ <u>v.</u> 实现     |
| 3. current /'kʌrənt/ <u>adj.</u> 当前的 | 10. ability /ə'bɪləti/ <u>n.</u> 能力   |
| 4. range /reɪndʒ/ <u>n.</u> 范围       | 11. complete /kəm'pli:t/ <u>v.</u> 完成 |
| 5. activity /æk'tɪvəti/ <u>n.</u> 活动 | 12. desire /dɪ'zaɪər/ <u>v./n.</u> 渴望 |
| 6. extend /ɪk'stend/ <u>v.</u> 延伸    | 13. entire /ɪn'taɪər/ <u>adj.</u> 整个的 |
| 7. apply /ə'plaɪ/ <u>v.</u> 应用       | 14. limit /'lɪmɪt/ <u>v/n.</u> 限制     |

写出下列短语的中文意思

- 1. build on 以……为基础
- 2. the foundation of ……的基础
- 3. deal with 处理
- 4. at a time 每次
- 5. be related to 与……有关

### 三、Translation 翻译

1. Short-range goals are those that usually deal with current activities, which we can apply on a daily basis.

【本题答案】短期目标是指那些通常用来处理目前的适用于天数计算的活动。

【本题解析】本题考查定语从句和非限制性定语从句的翻译。定从翻译为“……的”，限定从先行词为 those，从句到 activities 结束；非限定从的先行词为前面的句子。“apply on”译为“适用于”。

2. As you complete each step, you will enforce the belief in your ability to grow and succeed.

【本题答案】每当你完成一步时，你应该加强对自己能力的信心，以及走向成功的信心。

【本题解析】本题考查简单句的翻译。从左往右翻译即可。“enforce”译为“加强”；“belief”译为“信念”。

3. Any time you move a step at a time, you should never allow yourself to become discouraged or overwhelmed.

【本题答案】每当你前进步的时候，你都不要让自己失望或者被压倒。

【本题解析】本题考查简单句的翻译。从左往右翻译即可。“discourage”译为“失望”；“overwhelm”译为“压倒”。

### Passage 6

Some of the notebooks George Washington kept as a young man are still in existence. They show that he was learning Latin, was very interested in the basics of good behavior in society, and was reading English literature.

At school he seemed only to have been interested in mathematics. In fact his formal education was surprisingly brief for a gentleman, and incomplete. Unlike other young Virginian gentleman of that day, he did not go to the College of William and Mary in the Virginian capital of Williamsburg. In terms of formal training then, Washington contrasted sharply with some other early American presidents such as John Adams, Thomas Jefferson and James Madison. In later years, Washington probably regretted his lack of intellectual training. He never felt comfortable in a debate in Congress. And because he never learned French and could not speak directly to the French leaders, he did not visit the country he admired so much. Thus, unlike Jefferson and Adams, he never reached Europe.

#### 【全文翻译】

乔治·华盛顿年轻时保存的一些笔记本仍然存在。他们表明他学习拉丁语，对社会良好行为的基础知识非常感兴趣，阅读英语文学。

在学校里，他似乎只对数学感兴趣。事实上，他所接受的正规教育对一个绅士来说出奇地短暂，而且不完整。不像当时其他年轻的弗吉尼亚绅士，他没有去位于弗吉尼亚首都威廉

斯堡的威廉和玛丽学院。在当时的正式培训方面，华盛顿与其他一些早期的美国总统，如约翰·亚当斯、托马斯·杰斐逊和詹姆斯·麦迪逊形成了鲜明的对比。在后来的几年里，华盛顿可能会后悔自己缺乏智力训练。他在国会的辩论中一直感到不舒服。因为他从来没有学过法语，也不能直接和法国领导人说话，所以他没有访问这个他如此钦佩的国家。因此，与杰斐逊和亚当斯不同，他从未到达过欧洲。

### 一、Reading and comprehension 阅读理解题

1. The main idea of the passage is that Washington's education \_\_\_\_\_.

- A. was of great variety, covering many subjects
- B. was probably equal to those of most young gentlemen of his time
- C. may seem poor by modern standard, but was good enough for his time
- D. was rather limited for a president

【本题答案】D

【本题解析】本题考查**推理题**。根据文章第二段可知，华盛顿所受的教育对于总统来说是不足的。综上所述，该题选择D。

2. What does the passage imply about Adams, Jefferson and Madison?

- A. They were great persons.
- B. They were well educated.
- C. They liked to debate.
- D. They had lots of money.

【本题答案】B

【本题解析】本题考查**细节题**。根据文中 “In terms of formal training then, Washington contrasted sharply with some other early American presidents such as John Adams, Thomas Jefferson and James Madison.” 可知，华盛顿和这些总统形成了巨大的对比，华盛顿没有上过大学，所以他们都是受过良好教育的。综上所述，该题选择B。

3. The reason why Washington didn't visit France was probably that he \_\_\_\_\_.

- A. didn't really care about going
- B. didn't know the French leaders
- C. couldn't communicate in French
- D. was too busy to travel

【本题答案】C

【本题解析】本题考查**细节题**。根据最后一段中 “And because he never learned French and could not speak directly to the French leaders, he did not visit the country he admired so much.” 可知，他不能和法国领导人直接交流所以没有去过法国。综上所述，该题选择C。

4. What can we know about Washington from the passage?

- A. His lack of formal education placed him in a disadvantage in later life.
- B. He should have gone to France even though he could not speak French.
- C. He was not as good a president as Adams, Jefferson or Madison.
- D. He was an admired model for all Virginian gentlemen.

【本题答案】A

【本题解析】本题考查**推理题**。根据文中 “In later years, Washington probably regretted his lack



of intellectual training. He never felt comfortable in a debate in Congress.”可知，因为他缺乏教育，所以他很后悔。综上所述，该题选择 A。

5. Washington felt uncomfortable in Congress debates because he \_\_\_\_\_.

- A. lacked practice in public speaking
- B. felt his education was inadequate
- C. didn't like arguing and debating with people
- D. felt that the others were impractical

【本题答案】B

【本题解析】本题考查**细节题**。根据文中 “In later years, Washington probably regretted his lack of intellectual training. He never felt comfortable in a debate in Congress.”可知，华盛顿所受的教育是不足的。综上所述，该题选择 B。

## 二、New words and expressions 生词和短语

写出下列词汇的词性及中文意思。

- |                                           |                                                  |
|-------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------|
| 1. notebook /'nəʊtbʊk/ <u>n.</u> 笔记本      | 8. directly /də'rekʃli/ <u>adv.</u> 直接地          |
| 2. capital /'kæpɪtl/ <u>n.</u> 首都         | 9. education /,edʒu'keɪʃn/ <u>n.</u> 教育          |
| 3. behavior /bɪ'hævjər/ <u>n.</u> 行为      | 10. leader /'li:dər/ <u>n.</u> 领导                |
| 4. training /'treɪnɪŋ/ <u>n.</u> 训练       | 11. surprisingly /sə'rpraɪzɪŋli/ <u>adv.</u> 惊讶地 |
| 5. comfortable /'kʌmfəbl/ <u>adj.</u> 舒服的 | 12. unlike /,ʌn'lʌk/ <u>prep.</u> 不像             |
| 6. society /sə'saɪəti/ <u>n.</u> 社会       | 13. formal /'fɔ:ml/ <u>adj.</u> 正式的              |
| 7. literature /'lɪtərətʃər/ <u>n.</u> 文学  | 14. reach /ri:tʃ/ <u>v.</u> 到达                   |

写出下列短语的中文意思

- |                                   |                      |
|-----------------------------------|----------------------|
| 1. in existence <u>存在</u>         | 2. lack of <u>缺乏</u> |
| 3. be interested in <u>对……感兴趣</u> |                      |
| 4. in terms of <u>就……而言</u>       |                      |
| 5. such as <u>例如</u>              |                      |



### 三、Translation 翻译

1. They show that he was learning Latin, was very interested in the basics of good behavior in society, and was reading English literature.

【本题答案】它们显示他在学习拉丁语，对社会良好行为的基础知识非常感兴趣，还在阅读英国文学。

【本题解析】本题考查**宾语从句**的翻译。宾语从句没有特殊翻译要求，从左往右翻译即可。“be interested in”译为“对……感兴趣”；“literature”译为“文学”。

2. In fact his formal education was surprisingly brief for a gentleman, and incomplete.

【本题答案】事实上，他所接受的正规教育对一个绅士来说出奇地短暂，而且不完整。

【本题解析】本题考查**简单句**的翻译。从左往右翻译即可。“brief”译为“简短的”。

3. And because he never learned French and could not speak directly to the French leaders, he did not visit the country he admired so much.

【本题答案】因为他从来没有学过法语，也不能直接和法国领导人说话，所以他没有访问这个他如此喜爱的国家。

【本题解析】本题考查**简单句**的翻译。从左往右翻译即可。

## 第三章 语法练习

## 第一节 词性

## 1-5: CDCCD

1. \_\_\_\_\_ mother is our English teacher.

- A. Sally's and Tom's    B. Sally's and Tom    C. Sally and Tom's    D. Sally and Toms'

【本题答案】C

【本题解析】本题考查**名词所有格**。如果一样东西或人为两个人共有，则只在后一个人名后加上's。根据“\_\_\_\_\_ mother is”可知，此处指莎莉和汤姆共同的妈妈。综上所述，该题选择C。

【本题翻译】莎莉和汤姆的妈妈是我们的英语老师。

2. My schoolbag is on my \_\_\_\_\_ bed.

- A. parents    B. parent's    C. parents's    D. parents'

【本题答案】D

【本题解析】本题考查**名词所有格**。parents 父母，以s结尾的复数名词所有格直接在后面加'。综上所述，该题选择D。

【本题翻译】我的书包在我父母的床上。

3. —Who is \_\_\_\_\_ man over there?

—He's Jim Brown.

- A. an    B. a    C. the    D. /

【本题答案】C

【本题解析】本题考查**冠词**。根据“man over there”可知，此处是特指那边的那个男人，应用定冠词the。综上所述，该题选择C。

【本题翻译】——在那边的那个男人是谁？——他是吉姆布朗。

4. Jenny had \_\_\_\_\_ interview for a job, so she didn't go to \_\_\_\_\_ new shopping mall with her parents.

- A. the; a    B. a; the    C. an; the    D. an; a

【本题答案】C

【本题解析】本题考查**冠词**。第一个空表示“有一个工作面试”，此处是泛指，interview表示“面试”，是可数名词，元音音素开头，故用an修饰；第二个空表示“去新开的购物中心”，此处表示特指，用定冠词the修饰。综上所述，该题选择C。

【本题翻译】珍妮有一个工作面试，所以她没有和父母一起去新开的购物中心。

5. Your new dress is quite lovely \_\_\_\_\_ the color.

- A. beside    B. besides    C. except    D. except for

【本题答案】D

【本题解析】本题考查**介词**。beside 在……旁边；besides 除了……之外，还有；except 除了……以外；except for 除了……(物品本身的一部分)。根据“the color”可知，颜色是连衣裙的一部分，因此应用except for表示。综上所述，该题选择D。

【本题翻译】你的新连衣裙相当可爱，除了颜色不那么好看之外。

### 6-10: DAAAA

6. With the exam around the corner, all the students focused \_\_\_\_\_ studying.

- A. in                                      B. for                                      C. to                                      D. on

【本题答案】D

【本题解析】本题考查**介词**。根据固定搭配：focus on 聚焦于。综上所述，该题选 D。

【本题翻译】随着考试的临近，所有的学生都专注于学习。

7. I learn English \_\_\_\_\_ making vocabulary lists.

- A. by                                      B. in                                      C. on                                      D. at

【本题答案】A

【本题解析】本题考查**介词**。by 通过; in 在……里面; on 在……上面; at 在具体的地点。根据“learn English”和“making vocabulary lists”可知此处指“通过制作词汇表学习英语”。综上所述，该题选 A。

【本题翻译】我通过制作词汇表学英文。

8. \_\_\_\_\_ of the world's books and newspapers are written in English.

- A. Three fourths                      B. Third fourths                      C. Third fourth                      D. Three fourth

【本题答案】A

【本题解析】本题考查**分数**。“子基母序，分子大于一，分母加 s”，故用“three fourths”表示四分之三。综上所述，该题选择 A。

【本题翻译】世界上四分之三的书籍和报纸是用英语写的。

9. My hometown has developed into a modern city and it is \_\_\_\_\_ what is used to be.

- A. twice as large as                      B. twice more than                      C. the size twice                      D. larger than twice

【本题答案】A

【本题解析】本题考查**倍数的表达**。分析句子和选项可知，这里考查“倍数+as+adj.原级+as”固定结构。综上所述，该题选择 A。

【本题翻译】我的家乡已经发展成为了一个现代化城市，它是过去的两倍大。

10. \_\_\_\_\_ animals \_\_\_\_\_ plants can live without water.

- A. Neither; nor                      B. Both; and                      C. Either; or                      D. Not; but

【本题答案】A

【本题解析】本题考查**并列连词**。neither...nor...既不……也不; both...and...两者都……; either...or...要么……要么……; not...but...不是……而是……。A 选项符合句意。综上所述，该题选择 A。

【本题翻译】动物和植物没有水都不能生存。

### 11-15: CBACB

11. After the failure, Linda kept his father's words \_\_\_\_\_ mind and jumped in \_\_\_\_\_ both feet.

A. at; by

B. on; over

C. in; with

D. for; under

【本题答案】C

【本题解析】本题考查介词。keep sth. in mind 意为“把某事记在心里”; jump in with both feet 全身心投入。综上所述, 该题选择 C。

【本题翻译】失败后, 琳达牢记父亲的话, 并且全身心投入。

12. We take pride \_\_\_\_\_ offering the best service in town and playing \_\_\_\_\_ important role in boosting the economy.

A. of; a

B. in; an

C. on; a

D. about; an

【本题答案】B

【本题解析】本题考查介词和冠词。第一空为固定短语 take pride in 意为“以……自豪”符合句意; 第二空为固定短语 play an important role in...意为“在……中起重要的作用”, 所以此处应使用 an。综上所述, 该题选择 B。

【本题翻译】我们以为市民提供最好的服务为自豪, 并在促进经济发展方面发挥了重要作用。

13. —How do you study English?

—I study English \_\_\_\_\_ talking with foreign students.

A. by

B. on

C. at

D. up

【本题答案】A

【本题解析】本题考查介词。by 通过……方式, 借助; on 在……上面; at 在(表示存在或出现的地点、场所、位置、空间); up 向(较高位置)。结合后文“talking with foreign students”可知此处指通过和外国学生交谈的方式来学习英语, 应用 by。综上所述, 该题选择 A。

【本题翻译】——你怎么学英语的? ——我通过和外国学生交谈来学习英语。

14. —Did you see the new TV show “House of the Dragon”? It’s said to be \_\_\_\_\_ great fun.

—No, I’ve been busy repairing all the office \_\_\_\_\_ these days.

A. /; equipment

B. /; equipments

C. a; equipment

D. a; equipments

【本题答案】C

【本题解析】本题考查冠词和不可数名词。fun 乐趣, 享受, 抽象名词, 不加冠词。equipment 设备, 不可数名词, 无复数形式。综上所述, 该题选择 C。

【本题翻译】——你看了那部新剧《龙之家族》吗? 据说很有趣。

——没有, 我这些天一直都忙着在准备办公室设备。

15. —Is there \_\_\_\_\_ with your eyes? They’re red.

—Nothing \_\_\_\_\_ happened. I just couldn’t sleep well last night.

A. something wrong; is

B. anything wrong; has

C. anything wrong; is

D. something wrong; has

【本题答案】B

【本题解析】本题考查代词和动词。something 用于肯定句, 而一般疑问句中用 anything。排除选项 A 和 D。happen 是不及物动词, 无被动。综上所述, 该题选择 B。

【本题翻译】——你的眼睛有什么问题吗? 它们红了。

——没什么事情，昨晚上我可能没有睡好。

### 16-20: AACBD

16. Her lessons are sometimes recorded \_\_\_\_\_ because she usually makes her class \_\_\_\_\_ and interesting.

- A. live; lively      B. lovely; live      C. living; live      D. lovely; living

【本题答案】A

【本题解析】本题考查**形容词和副词辨析**。live adj.现场直播的; adv.在现场直播。lively adj.活泼的，精力充沛的。lovely adj.可爱的。living adj.活着的。第一空需要副词修饰 recorded 动词，所以选 live; 第二空需要一个形容词作 her class 的宾补，根据句意，让她的课有生气和有趣。综上所述，该题选择 A。

【本题翻译】她的课有时候是以现场直播的方式记录，因为她通常让她的课生动而有趣。

17. Before giving my opinion, I think it is \_\_\_\_\_ to look at the arguments of both sides.

- A. essential      B. artificial      C. beneficial      D. commercial

【本题答案】A

【本题解析】本题考查**形容词辨析**。essential 必要的; artificial 人造的; beneficial 有益的; commercial 商业 (化) 的。A 项符合句意。综上所述，该题选择 A。

【本题翻译】在给出我的意见之前，我认为看双方的观点是很有必要的。

18. This software was \_\_\_\_\_ developed for our work so we can't do without it.

- A. informally      B. negatively      C. specifically      D. bitterly

【本题答案】C

【本题解析】本题考查**副词辨析**。informally 非正式地; negatively 消极地; specifically 专门地; bitterly 及其，非常。C 项符合句意。综上所述，该题选择 C。

【本题翻译】这个软件是专门为我们的工作而开发的，因此我们没有它什么都做不了。

19. We all know that milk, oily fish and eggs all \_\_\_\_\_ vitamin D.

- A. approach      B. contain      C. reflect      D. subscribe

【本题答案】B

【本题解析】本题考查**动词辨析**。approach 接近; contain 包含; reflect 反思，思考; subscribe 订阅。根据句意，牛奶、油性鱼类和鸡蛋都包含了维生素 D。综上所述，该题选择 B。

【本题翻译】我们都知道牛奶、油性鱼类和鸡蛋都包含了维生素 D。

20. Given his history of injuries, there can be little \_\_\_\_\_ of him winning the race.

- A. inspiration      B. imagination      C. consideration      D. expectation

【本题答案】D

【本题解析】本题考查**名词辨析**。inspiration 鼓舞; imagination 想象; consideration 考虑; expectation 期望。根据句意，这里指赢得比赛的期望。综上所述，该题选择 D。

【本题翻译】考虑到他受伤的情况，他赢得比赛的期望渺茫。

## 第二节 句子成分

## 1-5: BBBCB

1. 在句子 The girl wants to buy a purple shirt. 中, the girl 是 \_\_\_\_\_, purple 的词性是 \_\_\_\_\_。
- A. 主语; 名词      B. 主语; 形容词      C. 宾语; 名词      D. 宾语; 形容词

【本题答案】B

【本题解析】本题考查句子成分。the girl 在句子中充当主语, 而 purple 修饰其后的名词 shirt, 故为形容词。综上所述, 该题选择 B。

【本题翻译】这个女孩想买一件紫色的衬衫。

2. 在英语中, 能够做主语的是 \_\_\_\_\_, 能够做谓语的是 \_\_\_\_\_。
- A. 名词; 副词      B. 代词; 动词      C. 名词; 形容词      D. 动词; 冠词

【本题答案】B

【本题解析】本题考查句子成分。名词、代词、动词 doing 或 to do 等都能充当主语, 而能够做谓语的只有动词。综上所述, 该题选择 B。

3. As we know, teenagers aren't allowed to smoke.

A. 主语      B. 谓语      C. 宾语      D. 表语

【本题答案】B

【本题解析】本题考查句子成分。划线部分 aren't allowed 是 be done 构成复合谓语表被动。综上所述, 该题选择 B。

【本题翻译】众所周知, 青少年不被允许吸烟。

4. My advice on how to save water was accepted last Monday. 划线部分作 \_\_\_\_\_。

A. 宾语      B. 主语      C. 定语      D. 谓语

【本题答案】C

【本题解析】本题考查句子成分。my advice 充当句子的主语, 谓语为 was accepted, last Monday 充当时间状语; on how to save water 放在主语名词 advice 之后, 修饰 advice, 作 advice 的后置定语。综上所述, 该题选择 C。

【本题翻译】上周一, 我关于如何节约用水的建议被接受了。

5. My father wants to buy a big house with a swimming pool. 划线部分在句中作 \_\_\_\_\_。

A. 状语      B. 定语      C. 宾语      D. 补语

【本题答案】B

【本题解析】本题考查句子成分。my father 充当句子的主语, a big house 充当动词 buy 的宾语, 介词短语 with a swimming pool 放在 house 之后, 修饰 house, 作 house 的后置定语。综上所述, 该题选择 B。

【本题翻译】我的父亲想要买一个带有游泳池的大房子。

## 6-10: ABBCA

6. I live near my school. So I \_\_\_\_\_ to school every day.

A. walk      B. walking      C. on foot      D. by bike

【本题答案】A

【本题解析】本题考查**句子成分**。分析句子成分可知，句子缺一个谓语，介词或者介词短语不能充当谓语，故排除C和D。谓语只能由动词充当并且动词的形式应该是谓语动词。综上所述，该题选择A。

【本题翻译】我住在学校附近。因此我每天走路去上学。

7. 选出划线部分为完整谓语的句子 \_\_\_\_\_。

A. We are singing.

B. He left his homeland.

C. I can speak a little English.

D. We have achieved our goal.

【本题答案】B

【本题解析】本题考查**句子成分**。A选项谓语为are singing; B选项谓语为left; C选项谓语为can speak; D选项谓语为have achieved。综上所述，该题选择B。

8. We saw the boy playing basketball on the playground just now. 划线部分在句中作 \_\_\_\_\_。

A. 宾语

B. 宾语补足语

C. 状语

D. 谓语

【本题答案】B

【本题解析】本题考查**句子成分**。playing basketball作the boy的宾语补足语。综上所述，该题选择B。

【本题翻译】我们刚刚在操场上看到那个男孩在打篮球。

9. I didn't feel awkward at all. 划线部分在句中作 \_\_\_\_\_。

A. 谓语

B. 状语

C. 表语

D. 宾语

【本题答案】C

【本题解析】本题考查**句子成分**。feel为“感觉”，属于系动词，awkward在系动词之后，为表语。综上所述，该题选择C。

【本题翻译】我一点也不感觉到尴尬。

10. Birthday cake can bring good luck to the birthday person. 划线部分在句中作 \_\_\_\_\_。

A. 宾语

B. 状语

C. 定语

D. 谓语

【本题答案】A

【本题解析】本题考查**句子成分**。can bring在句子中充当谓语，good luck在bring后充当句子的宾语。综上所述，该题选择A。

【本题翻译】生日蛋糕能够给过生日的人带来好运。

#### 11-15: CCDCB

11. People in different countries eat different foods. 划线部分在句中作 \_\_\_\_\_。

A. 宾语

B. 状语

C. 定语

D. 谓语

【本题答案】C

【本题解析】本题考查**句子成分**。主语为people，谓语为eat，宾语为different foods，而in different countries为介词短语充当people的后置定语。综上所述，该题选择C。

【本题翻译】不同国家的人吃不同的食物。



12. She often \_\_\_\_\_ a bike to school.

- A. by                      B. on                      C. rides                      D. riding

【本题答案】C

【本题解析】本题考查**句子成分**。分析句子成分可知，句子缺一个谓语，介词不能充当谓语，故排除 A 和 B。谓语只能由动词充当并且动词的形式应该是谓语动词。综上所述，该题选择 C。

【本题翻译】她通常骑自行车去上学。

13. I worked as a guide at the Natural History Museum. 划线部分在句中作 \_\_\_\_\_。

- A. 表语                      B. 宾语                      C. 定语                      D. 状语

【本题答案】D

【本题解析】本题考查**句子成分**。分析句子成分，I 为主语，worked as 为动词短语充当谓语，a guide 为宾语，at the Natural History Museum 为地点状语。综上所述，该题选择 D。

【本题翻译】我在自然历史博物馆当导游。

14. Doing housework teaches children how to look after themselves. 划线部分在句中作 \_\_\_\_\_。

- A. 定语                      B. 状语                      C. 宾语                      D. 宾补

【本题答案】C

【本题解析】本题考查**句子成分**。teach 是双宾动词，其后跟间宾 (sb.) 和直宾 (sth.)，故 children 后跟直宾。综上所述，该题选择 C。

【本题翻译】做家务教会孩子们如何照顾他们自己。

15. Eating too much is bad for your health. 划线部分在句中作 \_\_\_\_\_。

- A. 表语                      B. 主语                      C. 宾语                      D. 谓语

【本题答案】B

【本题解析】本题考查**句子成分**。本题是动词作主语，变成 doing 的形式，故 eating too much 作主语；谓语动词为 is, bad 充当表语。综上所述，该题选择 B。

【本题翻译】吃太多对你的健康有害。

#### 16-20: CABBD

16. The Dragon Boat Festival is an important day in our country. On that day we can have some \_\_\_\_\_ food like zongzi.

- A. impossible                      B. surprised                      C. traditional                      D. personal

【本题答案】C

【本题解析】本题考查**形容词词义辨析**。impossible 不可能的; surprised 感到惊讶的; traditional 传统的; personal 个人的。根据句意，此处表达“吃传统食物”。综上所述，该题选择 C。

【本题翻译】在我们国家，端午节是很重要的一天。在那天我们可以吃一些像粽子一样的传统食物。

17. This green sweater fits me well. That's \_\_\_\_\_ what I want. I'll take it.

- A. exactly                      B. finally                      C. nearly                      D. mainly

【本题答案】A



【本题解析】本题考查**副词词义辨析**。exactly 的确, 确切地; finally 最终; nearly 几乎; mainly 主要地。本题表示“那就是我想要的”, exactly 符合句意。综上所述, 该题选择 A。

【本题翻译】这件绿色毛衣很适合我。那就是我想要的, 我要了。

18. There is no quicker way to learn a language successfully. Within a short period, you might not see \_\_\_\_\_.

- A. process                      B. progress                      C. produce                      D. product

【本题答案】B

【本题解析】本题考查**名词词义辨析**。process 流程, 进程; progress 进步; produce 农产品; product 产品。根据句意表示“学语言没有更快的方式。短时间看不到进步”。综上所述, 该题选择 B。

【本题翻译】成功学习语言没有更快的方式了。在短时间之内, 你或许看不到进步。

19. \_\_\_\_\_ his sister's laziness, he is very hard-working.

- A. In control of                      B. In contrast to                      C. In face of                      D. In front of

【本题答案】B

【本题解析】本题考查**介词短语辨析**。in control of 控制; in contrast of 与……相反; in face of 面对; in front of 在……前面。根据句意, 前面姐姐的懒惰和他的努力形成对比关系。综上所述, 该题选择 B。

【本题翻译】与他姐姐的懒惰相反, 他真的非常努力。

20. Frank, a promising young man with ambition, will \_\_\_\_\_ his position as chairman.

- A. take in                      B. take off                      C. take over                      D. take up

【本题答案】D

【本题解析】本题考查**动词短语辨析**。take in 理解; take off 起飞, 脱下; take over 接管; take up 占据, 开始从事。根据空格后内容可知, Frank 将会从事主席工作。综上所述, 该题选择 D。

【本题翻译】弗兰克是一个有抱负有前途的年轻人, 他将会出任出席的工作。

### 第三节 句子结构及句子种类

#### 1-5: CAACB

1. 选出本句属于哪种句子结构: We had chemistry in the newly built lab. \_\_\_\_\_

- A. 主+谓                                              B. 主+谓+间宾+直宾  
C. 主+谓+宾                                              D. 主+谓+宾+宾补

【本题答案】C

【本题解析】本题考查**句子结构**。分析句子成分可知, we 在句子中充当主语, had 充当谓语, chemistry 充当宾语。综上所述, 该题选择 C。

【本题翻译】我们在新建的实验室里上化学课。

2. 选出本句属于哪种句子结构: Mr. Wu gave me a book. \_\_\_\_\_

- A. 主+谓+间宾+直宾                                              B. 主+系+表  
C. 主+谓+宾                                              D. 主+谓+宾+宾补

【本题答案】A

【本题翻译】吴先生给了我一本书。

- 【本题答案】** A

【本题翻译】她的脸变红了。

- 【本题答案】 C

【本题翻译】那些甜蜜的夏日记忆是关于安静的小溪、树木和绿茵。

- 【本题答案】 B

【本题翻译】我在学校等他。

【本题答案】 D

【本题翻译】杜甫在他的诗中向我们展示了他的关怀和野心。

- 好老师教育四川分校·英语教研组  
第 206 页 / 共 280 页

【本题翻译】我给我的弟弟一本书。

8. 选出本句属于哪种句子结构: Could you tell us how to keep healthy?

A. 主+系+表  
B. 主+谓+宾语+宾补  
C. 主+谓+间宾+直宾  
D. 主+谓+宾

【本题解析】本题考查**句子结构**。分析句子成分可知, you 在句子中充当主语, could tell 充当谓语, tell 为双宾动词, us 充当间接宾语, how to keep healthy 充当直接宾语。综上所述, 该题选择 C。

【本题翻译】你能告诉我们如何保持健康吗？

9. There no tea in the cup.

A. being                      B. is                      C. has                      D. had

【本题解析】本题考查 **there be 句型**。There be...这里有……；除了可以用 be 动词以外，还可以使用一些表示状态的动词，如 live、stand、appear、exist 等。综上所述，该题选择 B。

【本题翻译】杯子里没有茶。

10. beautiful the scenery in Xinjiang is!

A. What a                      B. How a                      C. What                      D. How

【本题解析】本题考查**感叹句**。感叹句的句型为 what + a/an + 形容词+可数名词单数(+主语+谓语), what + 形容词+可数名词复数/不可数名词(+主语+谓语); how+形容词/副词(+主语+谓语)。综上所述,该题选择 D。

【本题翻译】新疆的景色多么美丽啊!

## 11-15: ACABC

11. \_\_\_\_\_ good advice the teacher gave us!

A. What                      B. What a                      C. What an                      D. How

【本题解析】本题考查**感叹句**。感叹句的句型为 what + a/an + 形容词+可数名词单数(+主语+谓语), what + 形容词+可数名词复数/不可数名词(+主语+谓语); how+形容词/副词(+主语+谓语)。综上所述,该题选择 A。

【本题翻译】老师给了我们多么好的建议啊!

12. — does the film *The Wandering Earth II* last?

—Over three hours.

A. How often                      B. How far                      C. How long                      D. When

【本题答案】C

【本题解析】本题考查**特殊疑问句**。how often 多久一次 (强调频率); how far 多远; how long 多久 (强调一段时间); when 什么时候。根据回答, three hours 三个小时, 故应用 how long 提问。综上所述, 该题选择 C。

【本题翻译】——电影《流浪地球 II》放映多长时间?  
——超过三个小时。

13. Work hard, \_\_\_\_\_ you will have a bright future.

- A. and                                      B. or                                      C. while                                      D. but

【本题答案】A

【本题解析】本题考查**并列连词**。and 并且, 然后, 表并列关系; or 否则, 表选择关系; while 然而, 表转折关系; but 但是, 表转折关系。根据句意, 前后句是并列关系。综上所述, 该题选择 A。

【本题翻译】努力工作, 你会有一个光明的未来。

14. Stop cutting the trees, \_\_\_\_\_ the earth will become worse and worse.

- A. and                                      B. or                                      C. but                                      D. while

【本题答案】B

【本题解析】本题考查**并列连词**。and 并且, 然后, 表并列关系; or 否则, 表选择关系; but 但是, 表转折关系; while 然而, 表转折关系。根据句意, 前后句是选择关系, 否则。综上所述, 该题选择 B。

【本题翻译】停止砍树, 否则地球会变得越来越糟糕。

15. —\_\_\_\_\_ does your father go to visit your grandparents?

—Every Saturday.

- A. How long                                      B. How much                                      C. How often                                      D. How many

【本题答案】C

【本题解析】本题考查**特殊疑问句**。how long 多久 (强调一段时间); how much 多少钱; how often 多久一次 (强调频率); how many 多少个 (修饰可数名词复数)。根据回答, every Saturday 每星期, 故应用 how often 提问。综上所述, 该题选择 C。

【本题翻译】——你父亲多久去看望一次你的祖父母?  
——每周六。

#### 16-20: DBBCD

16. We should study hard and \_\_\_\_\_ our dreams no matter what kind of difficulty we will meet.

- A. give up                                      B. take off                                      C. turn on                                      D. stick to

【本题答案】D

【本题解析】本题考查**动词短语辨析**。give up 放弃; take off 起飞, 脱下; turn on 打开; stick to 坚持。根据题干, 我们应该坚持我们的梦想。综上所述, 该题选择 D。

【本题翻译】不论我们遇到了哪一种困难, 我们都应该努力并且坚持我们的梦想。

17. Teamwork is a key \_\_\_\_\_ of the training programme.

- A. belief                      B. feature                      C. emission                      D. occasion

【本题答案】B

【本题解析】本题考查**名词词义辨析**。belief 信仰; feature 特征; emission 排放, 发出; occasion 场合, 时机。根据题干, 团队合作是关键的特征。综上所述, 该题选择 B。

【本题翻译】团队合作是培训计划的一个关键特征。

18. We clean and repair the machines before leaving work every day as a matter of \_\_\_\_\_.

- A. evidence                      B. routine                      C. virtue                      D. election

【本题答案】B

【本题解析】本题考查**名词词义辨析**。evidence 证据; routine 惯例, 常规; virtue 美德; election 选举。根据句意, a matter of routine 惯例, 家常便饭。综上所述, 该题选择 B。

【本题翻译】我们每天下班前都会对机器进行清洁和维修, 这是惯例。

19. Our newspaper aims to \_\_\_\_\_ the ideas and views of the local people.

- A. generate                      B. wander                      C. reflect                      D. decorate

【本题答案】C

【本题解析】本题考查**动词词义辨析**。generate 产生; wander 漫游, 闲逛; reflect 反映, 反射; decorate 装饰。根据句意, 我们的报纸旨在反映想法和观点。综上所述, 该题选择 C。

【本题翻译】我们的报纸旨在反映当地人民的思想和观点。

20. \_\_\_\_\_, Americans eat turkey on Thanksgiving and Chinese people have moon cakes for Mid-Autumn Festival.

- A. Obviously                      B. Surprisingly                      C. Regularly                      D. Typically

【本题答案】D

【本题解析】本题考查**副词词义辨析**。obviously 显然; surprisingly 令人惊讶地; regularly 有规律地; typically 通常, 一般, 典型地。根据后文, 通常, 美国人在感恩节吃火鸡, 中国人在中秋节吃月饼, 可知 D 正确。综上所述, 该题选择 D。

【本题翻译】通常, 美国人在感恩节吃火鸡, 中国人在中秋节吃月饼。

#### 第四节 时态语态

##### 1-5: CBBDC

1. When the sun \_\_\_\_\_ in the morning, our national flag \_\_\_\_\_.

- A. is raised, will be raised                      B. rises, will be risen  
C. rises, will be raised                      D. is raised, will rise

【本题答案】C

【本题解析】本题考查**语态**。根据句意, 第一空“太阳升起”, 太阳是自己升起的, 故应为不及物动词 rise, 无被动; 第二空根据句意, 国旗是被升起的, 所以应为词义为“举起”的及物动词, 且应为被动语态。综上所述, 该题选择 C。

【本题翻译】当早晨太阳升起的时候, 我们的国旗将升起。

2. Mr. Simpson \_\_\_\_\_ Shanghai in a few days. Shall we have a party?

- A. leaves                      B. is leaving                      C. is to leave                      D. has left

【本题答案】B

【本题解析】本题考查**时态**。由选项可看出，本题考查的是位移动词 leave 的时态。题干中“in a few days”可看出表示将来的时间；根据位移动词进行时表将来，故选 B。综上所述，该题选择 B。

【本题翻译】辛普森先生几天后将离开上海，我们要不要举办个派对？

3. Jim is not here now. He said he \_\_\_\_\_ on duty at the library this afternoon.

- A. will be                      B. would be                      C. was                      D. is

【本题答案】B

【本题解析】本题考查**时态**。根据句意及“this afternoon”可知，值班发生在将来；根据主句时态为过去时可知，从句应使用过去将来时。综上所述，该题选择 B。

【本题翻译】吉姆现在不在这。他说他今天下午要去图书馆值班。

4. The reason is that Britain's supermarkets \_\_\_\_\_ huge changes in the past decades.

- A. experiences                      B. experienced                      C. was experiencing                      D. have experienced

【本题答案】D

【本题解析】本题考查**时态**。根据题干中“in the past decades”可知，该题选择现在完成时。综上所述，该题选择 D。

【本题翻译】原因就是英国的超市在过去的几十年里已经经历了很大的改变。

5. —How soon will you finish the work?

—In a week. We \_\_\_\_\_ about 80% of the work so far.

- A. completed                      B. will complete                      C. have completed                      D. are completing

【本题答案】C

【本题解析】本题考查**时态**。根据题干中“so far”可知，该题选择现在完成时。综上所述，该题选择 C。

【本题翻译】——你们多久可以完成这个工作？

——一周以内。我们到目前为止已经完成了百分之八十了。

#### 6-10: DBADC

6. The train \_\_\_\_\_ at 10:30, so we \_\_\_\_\_ in 10 minutes.

- A. is starting; leave                      B. is starting; will have left  
C. start; will leave                      D. starts; are leaving

【本题答案】D

【本题解析】本题考查**时态**。根据句意可知，前半句是表示火车时刻表的时间，故用一般现在时表示，且 the train 是单数，谓语动词用三单；后半句根据时间状语“in 10 minutes”可知，用一般将来时，leave 是位移性动词，用现在进行时表将来，故用 is leaving。综上所述，该题选择 D。

【本题翻译】火车 10 点半开，所以我们 10 分钟后就要离开了。



7. It was the second time that he \_\_\_\_\_ in the discussion about how to solve the problem.

- A. has joined                      B. had joined                      C. joined                      D. is joining

【本题答案】B

【本题解析】本题考查**时态**。根据题干，句型为 it was + the + 形容词最高级/序数词+n.+that 从句，从句用过去完成时。综上所述，该题选择 B。

【本题翻译】这是他第二次参与关于如何解决这个问题的讨论。

8. The war has influenced numerous families since it \_\_\_\_\_.

- A. broke out                                              B. has broken out  
C. breaks out                                              D. was broken out

【本题答案】A

【本题解析】本题考查**时态和语态**。根据题干中 since 可知，since+从句，从句用一般过去时。排除 B 和 C。“break out 爆发”无被动，故排除 D。综上所述，该题选择 A。

【本题翻译】这场战争自爆发以来影响了无数的家庭。

9. To my delight, I \_\_\_\_\_ from hundreds of applicants to attend the opening ceremony.

- A. had chosen                                              B. was being chosen  
C. would choose                                              D. was chosen

【本题答案】D

【本题解析】本题考查**时态和语态**。根据句意，我被选择参加亚运会开幕式，可排除主动语态的 A 和 C。句意可知，这是在描述过去已经发生的情况，故选择一般过去时。综上所述，该题选择 D。

【本题翻译】令我高兴的是，我是从数百名申请者中被选出参加亚运会开幕式的。

10. It is \_\_\_\_\_ that an agreement will be reached soon.

- A. announce                      B. announcing                      C. announced                      D. to announce

【本题答案】C

【本题解析】本题考查**语态**。It is announced that...据宣布……。综上所述，该题选择 A。

【本题翻译】据宣布，不久将达成一项协议。

### 11-15: DCCBC

11. Rachel will have a party tonight. She \_\_\_\_\_ it since two months ago.

- A. will plan                      B. planned                      C. plans                      D. has planned

【本题答案】D

【本题解析】本题考查**时态**。根据题干 since 可知，since+过去的时间点用现在完成时。综上所述，该题选择 D。

【本题翻译】瑞秋今晚有个聚会。自两个月前她就已经计划好了。

12. —Did you hear someone knocking at the door just now?

—Sorry. I \_\_\_\_\_ to my friend on the phone.

- A. am talking                      B. talked                      C. was talking                      D. will talk

【本题答案】C

【本题解析】本题考查**时态**。根据题干“Did you hear...”和句意可知，本题应为过去进行时，表示过去某个时间点正在做的事。综上所述，该题选择C。

【本题翻译】——你刚刚听到有人在敲门吗？——不好意思，我刚刚在和我的朋友打电话。

13. Recently, the weekend before the Spring Festival \_\_\_\_\_ the biggest shopping crowds.

- A. sees                                      B. will see                                      C. has seen                                      D. had seen

【本题答案】C

【本题解析】本题考查**时态**。根据题干中 Recently 可知，应用现在完成时。综上所述，该题选择C。

【本题翻译】近年来，春节前的周末是购物人群最多的时候了。

14. —Can I have your report this afternoon?

—This afternoon? I don't think I \_\_\_\_\_ by then.

- A. will be finishing                                      B. will have finished  
C. am finishing                                      D. have finished

【本题答案】B

【本题解析】本题考查**时态**。根据 by + then 可知，本题考查四大金刚。根据句意，then 指将来的时间，故应为将来完成时。综上所述，该题选择B。

【本题翻译】——今天下午能给我你的报告吗？——今天下午？我想我到那时还完不成。

15. —I'm sure Andrew will win the first prize in the final.

—I think so. He \_\_\_\_\_ for it for months.

- A. had been preparing                                      B. is preparing  
C. has been preparing                                      D. was preparing

【本题答案】C

【本题解析】本题考查**时态**。根据题干 for months 可知，应用完成时。故排除B和D。据句意可知，是从过去一直到现在都在做准备，故选择现在完成进行时。综上所述，该题选择C。

【本题翻译】——我确定安德鲁会在决赛赢得第一名。

——我也这样认为。他都为此准备了好几个月了。

16-20: DBADB

16. The boss asked every employee to \_\_\_\_\_ a plan for the further development of their company.

- A. take over                                      B. give back                                      C. call off                                      D. draw up

【本题答案】D

【本题解析】本题考查**动词短语辨析**。take over 接管; give back 归还; call off 取消; draw up 起草。根据句意可知，应为起草一个计划。综上所述，该题选择D。

【本题翻译】老板要求每个员工为他们公司进一步的发展起草一个计划。

17. They asked me so many \_\_\_\_\_ questions that I totally got \_\_\_\_\_.

- A. confused; confused                                      B. confusing; confused



C. confused; confusing

D. confusing; confusing

【本题答案】B

【本题解析】本题考查**形容词辨析**。confusing 令人困惑的; confused 感到困惑的。根据句意, 应该是“令人困惑的问题”和“感到困惑”。综上所述, 该题选择 B。

【本题翻译】他们问了我如此多令人困惑的问题, 把我完全搞糊涂了。

18. Their team hadn't lost a game the entire season. \_\_\_\_\_, we beat them last night.

A. Nevertheless

B. Otherwise

C. Therefore

D. Moreover

【本题答案】A

【本题解析】本题考查**副词辨析**。nevertheless 然而; otherwise 否则; therefore 因此; moreover 除此之外。前一句说他们的队伍没有输掉比赛, 后面说我们打败了他们, 前后有转折关系。综上所述, 该题选择 A。

【本题翻译】他们的队伍在整个赛季都没有输掉比赛。然而, 昨晚我们打败了他们。

19. —Didn't you say sorry to him afterwards?

—I did. But he wouldn't listen to my \_\_\_\_\_.

A. gratitude

B. complaint

C. direction

D. apology

【本题答案】D

【本题解析】本题考查**名词辨析**。gratitude 感激; complaint 抱怨; direction 方向; apology 道歉。根据题干, 前文“...say sorry...”可知, 此处应为道歉。综上所述, 该题选择 D。

【本题翻译】——后来你没有向他道歉吗? ——我道歉了。但是他没有听我的道歉。

20. It is advisable to \_\_\_\_\_ some money in case of emergency.

A. set out

B. set aside

C. set about

D. set off

【本题答案】B

【本题解析】本题考查**动词短语辨析**。set out 出发, 开始着手; set aside 留出; set about 着手; set off 出发, 引爆。根据句意, 应为留出一些时间。综上所述, 该题选择 B。

【本题翻译】留出一些钱以备不时之需是很明智的。

## 第五节 虚拟语气

### 1-5: CBBDC

1. If the electric light \_\_\_\_\_ invented, people \_\_\_\_\_ in darkness during night at that time.

A. were not; could have lived

B. were not; could live

C. had not been; could have lived

D. had not been; could live

【本题答案】C

【本题解析】本题考查**if 引导的虚拟语气**。分析句子结构, 本句中 if 引导了一个非真实条件句。结合句意和“at that time”可知, 主从句都是表示对过去的虚拟, 从句谓语应用 had done, 主句的谓语应用 would/should/might/could + have done。综上所述, 该题选择 C。

【本题翻译】如果电灯还没有被发明, 那时的人们晚上就会生活在黑暗之中。

2. If I \_\_\_\_\_ near my office, I would walk to work.

- A. live                      B. lived                      C. have lived                      D. would live

【本题答案】B

【本题解析】本题考查 **if 引导的虚拟语气**。分析句子结构，本句中 if 引导了一个非真实条件句。结合句意和主句的谓语 would do 可知，该题是对现在的虚拟，故从句的谓语动词应为 did。综上所述，该题选择 B。

【本题翻译】如果我住的离公司近，我就会走路去上班。

3. Besides, it's vital that you \_\_\_\_\_ your table manners.

- A. minded                      B. mind                      C. to mind                      D. minds

【本题答案】B

【本题解析】本题考查 **should do 的虚拟**。根据题干结构 it is vital that... 可知，其后引导的从句应用 should do 的虚拟，should 可省。综上所述，该题选择 B。

【本题翻译】另外，重要的是你要注意餐桌礼仪。

4. If Tom \_\_\_\_\_ the half-cooked food yesterday, he would not be in hospital now.

- A. has not had                      B. did not have                      C. does not have                      D. had not had

【本题答案】D

【本题解析】本题考查 **混合虚拟**。分析句子结构，本句中 if 引导了一个非真实条件句。结合题干 yesterday 可知，从句是对过去的虚拟，从句的谓语应为 had done。综上所述，该题选择 D。

【本题翻译】如果汤姆昨天没有吃那个半熟的事物，他现在就不会进医院了。

5. In order to avoid traffic jams, I strongly recommend some effective measures \_\_\_\_\_.

- A. take                      B. should take                      C. should be taken                      D. took

【本题答案】C

【本题解析】本题考查 **should do 的虚拟**。结合题干主句 recommended 可知，该题是四类词（决定、命令、建议、要求）should do 的虚拟，故从句谓语动词应为 should do 的虚拟，又因宾语从句的主语 measures “措施” 与谓语动词 take “采取” 之间是被动关系，故应用 should be done。综上所述，该题选择 C。

【本题翻译】为了避免交通堵塞，我强烈建议一些有效的措施应当被采取。

#### 6-10: CDCCB

6. \_\_\_\_\_ it rain tomorrow, I should stay indoors.

- A. Were                      B. Had                      C. Should                      D. Did

【本题答案】C

【本题解析】本题考查 **虚拟倒装**。分析句子结构，本句使用了虚拟语气。本句省略了连词 if 并使用了倒装的手法，根据时间状语 tomorrow 可知从句表达的是与将来相反的虚拟语气，从句应使用 should+动词原形，可以省略连词 if 并将 should 置于句首形成倒装结构。综上所述，该题选择 C。

【本题翻译】如果明天下雨的话，我就要呆在室内。

7. It is strongly recommended that the computers \_\_\_\_\_ in teaching.

- A. will be used      B. must be used      C. are used      D. should be used

【本题答案】D

【本题解析】本题考查 **should do 的虚拟**。结合题干主句 it is strongly recommended that... 可知，该题是四类词（决定、命令、建议、要求）should do 的虚拟，故从句谓语动词应为 should do 的虚拟，should 可省。综上所述，该题选择 D。

【本题翻译】强烈建议在教学中使用计算机。

8. If he \_\_\_\_\_ his legs in the last training, he \_\_\_\_\_ the coming World Cup next month.  
 A. didn't hurt; would go in for      B. hadn't hurt; would have taken part in  
 C. hadn't hurt; would join in      D. didn't hurt; would have taken part in

【本题答案】C

【本题解析】本题考查 **混合虚拟**。分析句子结构，本句中 if 引导了一个非真实条件句。结合题干从句 last training 和主句 next month 可知，从句是对过去的虚拟，主句是对现在的虚拟；从句的谓语应为 had done，主句的谓语动词应为 would/should/might/could+ do。综上所述，该题选择 C。

【本题翻译】如果上次训练他的腿没有受伤的话，他下个月就可以来参加世界杯了。

9. \_\_\_\_\_, I'd have told you.  
 A. If I would have known it      B. If I had have known it  
 C. Had I known it      D. Should I know it

【本题答案】C

【本题解析】本题考查 **虚拟倒装**。结合句意可知，此处表示与过去事实相反的虚拟语气，谓词需要用 had done 的形式；在 if 的虚拟语气中，动词有 were/had/should 等词时，可以将 if 省略，C 项省略了 if，将 had 提前，为虚拟语气的倒装形式。综上所述，该题选择 C。

【本题翻译】如果我知道的话，我就会告诉你了。

10. It is essential that these application forms \_\_\_\_\_ back as early as possible.  
 A. are sent      B. be sent      C. will be sent      D. should send

【本题答案】B

【本题解析】本题考查 **should do 的虚拟**。根据题干结构 it is essential that... 可知，其后引导的从句应用 should do 的虚拟，should 可省。故排除 A 和 C。根据从句主语 these application forms “申请表”与谓语 “send back 寄回” 是被动关系，故应用 (should) be done。综上所述，该题选择 B。

【本题翻译】必须尽早将这些申请表寄回。

#### 11-15: BABAC

11. If I \_\_\_\_\_ harder when I was young, I \_\_\_\_\_ a university and lived a different life.  
 A. worked; would entered      B. had worked; would have entered  
 C. would worked; had entered      D. have worked; will have entered

【本题答案】B

【本题解析】本题考查 **if 引导的虚拟语气**。分析句子结构，本句中 if 引导了一个非真实条件句。结合句意和从句的 *when I was young* 可知，该题是对过去的虚拟，故从句的谓语动词应为 *had done*，主句的谓语为 *would/should/might/could+ have done*。综上所述，该题选择 B。

【本题翻译】如果我小时候更努力学习的话，我可能就会进入大学并且过上一个不一样的生活了。

12. If we \_\_\_\_\_ more time, we could do it better.

- A. were given                      B. are given                      C. is given                      D. is giving

【本题答案】A

【本题解析】本题考查 **if 引导的虚拟语气**。分析句子结构，本句中 if 引导了一个非真实条件句。结合句意和主句的谓语动词 *could do* 可知，该题是对现在或将来的虚拟，故从句的谓语动词应为 *did*。综上所述，该题选择 A。

【本题翻译】如果给我们更多的时间，我们可以做得更好。

13. The government suggests people \_\_\_\_\_ the Spring festival at their working place this year.

- A. to spend                      B. spend                      C. spending                      D. will spend

【本题答案】B

【本题解析】本题考查 **should do 的虚拟**。结合题干主句 *the government suggests people...* 可知，该题是四类词（决定、命令、建议、要求）*should do* 的虚拟，故从句谓语动词应为 *should do* 的虚拟，*should* 可省。综上所述，该题选择 B。

【本题翻译】政府建议人们今年就地过春节。

14. \_\_\_\_\_, we would have finished the work on time.

- A. Had Jim come                      B. Jim had come                      C. If had Jim come                      D. If Jim has come

【本题答案】A

【本题解析】本题考查 **虚拟倒装**。结合句子结构可知，本题是 *if* 引导的非真实条件句，B 选项少了连词 *if*，故排除 B。C 和 D 从句的谓语动词和语序不符合虚拟语气的谓语动词变化，故排除。根据题意和主句的谓语动词 *would have done* 可知，本题是对过去的虚拟，A 选项是 *if* 虚拟语气对过去的虚拟，省掉 *if*，将 *had* 放在主语前。综上所述，该题选择 A。

【本题翻译】如果吉姆来了的话，我们就能按时完成工作了。

15. The teacher made a request that all the homework \_\_\_\_\_ before class.

- A. should hand in                      B. must be handed in  
C. be handed in                      D. were handed in

【本题答案】C

【本题解析】本题考查 **should do 的虚拟**。根据题干结构 *The teacher made a request that...* 可知，其后引导的从句应用 *should do* 的虚拟，*should* 可省。故排除 B 和 D。根据从句主语是 *homework* 可知，与 *hand in* 是被动关系。综上所述，该题选择 C。

【本题翻译】老师要求所有的家庭作业要在上课前提交。

16-20: CBCCC

16. The college students decided to \_\_\_\_\_ their life to the construction of their hometown.

- A. approve                      B. cherish                      C. dedicate                      D. digest

【本题答案】C

【本题解析】本题考查**动词词义辨析**。approve 赞成，同意；cherish 珍惜；dedicate 奉献；digest 消化。根据句意可知，该题为奉献他们的一生。综上所述，该题选择 C。

【本题翻译】这些大学生决定将他们一生都奉献给他们的家乡建设。

17. Shanghai joined other cities in enforcing strict regulations on waste management, making garbage classification \_\_\_\_\_.

- A. consistent                      B. compulsory                      C. conditional                      D. controversial

【本题答案】B

【本题解析】本题考查**形容词词义辨析**。consistent 一致的；compulsory 被强制的，义务的；conditional 有条件的；controversial 有争议的。根据句意可知，此处是进行强制性垃圾分类。综上所述，该题选择 B。

【本题翻译】上海与其他城市一样，对垃圾管理实施了严格的规定，强制垃圾分类。

18. The villagers \_\_\_\_\_ the factories to stop polluting the river and it worked in the end.

- A. reacted to                      B. led to                      C. appealed to                      D. turned to

【本题答案】C

【本题解析】本题考查**动词短语辨析**。react to 对……有反应；lead to 导致；appeal to 呼吁；turn to 求助于，转向，翻到。根据句意，村民呼吁工厂停止污染河流。综上所述，该题选择 C。

【本题翻译】村民们呼吁工厂停止污染河流，最终奏效了。

19. To celebrate its anniversary, the company invited over 800 people to \_\_\_\_\_ the great ship.

- A. broad                      B. abroad                      C. board                      D. aboard

【本题答案】C

【本题解析】本题考查**词义辨析**。broad 形容词，宽的；abroad 在国外，副词；board 上船（或火车、飞机、公共汽车等），动词；aboard 在（船、飞机、公共汽车、火车等）上，副词。根据句子结构和句意，to 后应该跟动词 board。综上所述，该题选择 C

【本题翻译】为了庆祝其周年纪念日，公司邀请了 800 多人登上这艘大船。

20. Please stay in your seat when an airplane \_\_\_\_\_.

- A. takes on                      B. takes in                      C. takes off                      D. takes up

【本题答案】C

【本题解析】本题考查**动词短语辨析**。take on 雇佣，承担；take in 理解，吸收；take off 起飞，脱下；take up 占据，开始从事。根据句意，飞机起飞。综上所述，该题选择 C。

【本题翻译】当飞机起飞的时候，请坐在你们的座位上。

## 第六节 定语从句

### 1-5: BACCB

1. Laughter is the best medicine, \_\_\_\_\_ means keeping a good mood is helpful to our health.

- A. what                      B. which                      C. that                      D. it

【本题答案】B

【本题解析】本题考查**定语从句**。由句子结构可知，本题需要填一个从属连词；再判断该从句为非限制性定语从句，只有 which 符合语法结构。综上所述，该题选择 B。

【本题翻译】笑是最好的药，这意味着保持一个好心情对我们的健康是有帮助的。

2. This is the little girl \_\_\_\_\_ parents were killed in the great earthquake.

- A. whose                      B. who                      C. which                      D. whom

【本题答案】A

【本题解析】本题考查**定语从句**。由句子结构可知，此处为关系词引导的定语从句。先行词 the little girl 与横线后名词 parents 为所属关系，所以此处应为关系代词 whose 在从句中作定语。综上所述，该题选择 A。

【本题翻译】这是那个父母在大地震中死掉了的小女孩。

3. \_\_\_\_\_ was expected, he got the first place again in this mid-term examination.

- A. which                      B. That                      C. As                      D. What

【本题答案】C

【本题解析】本题考查**定语从句**。根据 as 在非限定从中的用法, as is/was expected 正如人们期待的那样。综上所述，该题选择 C。

【本题翻译】正如人们期待的那样，他又一次在期中考试得到了第一名。

4. The girl \_\_\_\_\_ you talked to at the front of the library was my friend.

- A. where                      B. which                      C. whom                      D. whose

【本题答案】C

【本题解析】本题考查**定语从句**。分析句子结构可知，空格后为定语从句。再根据定语从句缺宾语且先行词指人，故选择 whom。综上所述，该题选择 C。

【本题翻译】在图书馆门口和你交谈的那个女孩是我的朋友。

5. He came to the United States in 1914 \_\_\_\_\_ World War I broke out.

- A. which                      B. when                      C. that                      D. whom

【本题答案】B

【本题解析】本题考查**定语从句**。分析句子结构可知，空格后为定语从句。定语从句不缺主干成分并且先行词是 1914 指时间，故选择 when。综上所述，该题选择 B。

【本题翻译】他 1914 年来到美国，那是一战爆发的时间。

#### 6-10: ADBDB

6. I can't understand the reason \_\_\_\_\_ he left without saying goodbye.

- A. why                      B. that                      C. which                      D. what

【本题答案】A

【本题解析】本题考查**定语从句**。分析句子结构可知，空格后为定语从句。定语从句不缺主干成分并且先行词是 reason 表原因，故选择 why。综上所述，该题选择 A。



【本题翻译】我不能理解他没有说再见就离开的原因。

7. It is the third time that Jim has failed the driving test, \_\_\_\_\_ makes him disheartened.

A. when                      B. who                      C. that                      D. which

【本题答案】D

【本题解析】本题考查**非限制性定语从句**。分析句子结构可知，空格后为非限制性定语从句，故排除 C 选项。非限制性定语从句缺主语并且先行词为前面一句话，故选 D。综上所述，该题选择 D。

【本题翻译】这是第三次吉姆驾照考试失败了，这让他很灰心。

8. The first place \_\_\_\_\_ they visited in London was the Big Ben.

A. where                      B. that                      C. as                      D. which

【本题答案】B

【本题解析】本题考查**定语从句**。分析句子结构可知，空格后为定语从句。定语从句缺宾语且先行词由序数词 first 修饰，故选择 that。综上所述，该题选择 B。

【本题翻译】他们在伦敦参观的第一个地方就是大本钟。

9. Have you found the woman \_\_\_\_\_ purse was lost?

A. her                      B. which                      C. that                      D. whose

【本题答案】D

【本题解析】本题考查**定语从句**。根据定语从句 whose 在从句中充当定语，且前后有名词，名词之间有所属关系。综上所述，该题选择 D。

【本题翻译】你找到钱包丢失的女人了吗？

10. Emergency workers \_\_\_\_\_ stayed during the hurricane deserve our gratitude.

A. whom                      B. who                      C. whose                      D. which

【本题答案】B

【本题解析】本题考查**定语从句**。分析句子结构可知，空格后为定语从句。定语从句缺主语且先行词指人，故选择 who 在定语从句中充当主语。综上所述，该题选择 B。

【本题翻译】在飓风期间留下来的紧急救援人员值得我们感谢。

#### 11-15: ABBCD

11. \_\_\_\_\_ is known to people all over the world, Mark Twain is a great American writer.

A. As                      B. Which                      C. Whose                      D. What

【本题答案】A

【本题解析】本题考查**定语从句**。根据句子结构可知，空格后一句是非限制性定语从句。根据“as is known...众所周知”可知，该题选择 as。综上所述，该题选择 A。

【本题翻译】全世界都知道，马克吐温是一位伟大的美国作家。

12. There is a mountain \_\_\_\_\_ the top is always covered with snow.

A. whose                      B. of which                      C. it's                      D. of whom

【本题答案】B

【本题解析】本题考查**定语从句**。分析句子结构可知，空格后为定语从句，缺少连词，排除 C。先行词 mountain 指物，故排除 D。定语从句中 whose+n=the+n.+of which=of which+the+n.，由此结构可知，B 为正确结构。综上所述，该题选择 B。

【本题翻译】有一座山，山顶常年冰雪覆盖。

13. This is Tom \_\_\_\_\_ I often go to school with.

- A. who                      B. whom                      C. which                      D. he

【本题答案】B

【本题解析】本题考查**定语从句**。分析句子结构可知，空格后为定语从句。定语从句缺宾语且先行词 Tom 指人，故选择 whom。

【本题翻译】这是汤姆，我经常和他一起去上学。

14. They talked about the schools and teachers \_\_\_\_\_ they had visited.

- A. whom                      B. who                      C. that                      D. whose

【本题答案】C

【本题解析】本题考查**定语从句**。分析句子结构可知，空格后为定语从句。定语从句缺宾语且先行词 the schools and teachers 又有人又有物，所以选择 that。综上所述，该题选择 C。

【本题翻译】他们谈论了他们拜访过的学校和老师。

15. Have you bought the same book \_\_\_\_\_ I referred to yesterday?

- A. when                      B. which                      C. where                      D. as

【本题答案】D

【本题解析】本题考查**定语从句**。分析句子结构可知，空格后为定语从句。定语从句缺宾语且先行词由 the same 修饰，根据 the same...as 可知，该题选择 as。综上所述，该题选择 D。

【本题翻译】你买了我昨天提到的那本相同的书吗？

#### 16-20: ADBCA

16. Look! The traffic light is green. We can go \_\_\_\_\_ the road now.

- A. across                      B. above                      C. below                      D. against

【本题答案】A

【本题解析】本题考查**介词辨析**。across 穿过，横过；above 超过，胜过；below 在……下面；against 反对。根据句意，穿过马路。综上所述，该题选择 A。

【本题翻译】看！交通信号灯变绿了。我们现在可以穿过马路了。

17. Obviously, not every goal will be achieved, not every job will \_\_\_\_\_ a success.

- A. catch up with              B. come up with              C. put up with              D. end up with

【本题答案】D

【本题解析】本题考查**动词短语辨析**。catch up with 赶上；come up with 想出；put up with 忍受；end up with 以……结束。根据句意，不是每一个工作都是以成功结束。综上所述，该题选择 D。

【本题翻译】显然，不是每个目标都能被实现，不是每一份工作最终都会成功。

18. After staying in hospital for long, the patient was advised to go to the seaside to \_\_\_\_\_ her



health.

- A. take up                      B. pick up                      C. hold up                      D. make up

【本题答案】B

【本题解析】本题考查**动词短语辨析**。take up 拿起，从事，占据（时间、空间等）；carry up 建高（房屋）；make up 组成；占……比例；pick up 身体、心情等好转；捡起；符合句意。综上所述，该题选择 B。

【本题翻译】在医院住了很久之后，病人被建议去海边休养以恢复健康。

19. Look! What a \_\_\_\_\_ tower this is! The birds can't fly that \_\_\_\_\_.

- A. highly; high                      B. highly; highly                      C. high; high                      D. high; highly

【本题答案】C

【本题解析】本题考查**词义辨析**。high 可作为形容词表示“高的”，作为副词表示“在高处，高地”；highly 作为副词表示“非常，大量地（表程度）”。分析句子可知，第一空应为形容词 high 修饰 tower，第二空应为副词 high 修饰 fly。综上所述，该题选择 C。

【本题翻译】看！这塔多么高啊！鸟都不能飞那么高。

20. Artificial intelligence is increasingly taking over the jobs which used to be performed \_\_\_\_\_.

- A. physically                      B. artificially                      C. virtually                      D. comprehensively

【本题答案】A

【本题解析】本题考查**副词词义辨析**。physically 身体上地；artificially 人造地，虚拟地；virtually 实际上，几乎；comprehensively 全面地。根据句意，人工智能取代人类手动完成的工作。综上所述，该题选择 A。

【本题翻译】人工智能在不断地取代那些曾经由体能完成的工作。

## 第七节 名词性从句

### 1-5: BCBCC

1. Miss Sun burst into tears and ran out of the office, but no one knew \_\_\_\_\_ she was so sad.

- A. whether                      B. why                      C. what                      D. where

【本题答案】B

【本题解析】本题考查**宾语从句**。分析句子可知，空格处是宾语从句的引导词。分析宾语从句的结构可知，从句不缺任何成分，故排除 C。根据句意可知，此处指“为什么这么伤心”。综上所述，该题选择 B。

【本题翻译】孙老师突然大哭起来，跑出了办公室，但是没人知道为什么她如此伤心。

2. \_\_\_\_\_ is known to us all is that 2020 Olympic will take place in Tokyo.

- A. It                      B. That                      C. What                      D. As

【本题答案】C

【本题解析】本题考查**主语从句**。分析句子可知，空格处是主语从句的引导词，需要连词，故排除 A。分析主语从句的结构可知，从句缺主语，故排除 B 和 D。综上所述，该题选择 C。

【本题翻译】众所周知，2020 奥运会将会在东京举行。

3. \_\_\_\_\_ hasn't been decided \_\_\_\_\_ we'll go camping at the weekend.

- A. That; whether      B. It; whether      C. What; if      D. This; if

【本题答案】B

【本题解析】本题考查**名词性从句**。分析句子成分，题干有两个谓语动词，需要一个连词，故排除 A 和 C。分析句子结构可知，第二空是主语从句，句首需要一个代词充当形式主语，故为 it。综上所述，该题选择 B。

【本题翻译】还没有决定我们周末是否要去露营。

4. The trouble is \_\_\_\_\_ we are short of tools.

- A. what      B. why      C. that      D. which

【本题答案】C

【本题解析】本题考查**表语从句**。分析句子，空格是表语从句的引导词。分析句子结构可知，从句不缺成分，且句意完整。综上所述，该题选择 C。

【本题翻译】问题就是我们缺少工具。

5. All students want to know \_\_\_\_\_ they will pass the exam or not.

- A. why      B. that      C. whether      D. which

【本题答案】C

【本题解析】本题考查**宾语从句**。空格后为宾语从句；由 or not 和句意可知，空格处用 whether。综上所述，该题选择 C。

【本题翻译】所有学生都想知道他们是否能通过考试。

#### 6-10: ACAAD

6. Mother asked me \_\_\_\_\_.

- A. what was wrong with me      B. what is wrong with me  
C. what wrong was with me      D. what wrong is with me

【本题答案】A

【本题解析】本题考查**宾语从句**。分析句子结构，空格是 ask 引导的宾语从句，宾语从句的语序为陈述语序，故排除 C 和 D。根据主句前谓语动词 asked 为一般过去时，故从句也用过去时。综上所述，该题选择 A。

【本题翻译】母亲问我我怎么了？

7. By mistake, his ship took him to \_\_\_\_\_ is now called Darwin.

- A. who      B. which      C. what      D. where

【本题答案】C

【本题解析】本题考查**宾语从句**。分析句子，空格是宾语从句的引导词。分析句子结构可知，从句缺主语，排除 D。根据句意，排除 A 和 C。综上所述，该题选择 C。

【本题翻译】他的船把他误带到了一个被叫做达尔文的地方。

8. The news \_\_\_\_\_ these products will no longer be available in the market must be true.

- A. that      B. in which      C. whether      D. for which

【本题答案】A

【本题解析】本题考查**同位语从句**。分析句子结构，该题是连接词引导的同位语从句；且从句不缺成分和句意，故选 that。综上所述，该题选择 A。

【本题翻译】市场上再也买不到这些产品的这个消息一定是真的。

9. The policeman asked him \_\_\_\_\_ in a serious voice.

A. where he lived

B. where did he live

C. where he lives

D. where does he live in

【本题答案】A

【本题解析】本题考查**名词性从句**。由“ask sb. sth.询问某人某事”可知，该句为宾语从句。根据宾语从句的语序为陈述语序可知，该题排除 B 和 D。再根据主句的时态为一般过去时，从句也应该用过去的时态。综上所述，该题选择 A。

【本题翻译】警察用很严肃的声音问他他住在哪里。

10. There is no evidence \_\_\_\_\_ the meeting actually took place.

A. which

B. what

C. whose

D. that

【本题答案】D

【本题解析】本题考查**同位语从句**。由句子结构可知，空格后为同位语从句且不缺任何成分；there is no evidence that...没有证据表明……。综上所述，该题选择 D。

【本题翻译】没有证据表明会议确实举行过。

#### 11-15: DADBD

11. \_\_\_\_\_ many scientists believe is \_\_\_\_\_ the continuous presence of water benefits the earth a lot.

A. What; which

B. Which; that

C. When; that

D. What; that

【本题答案】D

【本题解析】本题考查**主语从句和表语从句**。分析句子结构可知，第一空后为主语从句且从句缺少宾语，再根据句意可知，选择 what；第二空后为表语从句且从句不缺少任何成分，故选择 that。综上所述，该题选择 D。

【本题翻译】很多科学家相信，水的持续存在对地球有很多好处。

12. \_\_\_\_\_ medicine works in a human body is a question \_\_\_\_\_ not everyone can understand fully.

A. How; that

B. That; which

C. That; that

D. What; that

【本题答案】A

【本题解析】本题考查**主语从句和定语从句**。分析句子结构可知，第一空后为主语从句且从句不缺成分，根据句意，表示“药物是如何在人体里起作用”，选择 how；第二空后的从句为定语从句，that 作定语从句的宾语。综上所述，该题选择 A。

【本题翻译】药物是如何在人体中起作用是一个不是所有人都能完全理解的问题。

13. The task required \_\_\_\_\_ did it \_\_\_\_\_ careful and brave enough.

A. no matter who; be

B. whomever; was

C. no matter whom; were

D. whoever; be

【本题答案】D

【本题解析】本题考查**宾语从句和虚拟语气**。分析句子可知，require 后接宾语从句，第一空引导宾语从句，而宾语从句缺主语，no matter+疑问词引导让步状语从句，故排除 AC，whomever 作宾语，whoever 作主语，故第一空用 whoever；require 后的宾语从句用虚拟语气，四类词的虚拟，谓动词用 should+动词原形，should 可以省略，故用 be 动词原形。综上所述，该题选择 D。

【本题翻译】这项任务要求无论谁做这件事都要足够小心和勇敢。

14. The manager believes that stupid \_\_\_\_\_ Mr. Smith is, \_\_\_\_\_ he said makes perfect sense.

A. that; which

B. as; what

C. as; that

D. though; which

【本题答案】B

【本题解析】本题考查**让步状语从句和主语从句**。根据句意再分析句子可知，believes 后面的宾语从句中包含一个让步状语从句，并且这个让步状语从句是一个倒装句，as 引导让步状语从句必须用倒装，though 引导让步状语从句可以倒装，也可以不倒装，所以第一个空格处用 as 或 though 都可以。第二个空格所在的部分是一个主语从句，该主语从句缺少宾语且根据句意，应用 what。综上所述，该题选择 B。

【本题翻译】经理认为尽管史密斯先生很愚蠢，但他说的很有道理。

15. It suddenly occurred to him \_\_\_\_\_ he had left his keys in the office.

A. whether

B. where

C. which

D. that

【本题答案】D

【本题解析】本题考查**主语从句**。It occurs/occurred to sb. that...某人突然想到……。其中 it 是形式主语，真正的主语是后面的从句，从句成分完整，用 that 仅起连接作用，无实义。综上所述，该题选择 D。

【本题翻译】他突然想起他把钥匙忘在办公室了。

#### 16-20: DDBCC

16. Bringing up a great child alone should give you a sense of \_\_\_\_\_.

A. arrangement

B. treatment

C. embarrassment

D. achievement

【本题答案】D

【本题解析】本题考查**名词词义辨析**。arrangement 安排；treatment 治疗；embarrassment 尴尬；achievement 成就。结合句意可知，该题表达一种成就感。综上所述，该题选择 D。

【本题翻译】独自抚养一个优秀的孩子能带给你成就感。

17. Given the breadth of her research, her \_\_\_\_\_ knowledge on the topic is evident in every chapter of her book.

A. superficial

B. intensive

C. explosive

D. extensive

【本题答案】D

【本题解析】本题考查**形容词词义辨析**。superficial 肤浅的；intensive 密集的；explosive 爆发性

的, 易爆发的; extensive 广泛的。根据句意, 该题表示对这一主题有广泛的了解。综上所述, 该题选择 D。

【本题翻译】鉴于她的研究范围之广, 她对这一主题的广泛了解在她书中的每一章都很明显。

18. With the number of confirmed cases rising, \_\_\_\_\_ the risks of infection remain high.

- A. urgently                      B. apparently                      C. objectively                      D. vitally

【本题答案】B

【本题解析】本题考查副词词义辨析。urgently 紧急地; apparently 明显地; objectively 客观地; vitally 重要地。根据句意, 该题表示感染的风险很明显依旧很高。综上所述, 该题选择 B。

【本题翻译】随着确诊病例的增加, 感染的风险很明显依旧很高。

19. It was difficult when she first lost her hearing, but she has learned to \_\_\_\_\_ it.

- A. live on                                      B. live to  
C. live with                                      D. live by

【本题答案】C

【本题解析】本题考查动词短语辨析。live on 以……为食; live to 活到; live with 学会去适应; live by 以……为生。根据句意, 该题表示“学会适应失聪这件事”。综上所述, 该题选择 C。

【本题翻译】她刚失聪时很痛苦, 但是她已经学会适应了这件事。

20. Children are taught to respect everyone, \_\_\_\_\_ race, gender or age.

- A. in terms of                      B. as for                      C. regardless of                      D. in place of

【本题答案】C

【本题解析】本题考查介词短语辨析。in terms of 就……而言; as for 至于; regardless of 不管, 不顾; in place of 代替。根据句意, 该题表达“不管种族、性别或者年龄”。综上所述, 该题选择 C。

【本题翻译】要教孩子们尊敬每一个人, 不管种族、性别还是年龄。

## 第八节 状语从句

### 1-5: DCAAA

1. They held a meeting \_\_\_\_\_ they could hear everyone's ideas.

- A. even if                      B. until                      C. while                      D. so that

【本题答案】D

【本题解析】本题考查状语从句。even if 即使, 尽管; until 直到; while 当……时候, 尽管, 然而; so that 以便, 为了。根据句意, 组织会议是为了听取每个人的想法。综上所述, 该题选择 D。

【本题翻译】他们举行了一次会议以便于听取每个人的想法。

2. His idea was accepted by all the people at the meeting, \_\_\_\_\_.

- A. as it might sound strange                      B. strange although it might sound  
C. strange as it might sound                      D. strange as might it sound

【本题答案】C

【本题解析】本题考查让步状语从句的倒装。although 引导让步状语从句不倒装, as 引导让步状语从句的倒装为: v + as + 主语 + 情态动词/助动词。综上所述, 该题选择 C。

【本题翻译】尽管这个想法听起来很奇怪，但是还是会被会议上的所有人接受。

3. \_\_\_\_\_ you stick to it, you will surely succeed.

A. As long as                      B. As far as                      C. As soon as                      D. As well as

【本题答案】A

【本题解析】本题考查**状语从句**。as long as 只要; as far as 就……而言; as soon as 一……就; as well as 和……一样。根据句意，该题表示“只要你坚持”。综上所述，该题选择A。

【本题翻译】只要你坚持，就一定会成功。

4. It is hardly a surprise that there exists a food shortage, \_\_\_\_\_ the population of the small country has more than doubled within a decade.

A. given that                      B. so that  
C. on condition that                      D. provided that

【本题答案】A

【本题解析】本题考查**状语从句**。given that 鉴于; so that 以便，为了; on condition that 如果; provided that 如果，假如。综上所述，该题选择A。

【本题翻译】鉴于这个小国的人口在十年内不止翻了一番，短缺事物的现象就不足为奇了。

5. \_\_\_\_\_ the students came from different countries, they got along quite well in the summer camp.

A. While                      B. Unless                      C. Since                      D. Until

【本题答案】A

【本题解析】本题考查**状语从句**。while 尽管，当……时候，然而; unless 除非; since 既然，自从; until 直到。综上所述，该题选择A。

【本题翻译】尽管学生来自不同的国家，但是他们在夏令营里面相处的非常好。

#### 6-10: DACCB

6. —What do you think of the teacher?

—\_\_\_\_\_ she is elegant, she can be extremely difficult to deal with.

A. If                      B. As                      C. Because                      D. While

【本题答案】D

【本题解析】本题考查**状语从句**。if 如果; as 尽管(要倒装)，因为; because 因为; while 当……时候，尽管，然而。根据句意，此处引导让步状语从句，并且 while 引导让步状语从句放于句首。综上所述，该题选择D。

【本题翻译】——你觉得这个老师怎么样？——虽然她举止优雅，但有时很难对付。

7. She remembered everything in childhood \_\_\_\_\_ they had just happened.

A. as if                      B. so long as                      C. even if                      D. now that

【本题答案】A

【本题解析】本题考查**状语从句**。as if 好像; so long as 只要; even if 即使; now that 既然，由于。根据句意，意为“好像刚刚发生过”，并且空格后从句用的 had done 的虚拟语气，表示与过去



事实相反。综上所述，该题选择 A。

【本题翻译】她记得儿时的一切，就好像他们刚刚发生一样。

8. The economical car is big enough for family of three \_\_\_\_\_ you need more space for baggage.

A. once                      B. because                      C. unless                      D. if

【本题答案】C

【本题解析】本题考查**状语从句**。once 一旦; because 因为; unless 除非, 如果不; if 如果。根据句意, 空格处用“除非”引导条件状语从句。综上所述, 该题选择 C。

【本题翻译】对一个三口之家来说, 如果不需要更多的空间放行李, 经济型轿车足够了。

9. \_\_\_\_\_ hard a solid may be, we can change its shape.

A. Whatever                      B. Whenever                      C. However                      D. Wherever

【本题答案】C

【本题解析】本题考查**让步状语从句**。whatever 无论什么; whenever 无论何时; however 无论如何, 无论多么; wherever 无论哪里。空格后形容词, 根据句意和语序 however + adj./adv+主句+谓语。综上所述, 该题选择 C。

【本题翻译】不管固体有多硬, 我们都能改变它的形状。

10. The big fire lasted as long as 24 hours \_\_\_\_\_ it was brought under control.

A. after                      B. before                      C. since                      D. while

【本题答案】B

【本题解析】本题考查**时间状语从句**。“一段时间+before+事件”表示“在某事发生之前已经有多长时间”。综上所述, 该题选择 B。

【本题翻译】大火持续了 24 小时才被控制住。

### 11-15: CAACB

11. There was never any time for Kate to feel lonely, \_\_\_\_\_ she was an only child.

A. ever since                      B. now that                      C. even though                      D. as though

【本题答案】C

【本题解析】本题考查**状语从句**。ever since 自从, 打……以后一直; now that 既然; even though 尽管; as though 好像。根据句意, 空格后引导让步状语从句选择 even though。综上所述, 该题选择 C。

【本题翻译】尽管凯特只是一个孩子, 但是她从不感觉到孤独。

12. While \_\_\_\_\_ for the bus, I found my wallet was missing.

A. waiting                      B. waited                      C. to wait                      D. wait

【本题答案】A

【本题解析】本题考查**状语从句的省略**。当状语从句的主语与主句的主语一致, 且从句中含有 be 动词时, 可以省略从句的主语和 be 动词; 结合本句语境, 可知原句为 While I was waiting for the bus。综上所述, 该题选择 A。

【本题翻译】在等公交车的时候, 我发现我的钱包不见了。

13. When \_\_\_\_\_, the museum will be open to public next year.

- A. completed      B. completing      C. being completed      D. to be completed

【本题答案】A

【本题解析】本题考查**状语从句的省略**。当状语从句的主语与主句的主语一致，且从句中含有 be 动词时，可以省略从句的主语和 be 动词；本题 when 引导的时间状语从句中省略了主语 museum 和 be 动词，the museum 与 complete 之间是被动关系，故用 completed 表示被动，省略了 the museum 和 be 动词。综上所述，该题选择 A。

【本题翻译】建成后，图书馆将于明年向公众开放。

14. \_\_\_\_\_ David Beckham goes, he is always welcome.

- A. Whichever      B. However      C. Wherever      D. Whatever

【本题答案】C

【本题解析】本题考查**状语从句**。whichever 无论哪一个；however 无论怎样，无论多么；wherever 无论哪里；whatever 无论什么。根据句意，空格后的句子是以 wherever 引导的让步状语从句，在从句中充当地点状语。综上所述，该题选择 C。

【本题翻译】无论大卫贝克汉姆去哪里，他总是受欢迎。

15. The man will have to wait all day \_\_\_\_\_ the doctor works faster.

- A. if      B. unless      C. whether      D. that

【本题答案】B

【本题解析】本题考查**状语从句**。if 如果；unless 除非；whether 是否，引导状语从句 whether...or not 表示无论……还是；that 名词性从句和定语从句连接词。根据句意，空格处为引导条件状语从句的连接词 unless。综上所述，该题选择 B。

【本题翻译】除非医生工作的更快，否则这个人不得等上一整天。

#### 16-20: CDABB

16. Many environmental problems, such as climate change and extreme weather, are mainly \_\_\_\_\_ human activities.

- A. in spite of      B. with regard to      C. due to      D. rather than

【本题答案】C

【本题解析】本题考查**介词短语辨析**。in spite of 尽管；with regard to 关于；due to 由于；rather than 而不是。根据句意，due to 符合题意。综上所述，该题选择 C。

【本题翻译】很多环境问题，比如气候的变化和极端的天气，都主要是由于人类活动造成的。

17. You can't predict everything. Often things don't \_\_\_\_\_ as you expect.

- A. come across      B. check out      C. make up      D. work out

【本题答案】D

【本题解析】本题考查**动词短语辨析**。come across 偶然遇到；check out 结账离开，退房；make up 化妆，构成；work out 进展（顺利）。根据句意，work out 符合题意。综上所述，该题选择 D。

【本题翻译】你不能预测所有事，通常事情不会按照你所期待的那样顺利进行。



18. Before giving my opinion, I think it is \_\_\_\_\_ to look at the arguments of both sides.

- A. essential                      B. artificial                      C. beneficial                      D. commercial

【本题答案】A

【本题解析】本题考查**形容词词义辨析**。essential 完全必要的; artificial 人造的; beneficial 有益的; commercial 商业的。根据句意, essential 符合题意。综上所述, 该题选择 A。

【本题翻译】再给出我的意见之前, 我认为看双方的论点是很有必要的。

19. Big companies are in search of \_\_\_\_\_ products that offer unique value and features to ensure them difficult for competitors to imitate.

- A. splendid                      B. innovative                      C. massive                      D. delicate

【本题答案】B

【本题解析】本题考查**形容词词义辨析**。splendid 宏伟的, 辉煌的; innovative 创新的; massive 大量的; delicate 易碎的, 精美的。根据后文“产品需要确保不被竞争者模仿”可知, innovative 符合题意。综上所述, 该题选择 B。

【本题翻译】大公司正在寻找具有独特价值和特点的创新产品, 以确保竞争对手难以模仿。

20. Organically grown produce does not differ greatly in appearance from \_\_\_\_\_ grown crops.

- A. constantly                      B. conventionally                      C. conveniently                      D. cautiously

【本题答案】B

【本题解析】本题考查**副词词义辨析**。constantly 不断地; conventionally 传统地; conveniently 便利地; cautiously 谨慎地。根据前文“organically grown produce 有机种植农产品”可知, 空格处应与之相对应, 表示“传统种植农作物”。综上所述, 该题选择 B。

【本题翻译】有机种植的农产品在外观上和传统种植的农作物没有太大不同。

## 第四章 补全对话

## Task 1

A: Do you have any plans for the holiday, Mike?

B: \_\_1\_\_ I am busy with my study. How about you?

A: \_\_2\_\_

B: To Sanya? Oh, the beach view is so beautiful.

A: It is indeed. I love the beach there.

B: \_\_3\_\_

A: For about half a month.

B: That's wonderful! \_\_4\_\_

A: Thank you. Let's meet some time when I'm back.

B: \_\_5\_\_ Tell me about your trip then.

A. Not yet.

B. Let's go.

C. Goodbye.

D. Have a nice trip.

E. That sounds great!

F. How long will you stay there?

G. I'll go to Sanya with my friends.

## 【全文翻译】

A: 迈克，你有什么去度假的计划吗？

B: 还没有，我正忙着学习。你呢？

A: 我打算和我的朋友去三亚。

B: 三亚吗？哦，海滩上的景色太美了。

A: 它确实是。我喜欢那里的海滩。

B: 你在那里呆多长时间？

A: 大约半个月。

B: 太棒了！祝你有个愉快的旅程！

A: 谢谢你。等我回来的时候再见面吧。

B: 那听起来很好！记得到时候告诉我关于你的旅行。

## 1-5: AGFDE

1. A

【本题解析】根据上文 “Do you have any plans for the holiday” 可知，A在询问假期计划，根据空

格后句 “I am busy with my study.” (我正忙于学习) 可知, 因为忙于学习B的答案应该是否。综上所述, 该题选择A。

2. G

【本题解析】根据上文 “How about you?” 可知, B又反问A的假期计划, 根据下文B的确认 “To Sanya?” 可知, A在回答中提到了去三亚的计划。综上所述, 该题选择G。

3. F

【本题解析】根据下文 “For about half a month.” 可知, 这里说的是大约半个月, 是对于多长时间答复, F选项 “How long will you stay there?” (你在那里呆多长时间?) 刚好符合语义逻辑。综上所述, 该题选择F。

4. D

【本题解析】根据下文 “Thank you.”, A对B说了感谢可知, B表达了对这次旅程的祝福语。综上所述, 该题选择D。

5. E

【本题解析】根据上文 “Let’s meet some time when I’m back.” 可知, A 对 B 发出了一个提议, B 的回答应该是对这个提议表达自己的意见, E 选项的 “That sounds great!” (那听起来很好) 符合对话逻辑。综上所述, 该题选择 E。

## Task 2

A: Hi, Zhang Hua. Will you go to the cinema with me this evening?

B: \_\_1\_\_\_. It’s Mid-Autumn Festival today.

A: Mid-Autumn Festival?

B: Yes. \_\_2\_\_\_ Families see it as a time to get together and usually celebrate it with a big family meal. \_\_3\_\_\_.

A: We don’t have this festival in England. \_\_4\_\_\_.

B: They’re round, in the shape of a full moon. You can come over to my home and try them this evening.

A: Really? \_\_5\_\_\_.

A. I’m sorry, I can’t.

B. Thank you for your invitation.

C. What do moon-cakes look like?

D. We have some moon-cakes that day.

E. It’s a traditional festival in China.

F. Are they delicious?

G. I think it must be very interesting.

## 【全文翻译】

A: 嗨，张华。今晚你愿意和我一起去看电影吗？

B: 对不起，我不能去。今天是中秋节。

A: 中秋节？

B: 这是中国的一个传统节日。家人们把这当作一个团圆的时刻，通常以家庭聚餐来庆祝。吃月饼就是传统习俗之一。

A: 我们在英国没有这个节日。月饼长什么样？

B: 它们是圆的，呈满月的形状。今天晚上你可以来我家试一试。

A: 真的吗？谢谢你的邀请。

### 1-5: AEDCB

1. A

【本题解析】由上文的问句 “Will you go to the cinema with me this evening?” (你今天晚上能和我一起去看电影吗？) 可知，这个一般疑问句的回答，一定会给出一个肯定或者否定的答案，B 回答 “对不起，我不能去” 符合题意。综上所述，该题选择 A。

2. E

【本题解析】由上文 “Mid-Autumn Festival?” (中秋节？) 可知这里讨论的是中秋节，B 说 “这是中国的一个传统节日”，符合题意，其中代词 It 指代就是 “Mid-Autumn Festival”。综上所述，该题选择 E。

3. D

【本题解析】由上文 “Families see it as a time to get together and usually celebrate it with a big family meal.” (家人们把这当作一个团圆的时刻，通常以家庭聚餐来庆祝。) 可知，这里谈论的是中秋节的庆祝方式，而吃月饼就是传统习俗之一，可知 B 说 “我们在那一天会吃月饼”。综上所述，该题选择 D。

4. C

【本题解析】由上文 “We don’t have this festival in England” (我们在英国没有这个节日) 及下文的描述 “They’re round, in the shape of a full moon.” (他们是圆形的，就像月亮的形状) 可知 A 在英国没有中秋节，更不知道月饼是什么，所以 A 问 “月饼长什么样？” 其中 “they” 指代的是月饼。综上所述，该题选择 C。

5. B

【本题解析】由上文 “You can come over to my home and try them this evening.” (今天晚上你可以来我们家尝尝月饼。) 可知，B 发出了邀请，A 要回答 “谢谢你的邀请”。综上所述，该题选择 B。

### Task 3

A: Do you think the Olympics can change a city even after the Games finish?

B: Oh! Yes. They can really change a city and help the people who live there.

A: \_\_1\_\_

B: Yes, of course. One example is the Beijing Olympics. They built a new swimming centre. \_\_2\_\_

A: A great example! Can the Games make money for a city?

B: Sure. More people go to those cities even after the Games. \_\_3\_\_

A: What about children? \_\_4\_\_

B: Before the Games, many children preferred to play video games and watch TV. \_\_5\_\_

A: It's really a big change.

A. Tourists make money for a city.

B. Can you give us an example?

C. Now they begin to do more sports outside.

D. Do you play a lot of sports?

E. How can the Olympics change them?

F. Many people think the Olympics cost a lot of money.

G. Now it has become a popular place for people to visit.

#### 【全文翻译】

A: 你认为奥运会能在奥运会结束后改变一个城市吗?

B: 哦! 是的。他们真的可以改变一个城市，帮助住在那里的人。

A: 你能给我们举个例子吗?

B: 是的，当然。北京奥运会就是一个例子。他们建了一个新的游泳中心。现在它已经成为人们参观的热门地方。

A: 一个很好的例子! 奥运会能为一个城市赚钱吗?

B: 肯定的。即使在奥运会之后，更多的人去这些城市。这真是一个很大的机会。

A: 那孩子们呢? 奥运会如何改变他们?

B: 在奥运会开始之前，许多孩子更喜欢玩电子游戏和看电视。现在他们开始做更多的户外运动。

A: 这真是一个大的改变。

#### 1-5: BGAEC

1. B

【本题解析】根据下文答句“是的,当然。北京奥运会就是一个例子。”可知,上句应表示要求举出相应例子。B项“你能给我们举个例子吗?”符合题意。B项切题。综上所述,该题选择B。

2. G

【本题解析】根据前句“他们建造了一个新的游泳中心。”可知,G项“现在它已经成为人们参观的热门地方。”和上句构成顺接关系,同时G项中的it指代前句的“a new swimming center”。G项切题。综上所述,该题选择G。

## 3. A

【本题解析】根据前文提问“奥运会能让一个城市赚钱吗？”可知，下句的回答需和赚钱有关。根据划线前提到“一定可以。甚至在奥运会结束后，也有更多的人去那些城市。”可知，有很多人到举办过奥运会的城市旅游，所以奥运会能让一个城市赚钱。A项“这真是一个很大的机会”和前句表示因果关系。综上所述，该题选择A。

## 4. E

【本题解析】根据前句“孩子们呢？”以及后句“在奥运会之前，许多孩子更喜欢玩电子游戏和看电视。”可知，此处应表示提问奥运会对孩子们有什么影响。E项“奥运会如何改变他们？”在此启承上启下的作用。综上所述，该题选择E。

## 5. C

【本题解析】根据前句“在奥运会之前，许多孩子更喜欢玩电子游戏和看电视。”可知，C项“现在他们开始做更多的户外运动。”此处表示前后对比，强调运动会给孩子们的影响。是对前句“在他们开始做更多的户外运动”的回答。综上所述，该题选择C。

## Task 4

Linda: \_\_1\_\_ Come in, please. Do you want an orange?

Alice: \_\_2\_\_ I ate early this morning, I got up at 6 o'clock.

Linda: \_\_3\_\_

Alice: Yes, I did, I read my history book, and I wrote my English lesson. What about you?

Linda: \_\_4\_\_ I didn't finish it.

Alice: Look at my new coat. My mother bought it for me yesterday.

Linda: \_\_5\_\_ I like blue coats.

A. Yes, please.

B. What a surprise, Alice.

C. Our English lesson is hard to do.

D. That's quite right.

E. Oh, it's pretty.

F. Did you do your homework last night?

G. No, thank you.

## 【全文翻译】

琳达：真是个惊喜，爱丽丝。进来吧，你想要吃一个橘子吗？

爱丽丝：不了，谢谢。我今天早上吃得很早，我早上6点就起床了。

琳达：昨晚你做就家庭作业了吗？

爱丽丝：是的，我读了我的历史书，写了我的英语课业。你呢？

琳达：我们的英语课很难，我没写完。

爱丽丝：看看我的新外套。我妈妈昨天给我买的。

琳达：哦，真漂亮！我喜欢蓝色的外套。

### 1-5: BGFCE

1. B

【本题解析】由“Come in, please. Do you want an orange”可知，请进，你想来个橘子吗。所以判断出这句话一定是在问某个人。所以小题1一定出现某个人的名字。故B选项“真是个惊喜，爱丽丝”符合句意。综上所述，该题选择B。

2. G

【本题解析】由“I ate early this morning”可知，今早我吃过了。所以判断出小题2在说Alice不想要橘子。故G选项“不，谢谢”符合题意。综上所述，该题选择G。

3. F

【本题解析】由“Yes, I did,”可知，我做了。所以判断出这句是对小题3一般疑问句的回答。故F选项“昨晚你做就家庭作业了吗”。综上所述，该题选择F。

4. C

【本题解析】由“I didn't finish it”可知，我没有完成。所以判断出小题4在叙述没完成的原因。故C选项“我们的英语课很难”符合题意。综上所述，该题选择C。

5. E

【本题解析】由“I like blue coats”可知，我喜欢蓝色的外套。所以判断出这是这是对爱丽丝昨天买的外套的积极评价，所以小题5一定是在夸奖爱丽丝买的外套漂亮。故E选项“哦，真漂亮”符合句意。综上所述，该题选择E。

### Task 5

Linda: Hello, George. \_\_1\_\_

George: Hi, Linda. I'm reading a tourist guide to Europe.

Linda: \_\_2\_\_

George: Yes, I'm looking to such a trip. Hey, have you ever been there?

Linda: Yes. I've actually visited my countries in Europe, France, Germany, Italy and Austria, for example.

George: \_\_3\_\_ And how long did you stay?

Linda: Two years ago. For over one month.

George: Did you like it?

Linda: \_\_4\_\_ There are many ancient churches and castles. It's the best trip I've ever taken.

George: Sounds great. \_\_5\_\_

Linda: Good idea. You won't regret it.

A. Of course.

- B. Not exactly.  
 C. What are you doing?  
 D. When did you go there?  
 E. Do you plan to move to Europe?  
 F. Are you thinking of visiting Europe some day?  
 G. I decide to make a trip next October on my annual leave.

### 【全文翻译】

琳达：你好，乔治。你在干什么？  
 乔治：你好，琳达。我正在阅读一本去欧洲的导游指南。  
 琳达：你打算哪天去欧洲旅行吗？  
 乔治：是的，我希望这样的旅行。嘿，你去过那里吗？  
 琳达：对。我实际上去过欧洲国家，比如法国、德国、意大利和奥地利。  
 乔治：何时去的？你待了多久呢？  
 琳达：两年前。超过一个月。  
 乔治：你喜欢它吗？  
 琳达：当然！欧洲有许多古老的教堂和城堡。这是我去过的最好的一次旅行。  
 乔治：听起来不错。我决定在明年 10 月的年假期间去旅行一次。  
 琳达：好主意。你不会后悔的。

### 1-5: CFDAG

#### 1. C

【本题解析】根据答语中的 “I’m reading a tourist guide to Europe” (我在读一本欧洲旅游指南) 判断选C选项 “你在干什么?” 符合语境。综上所述，该题选择C。

#### 2. F

【本题解析】根据前文的George话判断，他对欧洲感兴趣，并在读欧洲指南，再根据下文的 “I’m looking forward to such a trip” (我期待着这样的旅行) 判断选F选项 “你打算哪天去欧洲旅行吗” 符合语境。综上所述，该题选择F。

#### 3. D

【本题解析】根据上句话, Linda已经去过欧洲, George要询问她什么时间去的欧洲, 再根据答语Two years ago判断D选项 “何时去的” 符合语境。综上所述，该题选择D。

#### 4. A

【本题解析】根据问话 “Did you like it?” (你喜欢它吗) 及空后的叙述, 说明Linda喜欢欧洲, 故A选项 “当然” 符合语境。综上所述，该题选择A。

#### 5. G

【本题解析】听了 Linda 的介绍, 和 George 的 “Sounds great” 说明 George 决定去欧洲旅游了, 故 G 选项 “我决定在明年 10 月的年假期间去旅行一次” 切题。 综上所述，该题选择 G。



**Task 6**

Repairman: Good afternoon. \_\_1\_\_

Customer: Hello. My mobile phone isn't working. Could you repair, please?

Repairman: \_\_2\_\_

Customer: It worked well yesterday, but I simply couldn't turn it on this morning.

Repairman: \_\_3\_\_

Customer: Here you are.

Repairman: Well, I think we'll be able to fix it. You can pick it up this Friday.

Customer: Oh, no. That's too long. \_\_4\_\_ I need it as soon as possible.

Repairman: Let me see. How about Wednesday afternoon?

Customer: \_\_5\_\_ What time?

Repairman: After five o'clock.

Customer: OK. Thank you.

A. That's great.

B. I beg your pardon?

C. Let me have a look.

D. What's the problem?

E. I'm sorry to hear that.

F. What can I do for you?

G. I wonder if you could fix it earlier?

**【全文翻译】**

修理工：下午好。我能为您做些什么？

客户：你好。我的手机坏了。请你修理一下好吗。

修理工：有什么问题呢？

顾客：昨天还好，但是今天早上我开不了机。

修理工：让我看一看。

客户：给你。

修理工：好吧，我想我们能够修好它。你周五就可以来取。

顾客：哦，不。这是太长了。你能不能早点修好，我需要尽快拿回它。

修理工：我想想。星期三下午怎么样？

客户：太好了！什么时候？

修理工：五点钟以后。

客户：好的。谢谢你。

**1-5: FDCGA**

1. F

【本题解析】根据下文“My mobile phone isn’t working. Could you repair, please.(我的手机坏了。请你修理一下好吗?)”可知，说话者进入一家修理店，所以上一句应是店员对顾客的询问，由此可知F项“我能为您做些什么?”符合语境。综上所述，该题选择F。

2. D

【本题解析】根据上一句可知，顾客告知店员“手机坏了，需要修理”，可知修理员此时应进一步询问“有什么问题呢? ”。综上所述，该题选择D。

3. C

【本题解析】根据下一句顾客的回答“Here you are.(给你)”，可以推知修理员提出“让我看一看”。综上所述，该题选择C。

4. G

【本题解析】上一句修理员提到“Well, I think we’ll be able to fix it. You can pick it up this Friday.(嗯，我想我们能修好它。你可以这个星期五来取。)”结合本句中“That’s too long.(那太久了)”，可知顾客想要早一点修好手机，所以G项“不知道你能不能早点修好”符合语境。综上所述，该题选择G。

5. A

【本题解析】根据上一句修理员说“How about Wednesday afternoon?(星期三下午怎么样?)”，以及顾客接着询问“几点呢? ”，可知顾客对这个时间是满意的，所以A项“太好了”。综上所述，该题选择A。

## 第五章 选句填空

### Task 1

Experts in nutrition suggest that we should eat at least five different kinds of vegetables and fruit a day. They are very necessary for your health and help our bodies work well. They can help reduce the risk of getting ill. It's easy to buy our food from the local supermarket. There are a lot of vegetables and fruit to choose from and they taste delicious. \_\_1\_\_

So why do we go to the trouble of growing our own? Here are several good reasons:

\_\_2\_\_ You can pick and eat it at once. When you have tried it, you will agree that vegetables and fruit that are eaten straight from the garden taste better than anything you can buy in a supermarket.

You may want to cut down on your “food miles”—the distance that a product has travelled before it reaches your kitchen. Many food packages are flown halfway across the earth. \_\_3\_\_

Homegrown food is likely to be healthier. Food producers often use fertilizers and pesticides which can end up in your food. If you grow your own, things are different. \_\_4\_\_ You might also choose to grow some traditional vegetables and fruit. These often have more of the vitamins, minerals and protein that keep you healthy.

\_\_5\_\_ But you can grow your own even if you only have a small backyard or a balcony. Some food can grow well in pots, including lettuce, tomatoes, potatoes and carrots.

Happy gardening!

- A. But best of all, you can grow your own!
- B. But where to grow your own is a problem.
- C. That's not so good for you, or for the planet.
- D. Food that you grow yourself is always fresh.
- E. If you have a large garden, growing your own is easy.
- F. You can control what goes on and into the food you eat.
- G. So it's better to eat more vegetables and fruit in our daily life.

### 【全文翻译】

营养专家建议我们每天至少应该吃五种不同的蔬菜和水果。它们对你的健康是非常必要的，有助于我们的身体正常工作。它们可以帮助降低患病风险。从当地的超市买到我们的食物很容易。有很多蔬菜和水果可供选择，它们尝起来很美味。但最重要的是，你可以自己种植！

那么，我们为什么还要麻烦地自己种植呢？以下是几个很好的理由：

自己种的食物总是新鲜的。你可以马上摘下来吃。当你尝试过的时候，你会同意直接从花园里吃的蔬菜和水果比你在超市买到的任何东西都好吃。

你可能想要减少你的“食物里程”——食物到达你的厨房之前所经过的距离。许多食品包装要飞过半个地球。这对你和地球都不好。

本土食品可能更健康。食品生产商经常使用化肥和杀虫剂，这些最终会进入你的食物中。如果你自己种，情况就不一样了。你可以控制你吃的食物（是否使用化肥等）。你也可以选择种植一些传统的蔬菜和水果。它们通常含有更多的维生素、矿物质和蛋白质，可以保持你的健康。

如果你有一个大花园，自己种菜很容易。但是即使你只有一个小后院或阳台，你也可以自己种植。有些食物可以在花盆里长得很好，包括莴苣、西红柿、土豆和胡萝卜。

园艺快乐！

### 1-5: ADCFE

#### 1. A

【本题解析】根据后文 So why do we go to the trouble of growing our own? “那么，我们为什么还要麻烦地自己种植呢？”可知，前文提及了 grow your own 自己种植，由此可知 A 项符合。综上所述，该题选择 A。

#### 2. D

【本题解析】第二空设空在段落首句，是对整段落的内容进行总结概括，根据后文内容可知，该段落提及了 You can pick and eat it at once “你可以现摘现吃”以及“直接从花园里吃的蔬菜和水果比你在超市买到的任何东西都好吃”，由此可知该段落想要强调食物的新鲜，D 项符合。综上所述，该题选择 D。

#### 3. C

【本题解析】根据段落前文 Many food packages are flown halfway across the earth. “许多食品包装要飞过半个地球”可知，食物经过空运很长时间才能到达你的厨房的话，那么可以推测营养价值会有所降低，并且空运燃烧汽油也会造成一些污染，C 项符合。综上所述，该题选择 C。

#### 4. F

【本题解析】前文提及别人种植的蔬菜会使用化肥和杀虫剂，接下来转折 If you grow your own, things are different. “如果你自己种，情况就不一样了”，由此可知，自己种植可以自己控制是否要在蔬菜上使用化肥杀虫剂等物品，F 项符合。综上所述，该题选择 F。

#### 5. E

【本题解析】根据后文 But you can grow your own even if you only have a small backyard or a balcony. “但是即使你只有一个小后院或阳台，你也可以自己种植。”可知，该段落提及了种植的地方。后文提及即使在小后院或者阳台上也可以进行种植，那么可以推测前文的种植场所应该与小后院或者阳台形成转折关系，E 项符合。综上所述，该题选择 E。

## Task 2

American and British people both speak English of course. But sometimes it does not seem like the same language. In fact, there are some important differences between British English and

American English.

\_\_1\_\_ Often, Americans don't say each word separately. They say several words together. Americans may say "I dunno" instead of "I don't know". Or they may say "Whaddya say?" instead of "What did you say?" However, the British are more careful in their speech. They usually say all the words and keep them separate.

Sound is not the only differences between British English and American English. Words have different meanings too. \_\_2\_\_ Americans drive trucks, but in England people drive lorries.

\_\_3\_\_ In England, if you are going to telephone your friends, you say "phone them up". In America, you "give them a call".

There are also some differences in grammar. For example, Americans usually use the helping verb "do" when they ask a question. They say "Do you have a story book?" But the British often leave out the helping verb. \_\_4\_\_

Most languages are like this. Languages change over time. When people live in separate places, the languages change in different ways. This is what has happened to English. \_\_5\_\_ Many people in Canada speak French but their French is very different from the French of France.

- A. English is widely used in China.
- B. It can also happen to other languages, such as French.
- C. For example, the vocabulary for cars and driving is very different.
- D. They say "Have you a storybook?"
- E. English in these two countries is different only in sound.
- F. First of all, they sound very different.
- G. Many expressions are different in the two countries.

### 【全文翻译】

当然，美国人和英国人都说英语。但有时它们似乎不是同一种语言。事实上，英式英语和美式英语之间有一些重要的区别。

首先，它们听起来很不一样。通常，美国人不会说分开说每个单词。他们一起说了几个词。美国人可能会说 "I dunno" 而不是 "I don't know (我不知道)"。或者他们可能会说 "Whaddya say" 而不是 "What did you say? (你说什么)" 然而，英国人说话更小心。他们通常把所有的词都说出来，并把它们分开。

发音并不是英式英语和美式英语唯一的区别。单词也有不同的含义。例如，汽车和驾驶的词汇是非常不同的。美国人开 trucks (卡车)，但在英国人们开 lorries (卡车)。

这两个国家的许多表达方式都不一样。在英国，如果你要给朋友打电话，你会说 "phone them up"。在美国，你说 "give them a call"。

在语法上也有一些差异。例如，美国人在提问时通常使用助动词 "do"。他们说 "Do you have a storybook (你有故事书吗)?" 但是英国人经常省略助动词。他们说 "Have you a storybook"。

大多数语言都是这样的。语言随着时间而变化。当人们生活在不同的地方，语言以不同的方式变化。这就是发生在英语身上的事情。这种情况也可能发生在其他语言上，比如法语。加拿大有很多人说法语，但是他们的法语和法国的法语有很大的不同。

### 1-5: FCGDB

#### 1. F

【本题解析】全文主要讲了英式英语和美式英语的一些差异。这一段设空在段首，起到对段落内容的概括作用，根据下一段内容 Sound is not the only differences between British English and American English “发音并不是英式英语和美式英语唯一的区别”可知，这一段内容讲解了英式英语和美式英语的发音区别，F 项符合。综上所述，该题选择 F。

#### 2. C

【本题解析】根据下文 Americans drive trucks, but in England people drive lorries. “美国人开 trucks (卡车)，但在英国人们开 lorries (卡车)”可知，这里列举了英语英语和美式英语在“卡车”一词上的不同，C 项符合。综上所述，该题选择 C。

#### 3. G

【本题解析】根据后文内容，举例说明英语英语和美式英语在给朋友打电话的表达方式上的不同，G 项符合。综上所述，该题选择 G。

#### 4. D

【本题解析】根据前文 They say “Do you have a story book?” But the British often leave out the helping verb. “(美国人) 他们说 “Do you have a storybook (你有故事书吗)？”但是英国人经常省略助动词”可知，D 项符合。综上所述，该题选择 D。

#### 5. B

【本题解析】根据后文例举了法语，可知空格处应该引入法语话题，B 项符合。综上所述，该题选择 B。

### Task 3

A new environment is a challenge for everyone. Learning to adapt, live and learn in the new environment is extremely important for us to grow up. And the first thing you have to face is to fit in, which means making more friends, having more influence on others and getting more chances to live a happier life. \_\_1\_\_

**Believe yourself.** Confidence makes a great first impression. Everyone is unique and there is only one person like you in this world. Take some time to think about your strong points. \_\_2\_\_ You won't have much difficulty fitting in.

**Be kind to everyone.** Kindness is the bridge to your own happiness. When people notice your kindness, they will return it one day. Always give more than you receive, and think more of others than of yourself. \_\_3\_\_

\_\_4\_\_ Various activities like playing football can help you to be known to others. You may add

more friends to your circle. At the same time, you'll be amazed to see how much they like you. Instead of wasting time being alone, go out to dance and sing together with others to develop friendship.

**Do smile to everyone every day.** It makes both you and others feel happy. 5 Humor catches others' attention as well. People will like you because you make them live happily.

If you follow the suggestions mentioned above, you will be accepted by people around you. As a result, you will fit in very well and enjoy your new life.

- A. Be active in group activities.
- B. However, everybody needs friends.
- C. Here are some suggestions that can help you.
- D. A pleasant smile costs the least and does the most.
- E. A person who cares about others is popular everywhere.
- F. If so, you will be able to build up confidence step by step.
- G. A pleasant smile often leaves one to wonder if we fit in well.

### 【全文翻译】

新环境对每个人来说都是一个挑战。学会适应、生活和学习新环境对我们成长极为重要。而你要面对的第一件事就是融入社会，这意味着要结交更多的朋友，对他人有更大的影响力，获得更多机会过上更幸福的生活。以下是一些可以帮助您的建议。

相信你自己。自信会给人留下很好的第一印象。每个人都是独一无二的，这个世界上只有一个像你这样的人。花点时间想想你的长处。如果是这样，您将能够逐步建立信心。你不会有太大的困难。

善待每一个人。善良是通往自己幸福的桥梁。当人们注意到你的好意时，他们总有一天会回报你。总是付出比得到的多，为他人着想多于为自己着想。一个关心他人的人在任何地方都很受欢迎。

积极参加小组活动。踢足球等各种活动可以帮助你被他人了解。您可以在您的圈子中添加更多朋友。同时，你会惊讶地看到他们有多喜欢你。与其浪费时间独处，不如出去跳舞和唱歌，与他人一起发展友谊。

每天微笑对待每人。这让你和他人感到快乐。愉快的微笑成本最低，效果最大。幽默也会引起别人的注意。人们会喜欢你，因为你让他们过上幸福的生活。

如果你遵循上面提到的建议，你就会被周围的人接受。因此，您将很好地适应并享受您的新生活。

### 1-5: CFEAD

#### 1. C

【本题解析】根据上文可知，讲到初到新环境必须面对的第一件事是融入其中。结合后文的一



些如何融入新环境的建议可知, C 项承上启下, 符合语境, 综上所述, 该题选择 C。

2. F

【本题解析】根据上文以及后文 “You won’t have much difficulty fitting in.” 可知, 本段主要是在说明自信问题, 上文提到了思考自己的优点, 本句应当是说明思考自己优点的结果是什么。

上文中 confidence 与 F 选项中 confidence 相对应, F 符合语境。综上所述, 该题选择 F。

3. E

【本题解析】根据上文可知, 本段主要建议要善待他人。设空出在段尾, 应承接上文继续说明善待他人的影响。且上文中 “think more of others” 可与 E 选项中 “cares for others” 相对应。E 项符合语境。综上所述, 该题选择 E。

4. A

【本题解析】设空处为本段主旨句。根据下文 “Various activities like playing football can help you to be known to others.” 可知, 本段主要介绍的是参加团体活动来融入新环境。且后文中 “activities” 可与 A 选项中 “activities” 相对应。A 项最能概括本段主旨, 符合语境。综上所述, 该题选择 A。

5. D

【本题解析】根据上文 “Do smile to everyone every day. It makes both you and others feel happy.” 以及下文 “Humor catches others’ attention as well. People will like you for making them live happily.” 可知, 本段主要说明的是保持乐观, 且后文提到了幽默感, 故本句应当是在说明保持乐观的一些表现, 如微笑。D 项承上启下, 符合语境。综上所述, 该题选择 D。

## Task 4

Sleep is like food for the brain. \_\_1\_\_ However, many Chinese do not sleep well. And many do not pay enough attention to sleep.

According to the index, nearly a quarter of Chinese people don’t sleep well. \_\_2\_\_ and 15 percent people have trouble falling asleep.

Ye Jingying, a sleeper expert at Beijing Tongren Hospital, says, “If people often wake up during the night, or always feel weak and tired in the day, they should pay attention to their sleep pattern.”

\_\_3\_\_ The report said that this is one of the main reasons for bad sleep. Other reasons includes stress and bad moods.

\_\_4\_\_ The answer is: to get enough sleep. Seven to nine hours of sleep every night is perfect for an adult, and eight to nine hours is best for a teenager.

Having good sleep habits is important. The report suggested that people need to keep away from digital devices for at least an hour before sleep. \_\_5\_\_ Other suggestions include: try to go to sleep and wake up at the same time every day, even on weekends and during holidays, and do the same relaxing things before each bed night, like listening to soft music.



- A. Many people play with their cell phones or ipads before sleeping.
- B. Enough sleep helps the body and brain grow and develop.
- C. How can we sleep well?
- D. This is because lights from these devices keep brains excited for a long while.
- E. Half say that they feel tired after getting up.
- F. Have you been suffering from bad sleep?
- G. Many people attach great importance to enough sleep.

### 【全文翻译】

睡眠就像大脑的食物。充足的睡眠有助于身体和大脑的生长发育。然而，许多中国人睡眠不好。许多人对睡眠不够重视。

根据该指数，近四分之一的中国人睡眠不好。一半的人说他们起床后觉得很累。15%的人难以入睡。

北京同仁医院的睡眠专家叶静英说：“如果人们经常在夜间醒来，或者在白天总是感到虚弱和疲倦，他们应该注意自己的睡眠模式。”

许多人在睡觉前玩手机或 ipad。报告称，这是睡眠不好的主要原因之一。其他原因包括压力和坏心情。

我们怎样才能睡得好呢？答案是：保证充足的睡眠。对于成年人来说，每晚七到九个小时的睡眠是完美的，而对于青少年来说，每晚八到九个小时的睡眠是最好的。

拥有良好的睡眠习惯很重要。该报告建议，人们在睡前至少一个小时要远离电子设备。这是因为这些设备发出的光能让大脑长时间保持兴奋。其他建议包括：尽量每天在同一时间睡觉和起床，即使是在周末和假期，每晚睡前做同样的放松事情，比如听轻音乐。

### 1-5: BEACD

#### 1. B

【本题解析】根据后文 However, many Chinese do not sleep well. “然而，许多中国人睡眠不好”可知，前文与后文内容形成转折关系，B 项符合。综上所述，该题选择 B。

#### 2. E

【本题解析】第二段内容主要陈列了一些数据，前文提到四分之一的人睡眠不好，后文提及 15% 的人很难入睡，由此可知横线处也是描述数据，E 项符合。综上所述，该题选择 E。

#### 3. A

【本题解析】根据后文 The report said that this is one of the main reasons for bad sleep “报告称，这是睡眠不好的主要原因之一”可知，横线处描述的是造成睡眠不好的原因，A 项符合。综上所述，该题选择 A。

#### 4. C

【本题解析】根据后文 The answer is: to get enough sleep. “答案是：保证充足的睡眠。”可知，横线处是一个特殊疑问句，C 项符合。综上所述，该题选择 C。

5. D

【本题解析】根据前文 The report suggested that people need to keep away from digital devices for at least an hour before sleep. “该报告建议，人们在睡前至少一个小时要远离电子设备。”，且选项 D 中出现单词复现 these devices, 由此可知, D 项符合。综上所述，该题选择 D。

### Task 5

Some speaking activities do not give an exact picture of your true language skill. But storytelling does. Storytelling is the retelling of a story. It can be a short piece of invented story; \_\_1\_\_ Or you can talk about something that happened in your own life. Storytelling frees you from forming complex ideas and lets you speak easily in English. On the other hand, an activity requiring your opinion can slow you down. \_\_2\_\_

For the storytelling activity, try to provide as much information as possible and aim for a recording of three minutes or fewer. Don't just say, “I studied at the library.” Say, “ \_\_3\_\_ And most of the seats were taken, so I looked around and finally found a place, but it was near the window. It was cold, so I had to keep my coat on,” or something like that.

\_\_4\_\_ Instead, it is to speak at a faster speed because you do not have to stop and think of each idea separately. Before the activity, you'd better speak out loud to yourself a few times to make sure you have your main points in mind.

When listening to the recording, do not expect to find all or even most grammar or vocabulary mistakes. \_\_5\_\_ After the first recording, record yourself telling the same story at least once more and take note of your progress. But avoid memorizing your speech.

- A. Put your speech into written or typed form.
- B. The goal of giving such information is not to fill the time.
- C. I walked into the library and thought about where I should sit.
- D. That is because it forces you to think about your ideas as you say them.
- E. Choose a place that you know well, like your home or a nearby bus station.
- F. But you can easily find some mistakes, such as wrong verb and noun endings.
- G. or it can be the retelling of a news event.

### 【全文翻译】

一些口语活动并不能准确反映您的真实语言技能，但讲故事却可以。讲故事是对故事的复述。它可以是一个简短的虚构故事，或者它可以是对新闻事件的复述。或者你可以谈谈你自己生活中发生的事情。讲故事使您免于形成复杂的想法，让您轻松地用英语说话。另一方面，需要您意见的活动会让你慢下来，那是因为它迫使你在说的时候思考你的想法。

对于讲故事的活动，尽量提供尽可能多的信息，并以三分钟或更短的录音为目标。不要只是说：“我在图书馆学习。要说：“我走进图书馆，想着我应该坐在哪里。而且大部分座位

都被占用了，所以我环顾四周，终于找到了一个地方，但它靠近窗户。天气很冷，所以我不得不穿上外套。”或者类似的东西。

提供此类信息的目的不是为了打发时间。相反，它是以更快的速度说话，因为你不必停下来单独思考每个想法。在活动之前，你最好大声对自己说几次，以确保你牢记你的要点。

在听录音时，不要指望找到所有甚至大多数语法或词汇错误。但是你很容易发现一些错误，比如错误的动词和名词结尾。第一次录制后，至少再记录一次自己讲述的同一个故事，并记下你的进度。但要避免背诵你的演讲。

### 1-5: GDCBF

#### 1. G

【本题解析】根据前文 It can be a short piece of invented story “它可以是简短的虚构的故事” 和后文 Or you can talk about something that happened in your own life “也可以是生活中发生的事，” 可知，描述的都是 storytelling 的素材选择，由此可知，空格处仍然描述的是故事的素材，G 项符合。综上所述，该题选择 G。

#### 2. D

【本题解析】根据前文可知，此处指出讲故事的过程中让你发表意见，会减慢你的速度，后面应该交代该结果的原因。D 选项指出，因为在讲过是过程中，它迫使你思考自己的想法，所以会减慢你的速度，符合语境。综上所述，该题选择 D。

#### 3. C

【本题解析】根据后文可知，此处描述的是作者在图书馆学习，具体寻找座位的过程。C 选项与下文呼应，指出作者走进图书馆，想着自己要坐在哪里，符合语境。综上所述，该题选择 C。

#### 4. B

【本题解析】根据前文 “And most of the seats were taken... my coat on” 以及后一句可知，描述在图书馆寻找座位的具体过程，以及天气等状况的这些信息是有一定目的的，目的是用更快的速度说话，这样自己不必停下来单独思考每个想法；根据 instead 可知，设空处与此目的构成转折。B 选项承上启下，指出在描述寻找座位的信息其目的是不是为了打发时间，而是让自己用更快的速度说话，使自己不必停下来单独思考每个想法；同时选项中的 such information 指代前文的 “寻找座位的具体信息”，该选项符合语境。综上所述，该题选择 B。

#### 5. F

【本题解析】根据前一句可知，此处指出在听录音时候，不要期望能多找到大部分的语法或者词汇错误；设空处应该指出能够发现的是什么错误。F 选项承接前文，指出很容易发现的是比如动词和名词的词尾错误等一些错误，符合语境。综上所述，该题选择 F。

## Task 6

Self-esteem is the ruling view you have of yourself. This includes your beliefs about your inner qualities and how you think others see you. \_\_1\_\_ Someone can develop low self-esteem even when

they are highly functional and greatly skilled. Understanding this mysterious emotional currency might be the key to unlocking your own self-worth.

People with healthy self-esteem don't need to boast about themselves to others. People with low self-esteem may tell you how much everyone loves them, what a great job they do at work, and how amazing they are at pretty everything under the sun even though they really wonder if it's true. People may see them as obnoxious or "full of themselves". \_\_2\_\_ They are not shy about sharing ideas, including constructive criticisms of others. They also take care of themselves without second-guessing or apologizing. They are the people who we say seem "sure of themselves".

If you're starting to think you may have low self-esteem, you can work on the way you talk to yourself. When you turn off negative self-talk, you can open the floor to positive reinforcements and access the courage to show different sides of yourself. It isn't going to feel good at first, though. Keep going until it becomes less and less and maybe even a few awkward laughs in the mirror may help. \_\_3\_\_

However, in serious cases of low or even non-existent self-esteem, you may want to call in a professional or a specialist. Good mental health is important, and professionals doing psychotherapy do not pass judgement or give corrections. \_\_4\_\_ It is the best way to get at the roots of your real self-esteem problems.

\_\_5\_\_ It will take some work but your entire life—from your relationships to your body image to your work habits—will be touched with the kind of power that only comes from someone believing in themselves. This is the hardest part, and the greatest leap. With some changes and support, you can improve your self-esteem and see how everything else changes as a result.

- A. Self-esteem is not always rooted in reality, though.
- B. You have the power to shape a new self-perception.
- C. This encourages you to speak openly without worry.
- D. The real test of character is whether they can learn from their mistakes.
- E. Self-esteem refers to a person's overall sense of his or her value or worth.
- F. People with a healthy level of self-esteem present themselves with a casual confidence.
- G. With some practice and persistence, you will win this internal struggle to see your self-worth.

### 【全文翻译】

自尊是你对自己的统治观点。这包括你對自己内在品质的信念，以及你认为别人如何看待你。然而，自尊并不总是植根于现实。有人可能会发展出低自尊，即使他们功能强大且技能娴熟。了解这种神秘的情感货币可能是解锁自我价值的关键。

自尊心健康的人不需要向他人吹嘘自己。自卑的人可能会告诉你每个人都有多爱他们，他们的工作中做得多么出色，以及他们在阳光下几乎所有事情上都是多么令人惊叹，即使他们真的想知道这是否属实。人们可能会认为他们令人讨厌或“充满自我”。自尊心健康的人

会以一种随意的自信来表现自己。他们并不羞于分享想法，包括对他人的建设性批评。他们也会照顾好自己，不会事后猜测或道歉。他们就是我们所说的“对自己有信心”的人。

如果你开始认为自己可能自卑，你可以改变你自言自语的方式。当你关闭消极的自我对话时，你可以为积极的强化敞开大门，并获得展示自己不同方面的勇气。不过，一开始感觉并不好。继续前进，直到它变得越来越少，也许对着镜子里发出几声尴尬的笑声可能会有所帮助。通过一些练习和坚持，你会赢得这场内在的斗争，看到你的自我价值。

但是，在自尊心低甚至没有自尊心的严重情况下，您可能需要致电专业人士或专家。良好的心理健康很重要，从事心理治疗的专业人员不会做出判断或纠正。这鼓励了你无忧无虑地开诚布公地说话。这是找到你真正自尊问题的根源的最好方法。

你有能力塑造一种新的自我认知。这需要一些工作，但你的整个生活——从你的人际关系到你的身体形象，再到你的工作习惯——都会被那种只有相信自己的人才能够感受到的力量所触动。这是最难的部分，也是最大的飞跃。通过一些改变和支持，你可以提高你的自尊心，看看其他一切是如何改变的。

### 1-5: AFGCB

#### 6. A

【本题解析】空格后一句“有些人即使很能干、很有技能，也可能会发展出低自尊。”这个例子与空格前没有呼应，选项 A “Self-esteem is not always rooted in reality, though.然而，自尊并不总是根植于现实。”与这个例子存在论点和论据的关系。综上所述，该题选择 A。

#### 7. F

【本题解析】这段第一句“People with healthy self-esteem don't need to boast about themselves others.有健康自尊的人不需要向别人吹嘘自己。”可见，整一段都在讲健康自尊的人们。再者空格后“They are not shy about sharing ideas, including constructive criticisms of others.他们不羞于分享想法，包括对他人的建设性批评。”可知，选项 F 的“People with a healthy level of self-esteem”与整段的指代一致。综上所述，该题选择 F。

#### 8. G

【本题解析】根据空格前可知，讲述改变低自尊状态的方法，与选项 G 中的练习和坚持这些方法相对应。综上所述，该题选择 G。

#### 9. C

【本题解析】空格前“professionals doing psychotherapy do not pass judgement or give corrections.做心理治疗的专业人员不会通过判断或给予纠正。”可知，这个现象与选项 C 中指代的 this 指代一致，专业人员不会判断或者纠正，所以这将鼓励你去放开说。综上所述，该题选择 C。

#### 10. B

【本题解析】空格后“It will take some work but your entire life from your relationships to your body image to your work habits. 这需要付出一些努力，但你的整个生活——从你的人际关系到你的身体形象，再到你的工作习惯。”可知 it 指代与选项 B 相一致，可知新的自我认知需要一些努力，但会让你受益颇多。综上所述，该题选择 B。

## 第六章 选词填空

## Task 1

Hand washing with soap can reduce illnesses. One of the earliest \_\_1\_\_ to stop the spread of illness is to wash your hands. However, many children haven't \_\_2\_\_ the right habit of hand washing. Children do not wash their hands often enough or long enough. It's such a \_\_3\_\_ habit, but children aren't doing it. Issar and his friend decided to \_\_4\_\_ the problem using a fun method. They tried many times and created a tool called Soapen. It turned hand washing \_\_5\_\_ a fun activity.

As the name suggests, Soapen is a pen \_\_6\_\_ is made out of soap. The children draw on the hands with Soapen and then wash the drawing off. The colors will remain on the children's hands \_\_7\_\_ they spend enough time washing them off. Soapen proves \_\_8\_\_ because it enables teachers to make sure each children have washed their hands \_\_9\_\_.

Children wash hands much \_\_10\_\_ than before because they like drawing on hands. "Soapen does help children to make a good habit of hand washing," said Issar.

- |             |                |              |              |
|-------------|----------------|--------------|--------------|
| A. useful   | B. unless      | C. ways      | D. chances   |
| E. into     | F. which       | G. developed | H. supports  |
| I. properly | J. longer      | K. solve     | L. dangerous |
| M. simple   | N. maintaining | O. quickly   |              |

## 【全文翻译】

用肥皂洗手可以减少疾病。阻止疾病传播的最早方法之一就是洗手。然而，许多孩子还没有养成正确的洗手习惯。孩子们洗手的次数和时间都不够长。这是一个很简单的习惯，但是孩子们却不这么做。伊萨尔和他的朋友决定用一种有趣的方法来解决这个问题。他们尝试了很多次，创造了一种叫做肥皂笔的工具。它把洗手变成了一项有趣的活动。

顾名思义，肥皂笔是一种由肥皂制成的笔。孩子们用肥皂在手上画画，然后把画洗掉。这些颜色会留在孩子们的手上，除非他们花足够的时间洗掉。肥皂笔被证明是有用的，因为它使教师能够确保每个孩子都正确地洗手了。

孩子们洗手的时间比以前长了，因为他们喜欢在手上画画。伊萨尔说：“肥皂确实能帮助孩子养成洗手的好习惯。”

## 1-5: CGMKE

1. C

【本题解析】考查**名词**。根据横线前的结构 one of + 名词复数 “……之一”，可知横线处需要填入名词复数。C. ways “方法”和 D. chances “机会；概率”符合词性，但根据句意“阻止疾病传播的最早方法之一就是洗手”，可知 C 符合。综上所述，该题选择 C。

2. G



【本题解析】考查**动词**。根据横线前是助动词 *haven't* 可知此处须填入动词的过去分词形式，*have/has done* 构成现在完成时，符合的只有 G 选项。综上所述，该题选择 G。

3. M

【本题解析】考查**形容词**。根据横线前后的格式 *a \_\_\_\_\_ habit*，可知此处需要填入形容词。A. *useful* “有用的”，L. *dangerous* “危险的” 和 M. *simple* “简单的” 符合词性，但根据句意 “这是一个很简单的习惯，但是孩子们却不这么做”，可知 M 符合。综上所述，该题选择 M。

4. K

【本题解析】考查**动词**。根据横线前的短语 *decide to do sth.* “决定做某事” 可知，横线处应填入动词原型，K 符合。综上所述，该题选择 K。

5. E

【本题解析】考查**介词**。根据固定用法 *turn...into...* “把……变成……” 可知，此处需要介词 *into*。综上所述，该题选择 E。

## 6-10: FBAIJ

6. F

【本题解析】考查**连词**。根据 “谓语个数=连词个数+1” 可知，该句因为有两个谓语动词，所以横线处需要填入连词。又因从句是在名词 *pen* 之后，可知是定语从句，先行词 *pen* 是物，在从句中作主语，用 *which*。综上所述，该题选择 F。

7. B

【本题解析】考查**连词**。根据 “谓语个数=连词个数+1” 可知，该句因为有两个谓语动词，所以横线处需要填入连词。而选项中只有 B. *unless* “除非” 符合词性。综上所述，该题选择 B。

8. A

【本题解析】考查**形容词**。根据横线前是系动词 *prove* 可知，系动词后跟形容词作其表语，A. *useful* “有用的” 和 L. *dangerous* “危险的” 符合词性。根据句意 “肥皂笔被证明是有用的”，可知 A 正确。综上所述，该题选择 A。

9. I

【本题解析】考查**副词**。根据前文 *because it enables teachers to make sure each children have washed their hands*, “因为它使教师能够确保每个孩子都洗手了”，前文内容完整，可知横线处应放入副词作状语，I. *properly* “正确地，恰当地” 和 O. *quickly* “快速地” 符合词性，根据句意可知，I 项符合。综上所述，该题选择 I。

10. J

【本题解析】考查**形容词**。根据横线后的 *than* 可知，横线处应该填入比较级，J 项符合。综上所述，该题选择 J。

## Task 2

There are lots of places of interest in Henan. One of the most \_\_\_1\_\_\_ places is the Red Flag Canal (红旗渠) which was built on the side of cliffs of the Taihang Mountains.

The area was \_\_2\_\_ dry with low rainfall because of its geographical conditions (地理条件). The local people used to \_\_3\_\_ a hard life because of the shortage of water. So they decided to dig a canal to change the \_\_4\_\_. They planned to take water \_\_5\_\_ the Zhang River to Lixian county. The Red Flag Canal was started to build in the 1960s. The whole project took ten years to \_\_6\_\_. It was really hard work. People used simple \_\_7\_\_ to dig the canal, completely by hand. Now it has greatly \_\_8\_\_ local people's life by bringing water to them and serves as the lifeline from the country.

Nowadays, some parts of the Red Flag Canal are open to tourists. Every year thousands of students \_\_9\_\_ the Red Flag Canal. While they move along and cross over the canal, they will learn \_\_10\_\_ the spirit of "Red Flag Canal" is and know how great the Chinese people are.

### 【全文翻译】

河南有许多名胜古迹。其中最著名的地方是红旗渠，它建在太行山的悬崖边上。

由于地理条件的原因，该地区非常干燥，降雨量少。由于缺水，当地人民过去过着艰苦的生活。所以他们决定挖一条运河来改变这种状况。他们计划从张江取水到礼县。红旗渠始建于 20 世纪 60 年代。整个工程花了十年时间才完成。这真的很辛苦。人们用简单的工具挖掘运河，完全靠手工。现在，它为当地人民带来了水，极大地改善了他们的生活，成为了国家的生命线。

如今，红旗运河的一些部分对游客开放。每年都有成千上万的学生参观红旗渠。当他们沿着运河前进，穿越运河时，他们将了解到“红旗渠”的精神是什么，知道中国人民是多么伟大。

### 1-5: KGBEH

#### 1. K

【本题解析】考查**形容词**。根据横线前 the most 可知，横线处需要填入形容词，K. famous “著名的”和 M. urgent “迫切的”符合词性，但根据句意“其中最著名的地方是红旗渠”，可知 K 符合。综上所述，该题选择 K。

#### 2. G

【本题解析】考查**副词**。根据横线前后 was \_\_\_\_\_ dry 结构可知，横线处需要填入副词修饰形容词 dry，G. extremely “极其，非常”和 O. successfully “成功地”符合词性，但根据句意“该地区非常干燥”，可知 G 符合。综上所述，该题选择 G。

#### 3. E

【本题解析】考查**动词**。根据横线前 used to do “过去常……”可知，横线处需要填入动词原形。D. complete “完成”，E. live “过着……(生活)，居住”和 J. visit “参观，拜访”符合词性，但根据句意“当地人民过去过着艰苦的生活”，可知 E 符合。综上所述，该题选择 E。

#### 4. B

【本题解析】考查**名词**。根据横线前的定冠词 the 可知，横线处需要填入名词，B. situation “情



况，状况”，C. decision “决定”和 I. tools “工具”符合词性，但根据句意“所以他们决定挖一条运河来改变这种状况”，可知 B 符合。综上所述，该题选择 B。

5. H

【本题解析】考查介词。本题考查固定介词短语 from...to... “从……到……”，句子意思“他们计划从张江取水到礼县”。综上所述，该题选择 H。

#### 6-10: DILJN

6. D

【本题解析】考查动词。根据横线前的 to 可知，横线处需要填入动词原形，D. complete “完成”和 J. visit “参观，拜访”符合词性，但根据句意“整个工程花了十年时间才完成”，可知 D 符合。综上所述，该题选择 D。

7. I

【本题解析】考查名词。根据横线前是 simple 形容词，可知横线处需要填入名词，C. decision “决定”和 I. tools “工具”符合词性，但根据句意“人们用简单的工具挖掘运河”，可知 I 符合。综上所述，该题选择 I。

8. L

【本题解析】考查动词。根据横线前助动词 have 可知，横线处需要填入过去分词，have/has done 构成现在完成时，L. improved 符合。综上所述，该题选择 L。

9. J

【本题解析】考查动词。根据整个句子缺乏谓语，J. visit 选项符合。综上所述，该题选择 J。

10. N

【本题解析】考查连词。根据 they will learn \_\_10\_\_ the spirit of “Red Flag Canal” is 此句中含有 2 个谓语，可知横线处需要填入连词，引导宾语从句，A. if “是否”和 N. what “什么”符合词性。但根据句意“他们将了解到“红旗渠”的精神是什么”，可知 N 符合。综上所述，该题选择 N。

### Task 3

Have you ever heard the story about Miss Evans? It is a true story. Maybe many people have read about it. One afternoon in April 1912, a new ship set off from England to America on its first \_\_1\_\_. It was one of the \_\_2\_\_ and finest ships at that time and on it were over 2,200 people. It was cold, but the trip was pleasant and people were \_\_3\_\_ themselves. The next day was even \_\_4\_\_. People could see icebergs \_\_5\_\_ and there. It was night. Suddenly the man on watch shouted, “Look out! Iceberg! Iceberg ahead!” It was too late. The ship \_\_6\_\_ the iceberg and came to a stop. There was a very big hole in the ship and \_\_7\_\_ began come inside. Slowly the ship started to go down. People had to leave the ship. Women and children were the first to get into the lifeboats. Suddenly a woman shouted, “Please make room for me. My children are in that boat. I must go with them! Please!”

“There’s no more room here,” someone shouted back. The children \_\_8\_\_ their mother and began to cry. A young woman was sitting near the poor children. She stood up “Here,” she shouted. “Take my place! I’m not married and I have no children.”

She got out and the \_\_9\_\_ mother joined her children in the lifeboat. Soon after that, the ship went down. More than 1,500 people lost their lives.

\_\_10\_\_ those was the young woman. Who was she? Her name was Miss Evans and she was going home to Boston. But nobody knew more about her than that.

- |             |           |          |             |
|-------------|-----------|----------|-------------|
| A. leave    | B. colder | C. old   | D. trip     |
| E. largest  | F. hit    | G. here  | H. thankful |
| I. enjoying | J. water  | K. heard | L. more     |
| M. among    | N. room   | O. news  |             |

### 1-5: DEIBG

1. D

【本题解析】本题考查**名词**。根据前面是数词 first，后面就应该放名词。根据句意，此处应该为 trip 旅行。综上所述，该题选择 D。

2. E

【本题解析】本题考查**形容词**。根据横线后面是 and，故横线处应该也用一个形容词最高级。根据句意，此处应该为 largest 最大的。综上所述，该题选择 E。

3. I

【本题解析】本题考查**动词**。横线前面是 be 动词，后面接名词或者动词 ing 或形容词。根据句意，此处应该为 enjoying 享受。综上所述，该题选择 I。

4. B

【本题解析】本题考查**形容词**。根据横线前面是 be 动词，后面接名词或者动词 ing 或者形容词。根据句意，此处应该用 colder 更冷的。综上所述，该题选择 B。

5. G

【本题解析】本题考查**副词**。根据句意，此处应该用 here 这里。Here and there 在各处。综上所述，该题选择 G。

### 6-10: FJKHM

6. F

【本题解析】本题考查**动词**。横线前面是 and，横线处就该放动词。根据句意，此处应该用 hit 撞击。综上所述，该题选择 F。

7. J

【本题解析】本题考查**名词**。根据横线前面这句话缺主语。根据句意，此处应该为 water 水。综上所述，该题选择 J。

8. K

【本题解析】本题考查**动词**。这句话缺一个谓语动词。根据句意，此处应该为 heard 听到。综上所述，该题选择 K。

9. H

【本题解析】本题考查**形容词**。横线后面是一个名词，前面应该放一个形容词。根据句意，此处应该为 thankful 感激的。综上所述，该题选择 H。

10. M

【本题解析】本题考查**介词**。根据句意，此处应该为 among 在……中。综上所述，该题选择 M。

#### Task 4

Shi Fang spends more than 4000 yuan a month shopping, but she rarely goes to a shopping mall.

“Who needs a shopping mall \_\_1\_\_ you have Taobao? I am a Taobaoer,” says Shi, 28, a writer in Beijing.

Taobao, China's largest \_\_2\_\_ shopping site, has become an important part of Shi Fang's life. She \_\_3\_\_ half of her monthly salary on Taobao.

A growing number of Chinese Internet users like Shi have found the joys of online shopping. Most online shoppers are \_\_4\_\_ or young workers aged 18 to 30. More women shop online than men.

The biggest attraction for buyers is the \_\_5\_\_ price of online goods. Buyers can also check the information \_\_6\_\_. They can compare the prices of the same kind of goods \_\_7\_\_ different sellers, and choose the cheapest one.

While some may question the security of online shopping, Shi Fang said, “It's very safe and convenient. \_\_8\_\_ you receive the goods from the sellers and are satisfied with \_\_9\_\_, the shop owner will not get the money. You can also get a refund if you want to return the goods.”

“Online shopping provides a convenient way for customers \_\_10\_\_ want to shop for variety,” said Professor Liu, an expert on Internet economy.

- |           |           |             |              |
|-----------|-----------|-------------|--------------|
| A. from   | B. who    | C. low      | D. different |
| E. them   | F. easily | G. healthy  | H. already   |
| I. spends | J. online | K. students | L. talk      |
| M. high   | N. Unless | O. if       |              |

#### 【全文翻译】

石芳每月购物花费超过 4000 元，但她很少去购物中心。

“如果你有淘宝，谁会需要一个购物中心？我是淘宝人，” 28 岁的北京作家石说。

淘宝，中国最大的在线购物网站，已经成为石坊生活的重要组成部分。她把月薪的一半

花在淘宝上。

越来越多的中国互联网用户，比如施，已经找到了网上购物的乐趣。大多数网上购物者都是 18 岁至 30 岁的学生或年轻工人。网上购物的女性多于男性。

对买家最大的吸引力是网上商品的低价。买家也可以轻松查看信息。他们可以比较不同卖家的同类商品的价格，然后选择最便宜的。

虽然有些人可能会质疑网上购物的安全性，但施方表示：“这非常安全和方便。除非你收到卖家的商品并对它们感到满意，否则店主不会拿到钱。如果你想退货，也可以获得退款。”

网络经济专家刘教授表示：“网上购物为想购物的顾客提供了一种便捷的方式。”

### 1-5: OJIKC

1. O

【本题解析】本题考查**连词**。根据这句话有两个谓语，缺一个连词。根据句意，此处应该为 if 如果。综上所述，该题选择 O。

2. J

【本题解析】本题考查**形容词**。根据横线后面是名词，故横线处应该放一个形容词。根据句意，此处应该为 online 线上的。综上所述，该题选择 J。

3. I

【本题解析】本题考查**动词**。这句话缺一个谓语动词。根据句意，此处应该为 spends 花费。综上所述，该题选择 I。

4. K

【本题解析】本题考查**名词**。根据横线后面是 or young workers，故横线处应该也是表示人的词。根据句意，此处应该用 students 学生。综上所述，该题选择 K。

5. C

【本题解析】本题考查**形容词**。横线后面是一个名词，故横线处应该用形容词。根据句意，此处应该用 low 低的。综上所述，该题选择 C。

### 6-10: FANEB

6. F

【本题解析】本题考查**副词**。根据句意，此处应该用 easily 容易地。综上所述，该题选择 F。

7. A

【本题解析】本题考查**介词**。compare...from 与……作比较。根据句意，此处应该为 from 与……。综上所述，该题选择 A。

8. N

【本题解析】本题考查**连词**。这句话缺一个连词。根据句意，此处应该为 unless 除非。综上所述，该题选择 N。

9. E

【本题解析】本题考查**代词**。be satisfied with sb. 对某人满意。根据句意，此处应该为 them 他

们。综上所述，该题选择 E。

10. B

【本题解析】本题考查**连词**。这个句子缺一个连词。根据句意，此处应该为 who 谁。综上所述，该题选择 B。

### Task 5

Children do not think the way adults do. For most of the first year of life, if something is out of sight, it's out of mind. If you cover a baby's \_\_1\_\_ toy with a piece of cloth, the baby thinks the toy has disappeared and stops looking for it. A 4-year-old may \_\_2\_\_ that a sister has more fruit juice when it is only the shapes of the glasses that differ, not the \_\_3\_\_ of juice.

Yet children are smart in their own way. Like good little scientists, children are always testing their child-sized \_\_4\_\_ about how things work. When your child throws her spoon on the floor for the sixth time as you try to feed her, and you say, "That's enough! I will not pick up your spoon again!" the child will \_\_5\_\_ test your claim. Are you serious? Are you angry? What will happen if she throws the spoon again? She is not doing this to drive you \_\_6\_\_; rather, she is learning that her desires and yours can differ, and that sometimes those \_\_7\_\_ are important and sometimes they are not.

How and why does children's thinking change? In the 1920s, Swiss psychologist Jean Piaget proposed that children's cognitive (认知的) abilities unfold \_\_8\_\_, like the blooming of a flower, almost independent of what else is \_\_9\_\_ in their lives. Although many of his specific conclusions have been \_\_10\_\_ or modified over the years, his ideas inspired thousands of studies by investigators all over the world.

- |                |                |              |              |
|----------------|----------------|--------------|--------------|
| A. advocate    | B. amount      | C. confirmed | D. crazy     |
| E. definite    | F. differences | G. favorite  | H. happening |
| I. immediately | J. naturally   | K. obtaining | L. primarily |
| M. protest     | N. rejected    | O. theories  |              |

#### 【全文翻译】

孩子们不像成年人那样思考问题。在生命第一年的大部分时间里，如果有什么东西看不见，也就不去想了。如果你用一块布盖住婴儿最喜欢的玩具，婴儿会认为玩具不见了，不再找它。一个 4 岁的孩子可能会抗议说，姐姐有更多的果汁，其实只是杯子的形状不同，而不是果汁的量不同。

然而，孩子们有自己的聪明之处。就像优秀的小科学家一样，孩子们总是在测试他们关于事物如何运作的孩子大小的理论。当你的孩子第六次把勺子扔在地板上时，你想喂她，你说：“够了！我不会再拿你的勺子了！孩子会马上测试你的说法。你是认真的吗？你生气了吗？如果她再把勺子扔出去会怎么样？她这么做不是为了把你逼疯；相反，她正在学习她的欲望和你的欲

望是不同的，这些不同有时是重要的，有时不是。

孩子们的思维是如何以及为什么改变的?20 世纪 20 年代，瑞士心理学家让·皮亚杰 (Jean Piaget) 提出，儿童的认知能力是自然发展的，就像花朵盛开一样，几乎独立于他们生活中的其他主要因素。尽管他的许多具体结论多年来被拒绝或修改，但他的想法启发了世界各地研究者的数千项研究。

### 1-5: GMBOI

#### 1. G

【本题解析】本题考查**形容词**。本空前是表示从属关系的 baby's，空后是名词 toy，本空需要形容词，结合上下文，“如果你用一块布遮住孩子们的玩具”，锁定 G 选项。综上所述，该题选择 G。

#### 2. M

【本题解析】本题考查**动词**。本空所在句子有 A four-year-old 充当主语，空前是情态动词 may，空后是 that 引导一个完整句子，所以本空需要填动词原形充当谓语，结合上下文，“一个四岁的孩子可能会 XX 他的姐姐有更多果汁，当只有杯子的形状不同，而不是果汁的 XX”，锁定 M 选项，抗议。综上所述，该题选择 M。

#### 3. B

【本题解析】本题考查**名词**。本句提到“一个四岁的孩子可能会 XX 他的姐姐有更多果汁，当只有杯子的形状不同，而不是果汁的 XX”，锁定 B 选项，数量。综上所述，该题选择 B。

#### 4. O

【本题解析】本题考查**名词**。本空所在句子大意为，“像小科学家们一样，孩子们总是测试他们关于事物的孩子式 XX”，结合下文关于丢勺子的内容可以锁定 O 选项，理论。综上所述，该题选择 O。

#### 5. I

【本题解析】本题考查**副词**。空前是情态动词 will，空后是动词原形 test，本空需要副词，锁定 I 选项，立刻。综上所述，该题选择 I。

### 6-10: DFJLN

#### 6. D

【本题解析】本题考查**形容词**。本空需要理解固定搭配 drive sb. crazy，意为“使人抓狂”，锁定 D 选项，疯狂。综上所述，该题选择 D。

#### 7. F

【本题解析】本题考查**名词**。本空所在句子意思是，“他知道他的想法和你的可能不同，而且有时候那些 XX 很重要有时候他们又不重要”，空前是复数代词 those 指代前文的复数名词，所以只能填复数名词，锁定 F 选项，区别。综上所述，该题选择 F。

#### 8. J

【本题解析】本题考查**副词**。本空句子说“某科学家指出，孩子们的认知能力……”，空前是动



词 unfold,意为显露,而选项中没有合适的名词充当宾语,所以这个从句应该是主谓结构,因为本空需要副词,锁定 J 选项,天生地。综上所述,该题选择 J。

9. L

【本题解析】本题考查副词。前文提到“某科学家指出,孩子们的认知能力天生具备,就像花的盛开,几乎独立于生活里其他 XX”,除开本空以外,剩余部分是完整句子 what else is in their lives,因此本空需要副词,锁定 L,主要地。综上所述,该题选择 L。

10. N

【本题解析】本题考查动词。本句意思“尽管他的许多结论在多年来已经被 XX 或者修改,他的想法仍然激励了世界上的许多调查者的研究”,本空需要过去分词,排除强干扰选项 confirmed 确认,与句子意思不符,锁定 N 选项,rejected 驳回。综上所述,该题选择 N。

## Task 6

For many Americans, 2013 ended with an unusually bitter cold spell. Late November and December \_\_1\_\_ early snow and bone-chilling temperatures in much of the country, part of a year when, for the first time in two \_\_2\_\_, record-cold days will likely turn out to have outnumbered record-warm ones. But the U.S. was the exception: November was the warmest ever \_\_3\_\_, and current data indicates that 2013 is likely to have been the fourth hottest year on record.

Enjoy the snow now, because \_\_4\_\_ are good that 2014 will be even hotter, perhaps the hottest year since records have been kept.

That's because, scientists are predicting, 2014 will be an El Nino year.

El Nino, Spanish for “the child”, \_\_5\_\_ when surface ocean waters in the southern Pacific become abnormally warm. So large is the Pacific, covering 30% of the planet's surface, that the \_\_6\_\_ energy generated by its warming is enough to touch off a series of weather changes around the world. El Ninos are \_\_7\_\_ with abnormally dry conditions in Southeast Asia and Australia. They can lead to extreme rain in parts of North and South America, even as southern Africa \_\_8\_\_ dry weather. Marine life may be affected too: El Ninos can \_\_9\_\_ the rising of the cold, nutrient-rich (营养丰富的) water that supports large fish \_\_10\_\_, and the unusually warm ocean temperatures can destroy coral (珊瑚).

- |                 |               |                |             |
|-----------------|---------------|----------------|-------------|
| A. additional   | B. associated | C. bore        | D. chances  |
| E. communicated | F. decades    | G. experiences | H. globally |
| I. logically    | J. occurs     | K. populations | L. realize  |
| M. reduce       | N. saw        | O. specific    |             |

### 【全文翻译】

对许多美国人来说, 2013年以一场罕见的寒流结束。11月下旬和12月, 全国大部分地区出现了早雪和刺骨的气温, 这是20年来第一次创纪录的寒冷天数可能超过创纪录的温暖天数。

但美国是个例外：11月是全球有史以来最热的一年，目前的数据显示，2013年可能是有记录以来第四热的一年。

享受现在的雪吧，因为2014年很有可能会更热，也许是有记录以来最热的一年。

这是因为，科学家预测，2014年将是厄尔尼诺年。

厄尔尼诺在西班牙语中意为“孩子”，当南太平洋表层海水异常温暖时就会发生。太平洋太大了，覆盖了地球表面的30%，它变暖所产生的特定能量足以引发世界各地的一系列天气变化。厄尔尼诺现象与东南亚和澳大利亚的异常干旱有关。它们会导致北美和南美部分地区的极端降雨，即使南部非洲经历干旱天气。海洋生物也可能受到影响：厄尔尼诺现象可能会减少养活大量鱼类的营养丰富的冷水的上升，而异常温暖的海洋温度可能会破坏珊瑚。

### 1-5: NFHDJ

1. N

【本题解析】 本题考查**动词**。saw 第一空显然缺少谓语，优先考虑动词，结合语义并根据 Late November and December 可以推出应选择过去式动词，故答案锁定 saw。综上所述，该题选择 N。

2. F

【本题解析】 本题考查**名词**。根据 two，首选复数名词，结合语义，“for the first time in the two decades”，二十年来头一次。综上所述，该题选择 F。

3. H

【本题解析】 本题考查**副词**。句子为主系表结构，不缺主要成分，所以首选副词，“十一月向来是全球范围内最温暖的一个月。”综上所述，该题选择 H。

4. D

【本题解析】 本题考查**名词**。缺少主语，并且谓语是 are，所以首选复数形式的名词，结合前文 Enjoy the snow now，“享受现在的雪吧”，因为“时机是好的”。综上所述，该题选择 D。

5. J

【本题解析】 本题考查**动词**。空格前方有主语，且是单数形式，而后面由 when 引导的时间状语从句的时态是一般现在时，所以主句谓语锁定第三人称单数形式的动词，只能选择 occurs。综上所述，该题选择 J。

### 6-10: ABGMK

6. A

【本题解析】 本题考查**形容词**。空格左为定冠词 the，空格右为名词，中间只能选形容词，选择“特定的”符合语义。综上所述，该题选择 A。

7. B

【本题解析】 本题考查**动词**。空格左为 be 动词，右边为介词 with，中间只能是形容词或动词的过去分词形式，be associated with 表示“与……有联系”，符合原意。综上所述，该题选择 B。

8. G

【本题解析】 本题考查**动词**。空格左为主语 southern Africa，空格内应该为动词的第三人称单



词形式，结合语义，选 G，“南非经历着干燥的天气。综上所述，该题选择 G。

9. M

【本题解析】本题考查**动词**。reduce 空格左为情态动词，空格内必须为动词原形，填 reduce “减少”符合原题。综上所述，该题选择 M。

10. K

【本题解析】本题考查**名词**。populations 空格与左边的 large fish 共同构成动词 support 的宾语，只能选一个名词来作为名词词组，故选 K，“大量的鱼群”。综上所述，该题选择 K。

## 第七章 完型

### Task 1

I used to hate being called upon in class mainly because I didn't like attention drawn to myself. And unless otherwise assigned a seat by the teacher, I always chose to sit at the back of the classroom.

All this \_\_1\_\_ after I joined a sports team. It began when a teacher suggested I try out for the basketball team. At first I thought it was a crazy \_\_2\_\_ because I didn't have a good sense of balance, nor did I have the ability to keep pace with the others on the team and they would tease me. But for the teacher who kept insisting on my “\_\_3\_\_ for it”, I wouldn't have decided to give a try.

Getting up the courage to go to the tryouts was only the half of it! When I first started \_\_4\_\_ the practice sessions, I didn't even know the rules of the game, much worse what I was doing. Sometimes I'd get \_\_5\_\_ and take a shot at the wrong direction, which made me feel really stupid. \_\_6\_\_ I wasn't the only one “new” at the game, so I decided to focus on learning the game, do my best at each practice session, and not be too hard on myself for the things I didn't \_\_7\_\_ “just yet”.

I practiced and practiced. Soon I knew the rules and the “moves”. Being part of a team was fun and motivating. Very soon the competitive \_\_8\_\_ in me was winning over my lack of confidence. With time, I learned how to play and made friends in the process—friends who respected my efforts to work hard and be a team player. I never had so much fun!

With my improved self-confidence comes more praise from teachers and classmates. I have gone from “\_\_9\_\_” in the back of the classroom and not wanting to call attention to myself, to raising my hand—even when I sometimes wasn't and not 100 percent \_\_10\_\_ I had the right answer. Now I have more self-confidence in myself.

#### 【全文翻译】

我过去讨厌在课堂上被点名，主要是因为我不喜欢被人关注。除非老师另分配一个座位，否则我总是选择坐在教室的后面。

这一切都在我加入运动队后改变了。一位老师建议我参加篮球队。起初我认为这是一个疯狂的想法，因为我没有很好的平衡感，也没有能力跟上团队中的其他人，他们会取笑我。要不是老师一直坚持让我“去做吧”，我是不会决定去尝试的。

鼓起勇气去参加选拔赛只是选拔赛的一半！当我刚开始参加训练时，我甚至不知道比赛规则，更不用说我做什么了。有时我会感到困惑，总是搞错方向——这让我觉得自己真的很愚蠢。幸运的是，我并不是唯一一个“新手”，所以我决定专注于学习比赛，在每个练习阶段都做到最好，不对自己还不知道的东西太苛刻。

我不断地练习。很快我就知道了规则和“动作”。成为一个团队的一员是很有趣的和激励人心的。很快，我内心充满竞争的一面就战胜了我缺乏自信的一面。随着时间的推移，我学会了如何玩，并在这个过程中结交了朋友——那些尊重我努力工作并成为一名团队成员的

朋友。我从来没有这么开心过!

随着我自信的提高，老师和同学得到了更多的赞扬。我已经从躲在教室后面，不想引起别人对我自己的注意，变成了举手，即使有时我不能百分之百确定我有正确的答案。

- |                     |                |                |              |
|---------------------|----------------|----------------|--------------|
| 1. A. continued     | B. changed     | C. settled     | D. started   |
| 2. A. idea          | B. plan        | C. belief      | D. saying    |
| 3. A. going         | B. looking     | C. cheering    | D. applying  |
| 4. A. enjoying      | B. preparing   | C. attending   | D. watching  |
| 5. A. committed     | B. motivated   | C. embarrassed | D. confused  |
| 6. A. Interestingly | B. Fortunately | C. Obviously   | D. Hopefully |
| 7. A. want          | B. do          | C. support     | D. know      |
| 8. A. roles         | B. part        | C. mind        | D. value     |
| 9. A. dreaming      | B. playing     | C. relaxing    | D. hiding    |
| 10. A. lucky        | B. happy       | C. sure        | D. satisfied |

#### 1-5: BAACD

##### 1. B

【本题解析】本题考查**动词辨析**。A. continued 继续; B. changed 改变; C. settled 和解; D. started 开始。作者之前不愿意举手回答问题，也不愿意引起别人的注意，但这一切都在作者加入运动队后改变了。综上所述，该题选择 B。

##### 2. A

【本题解析】本题考查**名词辨析**。A. idea 想法; B. plan 计划; C. belief 信仰; D. saying 说法。前文提到 “It began when a teacher suggested I try out for the basketball team. (事情开始于一位老师建议我参加篮球队的选拔。)” 作者运动能力不佳，但是老师仍然想要作者参加篮球队，因此对于作者来讲是一个非常疯狂的 “想法”。综上所述，该题选择 A。

##### 3. A

【本题解析】本题考查**现在分词辨析**。A. going 走; B. looking 看; C. cheering 欢呼; D. applying 申请。根据下文 “I wouldn’t have decided to give it a try. (我不会决定试一试。)” 可知，如果不是老师让作者去做吧，作者是不会想着动起来的。go for it 的意为 “加油，努力争取，放手向前”。综上所述，该题选择 A。

##### 4. C

【本题解析】本题考查**现在分词辨析**。A. enjoying 享受; B. preparing 准备; C. attending 参加; D. watching 观看。根据 “the practice sessions(练习环节)” 可知，指作者刚开始参加训练时。综上所述，该题选择 C。

##### 5. D

【本题解析】本题考查**形容词辨析**。A. committed 尽心尽力的; B. motivated 积极的; C. embarrassed 尴尬的; D. confused 困惑的。根据下文 “take a shot at a wrong direction(投篮的方向

都会搞错)”可知，作者开始训练的时候方向感不好，总是投错方向，因此感到十分困惑。综上所述，该题选择 D。

### 6-10: BDBDC

6. B

【本题解析】本题考查副词辨析。A. Interestingly 有趣地; B. Fortunately 幸运地; C. Obviously 显然地; D. Hopefully 有希望地。根据下文 “I wasn’t the only one “new” at the game, (我不是场上唯一一个“新手”)”可知，作者很幸运并不是唯一一个新人。综上所述，该题选择 B。

7. D

【本题解析】本题考查动词辨析。A. want 想要; B. do 做; C. support 支持; D. know 知道。根据上文 “I didn’t even know the rules of the game. (我甚至不知道比赛的规则)”可知，这里指作者不知道的东西。综上所述，该题选择 D。

8. B

【本题解析】本题考查名词辨析。A. roles 角色; B. part 部分; C. mind 思维; D. value 价值。根据下文 “my lack of confidence(缺乏自信的一面)”于 “the competitive (有竞争力的一面)”是作者身上完全相反地两部分。综上所述，该题选择 B。

9. D

【本题解析】本题考查词义辨析。A. dreaming 梦想; B. playing 玩; C. relaxing 放松; D. hiding 隐藏。根据下文 “not wanting to call attention to myself(不想引起别人的注意)”可知坐在后排可以不引起别人注意，“藏”在人群后面。综上所述，该题选择 D。

10. C

【本题解析】本题考查形容词辨析。A. lucky 幸运的; B. happy 幸福的; C. sure 确定的; D. satisfied 满意的。根据下文 “Now I have more self-confidence in myself. (我现在更加自信了。)”可知，即使不能确定是正确答案，作者也会自信地举起手。综上所述，该题选择 C。

## Task 2

Do you know Mike, my best friend? Maybe you will say, “Yes, I know him very well. He is very \_\_1\_\_. He never studies hard and isn’t good at all the subjects.” But you are wrong. It seems that he has \_\_2\_\_ a lot. He didn’t use to like to study. But now he works \_\_3\_\_ hard. In the past, he used to watch TV and play computer games very late at night. He used to get up at eight o’clock in the morning and hurry to school \_\_4\_\_ breakfast. At school, he didn’t use to listen to the \_\_5\_\_ carefully. He didn’t use to do \_\_6\_\_. He always copied others’ papers in the tests. But now he doesn’t come to school late. He gets up very early and goes to exercise in the morning. He walks to school after breakfast. He says that he must look after his \_\_7\_\_. At school, he often \_\_8\_\_ with a group and asks other students for help when he has \_\_9\_\_. His classmates usually help him with his trouble. He has made great \_\_10\_\_ this term and he got an A in a test last week.

## 【全文翻译】

你认识迈克，我最好的朋友吗？也许你会说，“是的，我很了解他。”他很懒。他从不努力学习，也不擅长所有的科目。”但你错了。他似乎变化很大。他过去并不喜欢学习。但是现在他学习真的很努力。在过去，他经常在深夜看电视和玩电脑游戏。他过去常常早上八点钟起床，不吃早饭就匆匆赶往学校。在学校，他过去常常不认真听老师讲课。他过去不做家庭作业。他总是在考试中抄别人的论文。但现在他上学没有迟到。他很很早，早上去锻炼。早餐后，他步行去学校。他说他必须照顾好他的健康。在学校里，他经常和一群人一起学习，遇到困难时向其他同学求助。这学期他进步很大，上周考试得了 A。

- |                  |             |               |              |
|------------------|-------------|---------------|--------------|
| 1. A. wise       | B. shy      | C. lazy       | D. patient   |
| 2. A. changed    | B. chose    | C. spread     | D. repeated  |
| 3. A. exactly    | B. really   | C. quickly    | D. patiently |
| 4. A. without    | B. with     | C. for        | D. after     |
| 5. A. students   | B. workers  | C. parents    | D. teachers  |
| 6. A. sports     | B. cleaning | C. homework   | D. cooking   |
| 7. A. school     | B. family   | C. study      | D. health    |
| 8. A. translates | B. studies  | C. interviews | D. jumps     |
| 9. A. trouble    | B. interest | C. fun        | D. worries   |
| 10. A. mistakes  | B. progress | C. decisions  | D. friends   |

## 1-5: CABAD

## 1. C

【本题解析】本题考查**形容词辨析**。A. wise 聪明的; B. shy 害羞的; C. lazy 懒惰的; D. patient 耐心的。根据 “He never studies hard and isn’t good at all the subjects. (他从不努力学习,并不是所有的科目都好)” 可知, 麦克很懒惰。综上所述, 该题选择 C。

## 2. A

【本题解析】本题考查**动词辨析**。A. changed 改变; B. chose 选择; C. spread 传播; D. repeated 重复。根据上文 “He never studies hard and isn’t good at all the subjects. (他从不努力学习, 并不是所有的科目都好)” 和 “But you are wrong.” 可知, but 表示转折, 他现在改变很多。综上所述, 该题选择 A。

## 3. B

【本题解析】本题考查**副词辨析**。A. exactly 确切的; B. really 真的; C. quickly 快速的; D. patiently 耐心的。根据 “He didn’t use to like to study. (他过去不喜欢学习。)” 由 but 表示转折可知, 现在他学习真的很努力。综上所述, 该题选择 B。

## 4. A

【本题解析】本题考查**介词辨析**。A. without 无, 没有; B. with 和……一起; C. for 为了; D. after 在……之后。根据 “He used to get up at eight o’clock in the morning and hurry to school. (他过去

常常早上八点钟起床和匆匆赶到学校)”可知，他早上起床迟，匆匆忙忙去上学，没有时间吃早饭。综上所述，该题选择 A。

5. D

【本题解析】本题考查**名词辨析**。A. students 学生; B. workers 工人; C. parents 父母; D. teachers 教师。根据“At school(在学校)”可知，在学校，他过去常常不认真听老师讲课。综上所述，该题选择 D。

### 6-10: CDBAB

6. C

【本题解析】本题考查**名词辨析**。A. sports 运动; B. cleaning 清理; C. homework 作业; D. cooking 烹饪。根据后句“He always copied others’ papers in the tests. (他考试时总是抄袭别人的试卷。)”可知，他不做作业。综上所述，该题选择 C。

7. D

【本题解析】本题考查**名词辨析**。A. school 学校; B. family 家庭; C. study 学习; D. health 健康。根据“He walks to school after breakfast. (他早饭后步行去学校)”可知，他步行去学校，因此推断他为自己的健康考虑。综上所述，该题选择 D。

8. B

【本题解析】本题考查**动词辨析**。A. translates 翻译; B. studies 学习; C. interviews 采访; D. jumps 跳。根据前文“But now he works \_\_3\_\_ hard.”和“with a group(和一群人)”可知，Mike 现在学习努力，在学校里，他经常和一群人一起学习。综上所述，该题选择 B。

9. A

【本题解析】本题考查**名词辨析**。A. trouble 困难，麻烦; B. interest 兴趣; C. fun 乐趣; D. worries 担忧。根据下文“His classmates usually help him with his trouble.”可知，他遇到困难时向其他同学求助。综上所述，该题选择 A。

10. B

【本题解析】本题考查**名词辨析**。A. mistakes 错误; B. progress 进步; C. decisions 决定; D. friends 朋友。根据本句“he got an A in a test last week(上周考试得了 A)”可知，他取得了很大的进步。综上所述，该题选择 B。

### Task 3

In the heart of the city, nestled between the towering skyscrapers, stood a little library that had withstood the test of \_\_1\_\_. Every brick and book in that building held stories not just from the pages, but of the countless souls who had walked its \_\_2\_\_.

Anna, a young writer, often visited this oasis (绿洲) of knowledge. She was on the \_\_3\_\_ of publishing her first book but was facing the crippling self-doubt that often troubles creators. One evening, as she wandered between the shelves, she happened to see an old, dusty \_\_4\_\_. It was a journal from the 1800s, written by a then-unknown writer named Lillian.

As Anna skimmed through the pages, she was \_\_5\_\_ by Lillian's struggles which mirrored her own. Lillian wrote of her rejections, her moments of despair, and the nights she wanted to give up. But she also wrote of her \_\_6\_\_ moments, where the words flowed like a river and the stories took a life of their own.

The final entry was dated a day before Lillian's first book was published. It read, "To the future dreamers who may find this: Remember, every \_\_7\_\_ has its dawn. Your struggles are merely the dark before the morning light. Keep writing, keep dreaming, and one day, your stories will light up someone's \_\_8\_\_ just as you have lit up mine."

Anna felt a connection to Lillian across the centuries. With renewed \_\_9\_\_, she left the library, ready to face the challenges ahead. For in her heart, she carried Lillian's story—a beacon of hope and a testament to the timeless journey of \_\_10\_\_.

### 【全文翻译】

在城市的中心，高耸的摩天大楼之间，矗立着一个经受住了时间考验的小图书馆。这座建筑里的每一块砖和每一本书都有故事，不仅来自书页，还有无数走过这座建筑的灵魂的故事。

安娜是一位年轻的作家，她经常参观这个充满知识的绿洲。她快要出版第一本书，但却面临着严重的自我怀疑，这常常困扰着创作者。一天晚上，当她在书架之间徘徊时，偶然看到一本尘封的旧日记。这是一份 19 世纪的杂志，作者是一位当时不为人知的作家莉莲。

当当 Anna 浏览页面时，她被 Lillian 的挣扎所打动，这与她自己的挣扎如出一辙。莉莲写下了她的拒绝，她绝望的时刻，以及她想要放弃的夜晚。但她也写下了自己的精彩时刻，文字像河流一样流动，故事也有了自己的生命。

最后一篇文章是在莉莲的第一本书出版的前一天。对于未来的梦想家们，你们可能会发现：记住，黑夜也有黎明（黑夜过去就是黎明）。继续写作，继续梦想，总有一天，你的故事会照亮别人的世界，就像你照亮我的世界一样。”

几个世纪以来，安娜一直感受到自己与莉莲之间的联系。带着新的活力，她离开了图书馆，准备迎接未来的挑战。因为在她的眼中，她承载着 Lillian 的故事——一座希望的灯塔，也是写作永恒之旅的见证。

- |                  |             |               |              |
|------------------|-------------|---------------|--------------|
| 1. A. Modernity  | B. time     | C. innovation | D. criticism |
| 2. A. rows       | B. rooms    | C. seats      | D. gates     |
| 3. A. edge       | B. top      | C. end        | D. middle    |
| 4. A. novel      | B. diary    | C. manuscript | D. brochure  |
| 5. A. prevented  | B. amazed   | C. struck     | D. puzzled   |
| 6. A. disorderly | B. ordinary | C. bright     | D. final     |
| 7. A. story      | B. night    | C. path       | D. task      |
| 8. A. day        | B. world    | C. despair    | D. book      |



9. A. energy B. purpose C. hesitation D. perspective  
10. A. creation B. writing C. discovery D. learning

**1-5: BAABC**

1. B

【本题解析】本题考查**名词辨析**。A. modernity 现代性; B. time 时间; C. innovation 创新; D. criticism 批评。根据后文的描述可推知, 这个小小图书馆有着无数的故事, 历史悠久, 经历了时间的洗礼。综上所述, 该题选择 B。

2. A

【本题解析】本题考查**名词辨析**。A. rows 排; B. rooms 房间; C. seats 座位; D. gates 大门。分析语境可知, 该部分的主题是 “a little library(一个小图书馆)”, 同时结合常识, 无论是来这里选择书架上的书, 还是坐在成排的桌子前看书, 人们都会一排一排的走过。因此, 这里应是 “rows”, 用在句中表达来此的人一排一排的走过。综上所述, 该题选择 A。

3. A

【本题解析】本题考查**词义辨析**。A. edge 边缘; B. top 顶端; C. end 末尾; D. middle 中间。固定搭配 “on the edge of doing”, 意为 “快要做某事, 即将做某事”。综上所述, 该题选择 A。

4. B

【本题解析】本题考查**名词辨析**。A. novel 小说; B. diary 日记; C. manuscript 手稿; D. brochure 资料 (或广告) 手册。根据后文 “It was a journal(这是一本日记)” 可知, 这是一本日记。综上所述, 该题选择 B。

5. C

【本题解析】本题考查**动词辨析**。A. prevented 阻止; B. amazed 使震惊; C. struck 引起(强烈感情); D. puzzled 使困惑。根据后文可推知, Lillian 在日记里写到的感受, Anna 都经历过, 感同身受, 所以她有深深的触动。“be struck by”, 意为 “被……所触动, 被……打动”。综上所述, 该题选择 C。

**6-10: CBBAB**

6. C

【本题解析】本题考查**形容词辨析**。A. disorderly 混乱的; B. ordinary 普通的; C. bright 鲜艳的; D. final 最后的, 最终的。分析语境可知, 该句前有 “But(但是)”, 因此, 所选词应与前一句中的 “rejections(排斥)”, “despair(绝望)” 等为反义词。综上所述, 该题选择 C。

7. B

【本题解析】本题考查**名词辨析**。A. story 故事; B. night 黑夜; C. path 小路, 路线; D. task 任务。根据后文可知, 黑暗过去才会有黎明, 即黑夜过去才会有黎明。“every night has its dawn” 意为 “每个夜晚之后都有黎明”。综上所述, 该题选择 B。

8. B

【本题解析】本题考查**名词辨析**。A. day 白天; B. world 世界; C. despair 绝望; D. book 书籍。



根据前文可知, Lillian 的第一本书出版了, 由此可推知, 这里 Lillian 鼓励“后来人”终有一天也能用故事点亮他人的精神世界。综上所述, 该题选择 B。

9. A

【本题解析】本题考查**名词辨析**。A. energy 活力; B. purpose 目的; C. hesitation 犹豫踟蹰; D. perspective 观点。根据前文“Anna felt a connection to Lillian across the centuries. (Anna 觉得自己和 Lillian 有一种跨越几个世纪的联系)”可推知, Anna 受到了鼓励, 重新焕发了精神和活力。综上所述, 该题选择 A。

10. B

【本题解析】本题考查**名词辨析**。A. creation 创造; B. writing 写作; C. discovery 发现; D. learning 学习。根据前文“she carried Lillian’s story. (她带着 Lillian 的故事)”可推知, Anna 继续坚持写作。综上所述, 该题选择 B。

#### Task 4

In China, there are a lot of traditional festivals like Spring Festival, Mid-Autumn Day and Tomb-Sweeping Day. Mid-Autumn Day is very popular. \_\_1\_\_ that day, Chinese people usually get together and \_\_2\_\_ moon cakes. The moon cakes are round \_\_3\_\_ usually have some meat or nuts in it. They also eat nice food and drink some juice. After that, they often \_\_4\_\_ TV. Today is Mid-Autumn Day. In my family, my father is \_\_5\_\_ his car, he will drive to work tomorrow. He loves his \_\_6\_\_ very much. My mother is looking at the moon, and \_\_7\_\_ me a story of Chang’e. She likes the big moon. My sister Lingling is \_\_8\_\_ her American friend Jenny. Jenny is 14 years old, too. She is now in New York in \_\_9\_\_ with her parents. She is telling \_\_10\_\_ what she is doing on Mid-Autumn Day. We all love our Mid-Autumn Day.

#### 【全文翻译】

在中国, 有很多传统节日, 如春节、中秋节、中秋节和清明节。中秋节很流行。在那一天, 中国人通常聚在一起吃月饼。月饼是圆的, 通常有一些肉或坚果在里面。他们也吃美味的食物, 喝一些果汁。吃过之后, 他们经常看电视。在我家, 我爸爸正在洗车, 他明天开车去上班。他非常喜欢他的车。我妈妈正在看月亮, 给我讲嫦娥的故事。她喜欢那个大月亮。我妹妹玲玲正在打电话给她的美国朋友珍妮。珍妮也是 14 岁了。她现在和父母在美国纽约。她正在告诉她中秋节她要做什么。我们都喜欢我们的中秋节。

- |               |            |               |             |
|---------------|------------|---------------|-------------|
| 1. A. In      | B. At      | C. On         | D. For      |
| 2. A. drink   | B. has     | C. eat        | D. cut      |
| 3. A. but     | B. or      | C. so         | D. and      |
| 4. A. see     | B. watch   | C. look       | D. talk     |
| 5. A. opening | B. driving | C. washing    | D. sweeping |
| 6. A. cat     | B. son     | C. moon cakes | D. car      |

- |               |             |               |            |
|---------------|-------------|---------------|------------|
| 7. A. saying  | B. speaking | C. talking    | D. telling |
| 8. A. calling | B. using    | C. connecting | D. sending |
| 9. A. China   | B. America  | C. England    | D. Canada  |
| 10. A. him    | B. her      | C. their      | D. our     |

**1-5: CCDBC**

1. C

【本题解析】本题考查介词辨析。A. In 在; B. At 在; C. On 在(某一天); D. For 为了。“in + 一段时间”表示“多久以后/以内”; on 表示在具体的某一天(如日期、生日、节日或星期几)。根据“Mid-Autumn Day is very popular”可知, 此处指具体的中秋节, 所以用介词 on。综上所述, 该题选择 C。

2. C

【本题解析】本题考查动词辨析。A. drink 喝; B. has 有; C. eat 吃; D. cut 砍。根据“moon cakes.”可知, 在中秋节那天, 中国人通常吃月饼。综上所述, 该题选择 C。

3. D

【本题解析】本题考查连词辨析。A. but 但是; B. or 或者; C. so 因此; D. and 并且。根据“usually have some meat or nuts in it.”可知, 月饼通常是圆的且通常有一些肉或坚果在里面, and 表并列。综上所述, 该题选择 D。

4. B

【本题解析】本题考查动词辨析。A. see 看见; B. watch 观看; C. look 看; D. talk 交谈。根据“TV”可知, 他们经常看电视, watch TV 看电视, 固定搭配。综上所述, 该题选择 B。

5. C

【本题解析】本题考查非谓语动词辨析。A. opening 开; B. driving 驾驶; C. washing 洗; D. sweeping 打扫。根据“he will drive to work tomorrow.”可知, 爸爸明天开车去上班, 从而推知他正在洗车。综上所述, 该题选择 C。

**6-10: DDABB**

6. D

【本题解析】本题考查词义辨析。A. cat 猫; B. son 儿子; C. moon cakes 月饼; D. car 汽车。根据“In my family, my father is \_\_5\_\_ his car, he will drive to work tomorrow.”可知, 作者爸爸非常喜爱他的汽车。综上所述, 该题选择 D。

7. D

【本题解析】本题考查非谓语动词辨析。A. saying 说, 侧重说话的内容; B. speaking 讲话, 侧重讲某种语言; C. talking 交谈, 指双方交谈; D. telling 告诉, 指单方面告诉某人。tell sb. sth. 告诉某人某事。根据“me a story of Chang’e.”可知, 妈妈给作者讲嫦娥的故事。综上所述, 该题选择 D。

8. A

【本题解析】本题考查非谓语动词辨析。A. calling 打电话; B. using 使用; C. connecting 连接; D. sending 发送。根据 “Jenny is 14 years old, too. She is now in New York in \_\_9\_\_ with her parents.” 可知，作者妹妹正在和朋友打电话。综上所述，该题选择 A。

9. B

【本题解析】本题考查词义辨析。A. China 中国; B. America 美国; C. England 英国; D. Canada 加拿大。根据 “She is now in New York” 和常识可知，纽约在美国。综上所述，该题选择 B。

10. B

【本题解析】本题考查代词辨析。A. him 他; B. her 她; C. their 他们的; D. our 我们的。根据 “My sister Lingling is \_\_8\_\_ her American friend Jenny.” 可知，Jenny 是女生，tell 后面加宾语，要用 she 的宾格 her。综上所述，该题选择 B。

## Task 5

Once there was a boy in Toronto. His name was Jimmy. He started drawing when he was three years old, and when he was five he was already very \_\_1\_\_ at it. He drew many beautiful interesting pictures, and many people \_\_2\_\_ his pictures. They thought this boy was going to be \_\_3\_\_ when he was a little older, and then they were going to \_\_4\_\_ these pictures for a lot of money.

Jimmy's pictures were quite different from other \_\_5\_\_ because he never drew on all of the paper. He drew on \_\_6\_\_ of it, and the other half was always \_\_7\_\_.

“That's very clever,” everybody said. “\_\_8\_\_ other people have ever done that before.”

One day somebody asked him, “Please tell me, Jimmy. Why do you draw on the bottom half of your pictures, \_\_9\_\_ not on the top half?”

“Because I'm small,” Jimmy said, “and my brushes can't \_\_10\_\_ very high.”

### 【全文翻译】

从前在多伦多有个男孩。他叫吉米。他三岁开始画画，五岁时就已经很擅长画画了。他画了许多美丽有趣的画，许多人买了他的画。他们认为这个男孩长大一点就会出名，然后他们就会把这些画卖很多钱。

吉米的画和别人的很不一样，因为他从来不把所有的纸都画满。他画了一半，而另一半总是空的。

“真聪明，”大家都说。“以前从来没有人这样做过。”

一天，有人问他：“请告诉我，吉米。为什么你在画的下半部分画，而不在上半部分画呢？”

“因为我个子小，”吉米说，“我的画笔够不到很高的地方。”

- |                 |            |           |         |
|-----------------|------------|-----------|---------|
| 1. A. poor      | B. sad     | C. glad   | D. good |
| 2. A. bought    | B. brought | C. sold   | D. took |
| 3. A. different | B. clever  | C. famous | D. rich |
| 4. A. buy       | B. show    | C. leave  | D. sell |

- |               |             |          |            |
|---------------|-------------|----------|------------|
| 5. A. men's   | B. people's | C. boy's | D. child's |
| 6. A. half    | B. part     | C. side  | D. end     |
| 7. A. full    | B. empty    | C. wrong | D. ready   |
| 8. A. No      | B. Some     | C. Any   | D. Many    |
| 9. A. then    | B. and      | C. but   | D. or      |
| 10. A. change | B. turn     | C. pull  | D. Reach   |

**1-5: DACDB**

1. D

【本题解析】本题考查**形容词辨析**。A. poor 贫穷; B. sad 悲伤的; C. glad 高兴的; D. good 好的。根据前一句和后文可知, 因为男孩三岁开始画画, 由此可推知, 他五岁时擅长画画了, 所以能画出很多美丽的画子; be good at sth. 擅长某事, 固定搭配。综上所述, 该题选择 D。

2. A

【本题解析】本题考查**动词辨析**。A. bought 购买; B. brought 带来; C. sold 出售; D. took 带走。由前文和后文可知, 因为男孩的画子美丽, 所以许多人购买了他的画子。综上所述, 该题选择 A。

3. C

【本题解析】本题考查**形容词辨析**。A. different 不同的; B. clever 聪明的; C. famous 著名的; D. rich 富有的。由后文 “these pictures for a lot of money.” 可知, 这些购买男孩画子的人认为, 以后男孩成名后, 画子可以卖很多钱。综上所述, 该题选择 C。

4. D

【本题解析】本题考查**动词辨析**。A. buy 购买; B. show 展示; C. leave 离开; D. sell 出售。前文提到, 人们认为男孩会出名, 所以此处表示人们会出售男孩的画子挣很多钱。综上所述, 该题选择 D。

5. B

【本题解析】本题考查**词义辨析**。A. men's 男人的; B. people's 人们的; C. boy's 男孩的; D. child's 儿童的。由后文 “because he never drew on all of the paper.” 可知, 因为男孩从来不把所有的纸都画满, 由此可知, 他的画与其他人不一样。综上所述, 该题选择 B。

**6-10: ABACD**

6. A

【本题解析】本题考查**词义辨析**。A. half 一半; B. part 部分; C. side 边; D. end 结束。由前文 “he never drew on all of the paper.” 和后文 “Why do you draw on the bottom half of your pictures,” 可知, 男孩只画一半。综上所述, 该题选择 A。

7. B

【本题解析】本题考查**形容词辨析**。A. full 满的; B. empty 空的; C. wrong 错误的; D. ready 准备好的。后文 “Why do you draw on the bottom half of your pictures,” 可知, 男孩只画一半, 由

此可知，画子的另一半是空的。综上所述，该题选择 B。

8. A

【本题解析】本题考查**不定代词辨析**。A. No 没有的; B. Some 一些; C. Any 任何; D. Many 许多的。根据后文“have ever done that before.”可知，以前没有人只画一半。综上所述，该题选择 A。

9. C

【本题解析】本题考查**连词辨析**。A. then 然后; B. and 和; C. but 但是; D. or 或者。结合前后半句句意可知，此处表示转折关系，需用连词 but。综上所述，该题选择 C。

10. D

【本题解析】本题考查**动词辨析**。A. change 改变; B. turn 转身; C. pull 拉; D. reach 够得着。由前文“Because I’m small”可知，因为吉米个子小，由此可知，他的画笔够不到很高的地方，所以他的画子只能画一半。综上所述，该题选择 D。

## Task 6

Kate and Sandy are American students. They   1   sisters. They live   2   now. Kate is   3   than Sandy. She likes living in town very much. Kate thinks living in town is   4   than   5   in the country. There are more parks shops and cinemas in town than in the country. She especially likes the lights in town. She thinks the lights   6   are more beautiful than the stars. She likes to read and reads   7   than Sandy. Often Kate reads until very late at night. Sandy likes the country   8  . She thinks the country life is quiet. There is less noise and fewer cars. She likes to visit her Aunt Peggy. She often helps her aunt   9   her work. Sandy likes to run. She runs faster than Kate. In the country Sandy can run longer than in town. She also thinks running in the country   10   the most exciting thing to do.

### 【全文翻译】

凯特和桑迪都是美国学生。她们是姐妹。她们现在住在城里。凯特比桑迪大。她非常喜欢住在城里。凯特认为住在城里比住在乡下更有趣。城里的公园商店和电影院比全国还多。她特别喜欢镇上的灯光。她认为夜晚的灯光比星星更美丽。她喜欢读书，而且比桑迪读得快。凯特经常一直读到深夜。桑迪更喜欢乡村。她认为乡村生活很安静。噪音少，汽车也少。她喜欢去看她的佩吉阿姨。她经常帮助她的姨妈干活。桑迪喜欢跑步。她跑得比凯特还快。在乡下，桑迪可以比在城里跑得更长。她还认为在乡下跑步是最令人兴奋的事情。

- |                   |                     |                   |                   |
|-------------------|---------------------|-------------------|-------------------|
| 1. A. am          | B. is               | C. are            | D. /              |
| 2. A. in the town | B. in town          | C. in the country | D. in country     |
| 3. A. old         | B. older            | C. more old       | D. more older     |
| 4. A. interesting | B. more interesting | C. beautiful      | D. more beautiful |
| 5. A. live        | B. living           | C. to live        | D. is living      |

- |                |                 |              |                 |
|----------------|-----------------|--------------|-----------------|
| 6. A. at night | B. at the night | C. in night  | D. in the night |
| 7. A. quickly  | B. more quickly | C. quicklier | D. more quick   |
| 8. A. good     | B. well         | C. better    | D. best.        |
| 9. A. for      | B. at           | C. to        | D. with         |
| 10. A. am      | B. is           | C. are       | D. /            |

**1-5: CBBBB**

1. C

【本题解析】本题考查**谓语动词的形式**。A. am 是 (用于第一人称); B. is 是 (用于第三人称单数); C. are 是 (用于第二人称和以及复数); D. / (不填)。根据前文 “They” 可知, be 动词应用复数形式。综上所述, 该题选择 C。

2. B

【本题解析】本题考查**固定搭配**。A. in the town 在镇上 (特指); B. in town 在城里 (泛指); C. in the country 在该国, 在乡下; D. in country 国内, 乡下。根据后文可以推知, 她们现在住在城里。综上所述, 该题选择 B。

3. B

【本题解析】本题考查**比较级的用法**。A. old 年龄大的; B. older 年龄更大的 (比较级); C. more old (错误表达); D. more older (错误表达)。根据后文 “than” 可知, 应用形容词比较级作表语。综上所述, 该题选择 B。

4. B

【本题解析】本题考查**比较级的用法**。A. interesting 有趣的; B. more interesting 更有趣的; C. beautiful 美丽的, 漂亮的; D. more beautiful 更美丽的, 更漂亮的。根据前文 “She likes living in town very much.” 以及后文 “than” 可知, 她认为城里比乡下更有趣, 所以才更喜欢在城里居住。综上所述, 该题选择 B。

5. B

【本题解析】本题考查**非谓语动词**。A. live 居住; B. living 居住 (动名词); C. to live 居住 (不定式); D. is living 居住 (现在进行时)。根据前文 “living” 及介词 “than” 可知, 此处应用动名词作宾语。综上所述, 该题选择 B。

**6-10: ABCDB**

6. A

【本题解析】本题考查**固定搭配**。A. at night 在夜间 (泛指); B. at the night (错误表达); C. in night (错误表达); D. in the night 晚上 (特指)。根据句意可知, 此处表示泛指的夜晚。综上所述, 该题选择 A。

7. B

【本题解析】本题考查**副词辨析**。A. quickly 迅速地; B. more quickly 迅速地 (比较级); C. quicklier (错误表达); D. more quick (错误表达)。根据后文 “than” 可知, 此处应用副词比较级

修饰动词。综上所述，该题选择 B。

8. C

【本题解析】本题考查**比较级**。A. good 好的 (形容词); B. well 好地 (副词); C. better 更好的, 更好地 (good 和 well 的比较级); D. best 最好 (good 和 well 的最高级)。根据后文 “She thinks the country life is quiet. There is less noise and fewer cars.” 可知, 桑迪更喜欢乡村, 用 well 的比较级修饰动词。综上所述, 该题选择 C。

9. D

【本题解析】本题考查**介词辨析**。A. for 为了; B. at 在; C. to 到; D. with 和, 用。help sb. with sth. “帮助某人做某事” 是固定搭配。综上所述, 该题选择 D。

10. B

【本题解析】本题考查**谓语形式**。A. am 是 (用于第一人称); B. is 是 (用于第三人称单数); C. are 是 (用于第二人称和以及复数); D. / (不填)。根据前文 “running in the country” 可知, 动名词作主语, 谓语动词用单数。综上所述, 该题选择 B。



## 第八章 翻译

## Task 1

1. I have gone through all my pockets but I can't find my keys.

【本题答案】我把所有的口袋都找遍了，就是找不到我的钥匙。

【本题解析】本题考查**并列句的翻译**。go through 经历；检查；通读。

2. The residents seem to be on pins and needles when they are waiting for test results.

【本题答案】在等待测试结果的时候，居民们都如坐针毡。

【本题解析】本题考查**固定短语**。“如坐针毡”用固定短语 be on pins and needles 表示。

3. 总统对这个问题深感担忧。(be concerned about)

【本题答案】The president is deeply concerned about this issue.

【本题解析】本题考查**简单句的翻译**。be concerned about 对……感到担忧。

## Task 2

1. The audience couldn't help bursting into laughter at the sight of the clown's funny facial expressions.

【本题答案】看到小丑滑稽的面部表情，观众情不自禁大声笑了出来。

【本题解析】本题考查**固定短语**。can't help doing sth. 情不自禁做某事；burst into (tears/laughter) 哈哈大笑；突然哭起来。

2. For lack of experience, he is less likely to be qualified for the post of a lawyer he has been dreaming of.

【本题答案】由于经验不足，他不太可能胜任他所梦想的律师职位。

【本题解析】本题考查**固定短语和定语从句**。lack of 缺乏；be likely to 可能……；dream of 梦想，the post lawyer 后跟定语从句 he has been dreaming of，从句缺宾语省略连词。

3. 我们班里很多学生喜欢流行音乐。(be fond of)

【本题答案】A great number of students in our class are fond of pop music.

【本题解析】本题考查**简单句的翻译**。a number of 许多；be fond of 喜欢。

## Task 3

1. Only when you enjoy the musical on the spot can you realize why all the seats were occupied at each show for sixty years.

【本题答案】唯有亲临这部音乐剧的现场，你才会明白为何六十年来每场演出都座无虚席。

【本题解析】本题考查**only 位于句首修饰状语**。spot 地点，场所；be occupied 被占用；占据。

2. This is the first difficulty that I have come across in my career.

【本题答案】这是我在职业生涯中遇到的第一个困难。

【本题解析】本题考查**定语从句的翻译**。come across 遇到，偶遇；career 职业。

3. 英语在我们生活中起着非常重要的作用。(play a role in)

【本题答案】English plays an important role in our life.

【本题解析】本题考查**固定短语**。play a role (in) 在……中扮演重要角色。

#### Task 4

1. The economic and environmental losses caused by invasive (入侵的) species are quite beyond people's imagination.

【本题答案】入侵物种所造成的经济与环境损失真是超乎人们的想象。

【本题解析】本题考查**简单句的翻译**。“caused by invasive species 入侵物种所造成的”是“the economic and environmental losses 经济与环境损失”的定语, invasive adj. 侵略性的。

2. At present, we have no choice but to complete this plan through the Internet.

【本题答案】目前，我们只能通过网络完成这项计划。

【本题解析】本题考查**固定短语**。have no choice but to do sth. 别无选择只能做某事。

3. 不管任务有多难，我们都要按时完成。

【本题答案】No matter how hard the task may be, we must complete it on time.

【本题解析】本题考查**状语从句**。no matter how 不管；不论(无论多么); no matter how+形/副+主+谓。

#### Task 5

1. Li Hua makes it a rule that he helps his mother mop the floor every Sunday morning.

【本题答案】李华习惯每周日早上帮妈妈拖地板。

【本题解析】本题考查**宾语从句**。it 作形式宾语; that he helps his mother mop the floor every Sunday morning 作真正宾语, rule 规则。

2. When making friends, you'd better keep in mind that never judge a person by his appearance because first impression cannot be always trusted.

【本题答案】在交友时最好要牢记：第一印象未必总是可靠的，所以不要以貌取人。

【本题解析】本题考查**固定短语**。keep sth. in mind 牢记于心; judge...by 根据……来判断/评价。

3. 他没有告诉我他为什么那样伤心。

【本题答案】He didn't tell me the reason why he was so sad.

【本题解析】本题考查**定语从句**。the reason why+定语从句,……的原因。

#### Task 6

1. Living in school enables students to devote more time and energy to their studies.

【本题答案】住校能使把更多的时间和精力投入到学业中。

【本题解析】本题考查**固定短语**。devote (oneself/n.) to (doing) sth. 致力于; enable sb. to do sth. 使某人做某事(使某人能够做某事)。

2. Only when we can endure loneliness and challenge ourselves constantly can we better prepare

for the future.

【本题答案】只有耐得住寂寞，并不断挑战自我，才能更好地为未来做准备。

【本题解析】本题考查**倒装**。Only+状语（从句）位于句首时，要采用部分倒装；endure 忍受，忍耐；loneliness 孤独，寂寞；constantly 经常地，不断地。

3. 让一个如此年轻的秘书来负责会议的所有安排是不明智的。（sense n.; charge n.）

【本题答案】It doesn't make sense to ask such a young secretary to take charge of all the arrangement of the conference well.

【本题解析】本题考查**动词短语和常用句型**。明智 make sense; 负责 take charge of。再用句型将短语组合，It doesn't make sense to do sth. 做某事不明智。

## 第九章 句子写作

### Task 1

1. 如此以至于句型一：主语+be so adj. that+从句

中文解释：主语如此……以至于……

例句：She spoke so quietly that I could hardly hear her.

仿写：①英语是如此的重要以至于每个人都应该学习。

English is so important that everyone should learn it.

仿写：②她如此的漂亮以至于每个人都喜欢她。

She is so pretty that everyone loves her.

2. 如此以至于句型二：So+adj.+be/情/助+主语+V 剩+that+从句

中文解释：主语如此……以至于……

例句：So quietly did she speak that I could hardly hear her.

仿写：①英语是如此的重要以至于每个人都应该学习。

So important is English that everyone should learn it.

仿写：②她如此的漂亮以至于每个人都喜欢她。

So pretty is she that everyone loves her.

3. 越越句型：The+比较级+(n.)+主+谓，the+比较级+(n.)+主+谓

中文解释：越……就越……

例句：The more careful you are, the fewer mistakes you will make in the exam.

仿写：①你越用工，进步就会越大。

The harder you work, the greater progress you will make.

仿写：②你做的事情越多，能做到的事就越多。

The more things you do, the more you can do.

### Task 2

1. 有必要句型一：It is important/essential+that+从句(should do)

中文解释：……是至关重要的

例句：It is important that we should learn Chinese traditional culture.

仿写：①立刻采取措施保护野生动物是至关重要的。

It is essential that we should take immediate action to protect wild animals.

仿写：②提高沟通技能是至关重要的。

It is important that we should improve our communication skills.

2. 有必要句型二：It is necessary for sb. to do sth.

中文解释：对某人来说，做……是必要的

例句：It is necessary for us to study hard.

仿写：①对你而言，努力适应新环境是必要的。

It is necessary for you to make effort to adapt yourself to the new environment.

仿写：②对学生而言，养成良好的学习习惯是必要的。

It is necessary for students to form good study habits.

3. 众所周知句型：It is universally acknowledged that+从句

中文解释：众所周知……

例句：It is universally acknowledged that it is important to learn English well.

仿写：①众所周知，出国留学是充满挑战的。

It is universally acknowledged that studying abroad is full of challenges.

仿写：②众所周知，中国的经济发展是非常迅速的。

It is universally acknowledged that China's economic development is very rapid.

### Task 3

1. 宁愿也不句型：主语+would rather do sth. than do sth.

中文解释：主语宁愿……也不……

例句：Kids would rather play than study.

仿写：①一些年轻人闲暇时间宁愿上网，也不愿读一本书。

Some young people would rather surf the Internet than read a book in their spare time.

仿写：②许多青少年在周末宁愿一个人待在家里也不愿和父母出去。

Many teenagers would rather stay at home alone than go out with their parents at weekends.

2. 充分利用句型：主语+make full use of sth.

中文解释：主语充分利用……

例句：Everyone should make full use of time.

仿写：①大学生应该充分利用宝贵的教育资源来充实自己。

College students should make full use of the valuable educational resource to enrich themselves.

仿写：②人们应该充分利用网络来获取资源。

People should make full use of the Internet to get resources.

3. 深刻印象句型：主语+impress sb. most

中文解释：主语使某人印象深刻

例句：That idea impressed me most.

仿写：①当你面试的时候，你可以尽最大努力让面试官印象深刻。

When you're interviewing, you can do your best to impress the interviewer most.

仿写：②现如今，中国在举办大型体育赛事上让全世界印象深刻。

Nowadays China impresses the world most by hosting major sporting events.

### Task 4

1. 奠定基础句型：主语+lay a solid foundation for sth.

中文解释：主语为……奠定了坚实的基础

例句: I lay a solid foundation for the future.

仿写: ①学习基本技能为未来的成功打下了坚实的基础。

Learning a basic skill lays a solid foundation for future success.

仿写: ②今天的努力为明天的成功打下坚实的基础。

Today's efforts lay a solid foundation for tomorrow's successes.

2. 后果句型: The consequence is that+从句

中文解释: 后果是……

例句: The consequence is that unemployment will rise.

仿写: ①后果是被溺爱的孩子将一事无成。

The consequence is that the spoiled children will accomplish nothing in the future.

仿写: ②如果不控制私家车的数量, 后果是空气污染会更严重。

If the number of private cars is not controlled, the consequence is that air pollution will be more serious.

3. 结果原因句型: The reason why+从句+is that+从句

中文解释: ……的原因是……

例句: The reason why he was late is that he was ill.

仿写: ①学生需要上学的原因是上学可以让我们获得知识和技能。

The reason why students need to go to school is that it enables us to acquire knowledge and skills.

仿写: ②线上课程不能代替传统课程的原因是老师和学生需要面对面的交流。

The reason why online courses can not replace traditional courses is that teachers and students need to communicate face to face.

## Task 5

1. 有责任句型: 主语+be responsible for sth.

中文解释: 主语对……有责任

例句: Everyone is responsible for protecting the environment.

仿写: ①许多因素都对这个现象有责任。

Many factors are responsible for this phenomenon.

仿写: ②作为学生, 我们应该对自己负责。

As students, we should be responsible for ourselves.

2. 有困难句型: 主语+have difficulty/trouble in doing sth.

中文解释: 主语在……有困难

例句: Some students have difficulty in learning English.

仿写: ①一些孩子在独立处理问题时有困难。

Some children have difficulty in dealing with problems on their own.

仿写: ②很多学生觉得当众发表演讲很困难, 但通过训练他们可以克服这一问题。

Many students have difficulty in making a speech in public, but they can overcome it through

training.

3. 提供句型: 主语+provide sb. with sth.

中文解释: 主语提供某人某物

例句: The government provide the public with a service.

仿写: ①学生会给孩子们提供了书籍和书包。

The student union provided the children with textbooks and bags.

仿写: ②教育不仅给学生们提供了知识, 还给学生们带来了正确的价值观。

Education not only provides students with knowledge but also provides them with right values.

## Task 6

1. 绝不句型: On no account can+主语+do sth.

中文解释: 主语绝不……

例句: On no account can we tolerate violence against children.

仿写: ①学生绝不能够沉迷电子游戏。

On no account can students be addicted to video games.

仿写: ②我们绝不能在考试中作弊。

On no account can we cheat in the exam.

2. 可能性句型: It is likely to do sth./that+从句

中文解释: 做……是可能的

例句: It is likely that investors will face losses.

仿写: ①如果你来中国, 我可能带你去故宫。

If you come to China, it is likely to take you to the Palace Museum.

仿写: ②只要你做好充分的准备, 拿到录取通知书是可能的。

It is likely to get the offer as long as you are well prepared.

3. 全力以赴句型: 主语+do one's utmost to do sth.

中文解释: 主语全力以赴做某事

例句: Though my daily life is very dull, I do one's utmost to try to adapt to it.

仿写: ①我们应该全力以赴发展经济。

We should do our utmost to develop the economy.

仿写: ②我们应该尽最大努力来避免网络的消极影响。

We should do our utmost to avoid the negative effects of the Internet.